



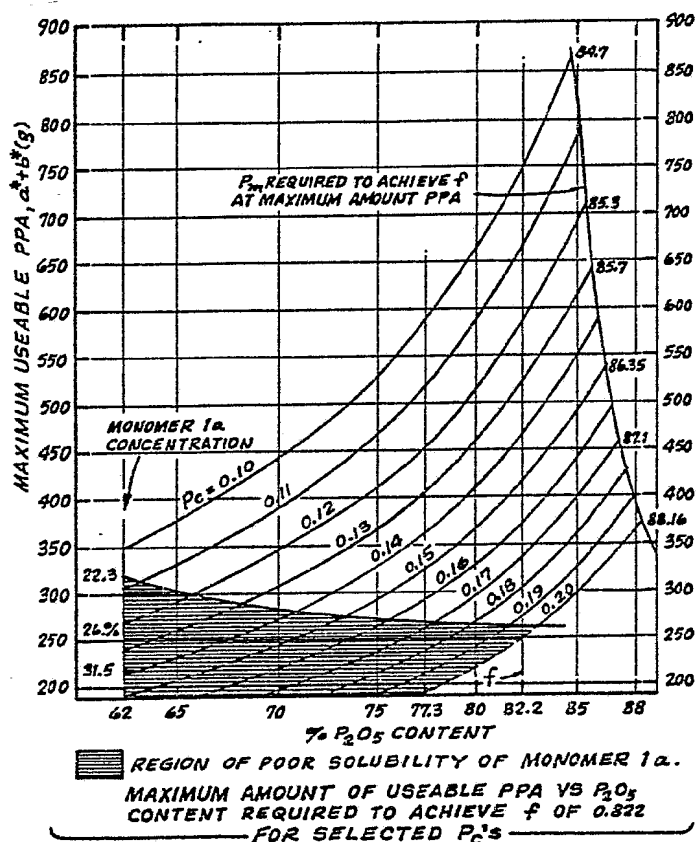
## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>3</sup> : C08K 3/32, 5/49; C08G 63/12 C08G 63/68, 69/08, 69/42 C08G 75/00, 79/02, 69/26	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 84/ 01162 (43) International Publication Date: 29 March 1984 (29.03.84)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US83/01437 (22) International Filing Date: 15 September 1983 (15.09.83) (31) Priority Application Number: PCT/US82/01285 (32) Priority Date: 17 September 1982 (17.09.82) (33) Priority Countries: US, et al. (60) Parent Application or Grant (63) Related by Continuation US 433,831 (CIP) Filed on 17 September 1982 (17.09.82) (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): SRI INTERNATIONAL [US/US]; Room AA273, 333 Ravenswood Avenue, Menlo Park, CA 94025 (US). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only) : WOLFE, James, Frederick [US/US]; 1692 Alameda de las Pulgas, Redwood City, CA 94061 (US). SYBERT, Paul, Dean [US/US]; 1075 Spacepart Way, #96, Mountain View, CA 94043 (US).	(74) Agents: CHEN, John, Y.; SRI International, 333 Ravenswood Avenue, AA273, Menlo Park, CA 94025 (US) et al. (81) Designated States: BE (European patent), DE, FR (European patent), GB, JP, NL, SE, US.  Published With international search report. With amended claims.  Date of publication of the amended claims: 26 April 1984 (26.04.84)	

(54) Title: LIQUID CRYSTALLINE POLYMER COMPOSITIONS, PROCESS, AND PRODUCTS

## (57) Abstract

Novel compositions comprising a high concentration of one or more extended chain homopolymer, copolymer, or block polymer and certain polyphosphoric acids are prepared. Such compositions are optically anisotropic (liquid crystalline), capable of exhibiting excellent cohesive strength, and are especially suited to the production of high molecular weight ordered polymer fibers by dry-jet wet spinning. These liquid crystalline compositions are capable of being drawn through long air gap distances and spun at exceptionally high spin draw ratios. Fibers, films and other articles formed from these liquid crystalline compositions exhibit exceptionally high physical and heat resistant properties.



***FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY***

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

<b>AT</b>	Austria	<b>LI</b>	Liechtenstein
<b>AU</b>	Australia	<b>LK</b>	Sri Lanka
<b>BE</b>	Belgium	<b>LU</b>	Luxembourg
<b>BR</b>	Brazil	<b>MC</b>	Monaco
<b>CF</b>	Central African Republic	<b>MG</b>	Madagascar
<b>CG</b>	Congo	<b>MR</b>	Mauritania
<b>CH</b>	Switzerland	<b>MW</b>	Malawi
<b>CM</b>	Cameroon	<b>NL</b>	Netherlands
<b>DE</b>	Germany, Federal Republic of	<b>NO</b>	Norway
<b>DK</b>	Denmark	<b>RO</b>	Romania
<b>FI</b>	Finland	<b>SE</b>	Sweden
<b>FR</b>	France	<b>SN</b>	Senegal
<b>GA</b>	Gabon	<b>SU</b>	Soviet Union
<b>GB</b>	United Kingdom	<b>TD</b>	Chad
<b>HU</b>	Hungary	<b>TG</b>	Togo
<b>JP</b>	Japan	<b>US</b>	United States of America
<b>KP</b>	Democratic People's Republic of Korea		

LIQUID CRYSTALLINE POLYMER COMPOSITIONS,  
PROCESS, AND PRODUCTS

Technical Field of Invention

5 The present invention relates broadly to novel  
anisotropic (liquid-crystalline) extended chain  
polymer-polyphosphoric acid compositions, to the  
production of high molecular weight extended chain  
polymers by polycondensation of selected monomers in  
certain polyphosphoric acids, and especially to the  
10 production of highly concentrated polymer compositions  
from which industrially useful polymeric articles such  
as fibers and films are readily produced.

15 Among some of the most serious difficulties  
encountered in the production of thermally stable  
articles such as fibers and films from extended  
chain polymers are described in the Background  
Art below.

Background of Invention

1. Origin of Invention

20 The invention described herein was made in the  
course of work under U.S. Department of Defense  
contract Nos. F33615-81-K-5070, F49620-81-K-0003,  
and/or F33615-82-C-5079.



## 2. Reference to Related Applications

Reference is made to other pending PCT International and United States patent applications all assigned to SRI International and having as one of their inventors, James F. Wolfe. Said other applications are entitled: "Liquid Crystalline Poly(2,6-benzothiazole) Compositions, Process, and Products", and "Liquid Crystalline Polymer Compositions, Process, and Products" and having International Application Numbers PCT/US82/01286 and PCT/US82/01285 respectively. This application is a continuation-in-part of PCT/US82/01285, 17 September 1982. The pending PCT International and United States patent applications are herein incorporated by reference.

## 3. Background Art

In general, the class of aromatic heterocyclic extended chain polymers are well known for their outstanding thermal, physical, and chemical properties. Unfortunately, these polymers are essentially non-melting and have proven very difficult to economically process into articles. In order to fashion such polymers into desired articles of commerce, for example fibers, films, fibrils, and the like, it is necessary that they be in solution or dope form. Although such polymers can be dissolved in various acidic solvents, such as sulfuric acid, methanesulfonic acid, chlorosulfonic acid, polyphosphoric acid, and the like, difficulty is often experienced in





preparing and using the polymer-acid compositions or dopes because of poor polymer-acid solubility.

5 Normally, a precipitated or dried particulate form of the polymer is dissolved in a strong acidic solvent by mixing the (isolated) polymer particles at elevated temperatures and/or under high pressures for a period from several hours to several days. If the polymer is insoluble in the particular solvent, other solvents or various solvent mixtures are employed. Usually, heating and cooling cycles are applied and repeated to obtain a useful dope.

15 The resulting dopes often contain undissolved polymer and must be filtered before further processing into articles.

20 Although spinning dopes of polybenzobisoxazole, polybenzimidazole and polybenzobisthiazole in sulfuric acid and/or methanesulfonic acid and/or chlorosulfonic acid with polymer concentrations above about 10 percent are known in the art, the intrinsic viscosity of these polymers is for the most part below 5dL/g and oftentimes less than 3dL/g. The cohesive strength of such dopes is inherently weak and economically less desirable for use in dry-jet wet spinning. In the case of

polybenzobisoxazole, numerous attempts of dry-jet wet spinning an approximately 10% polybenzobisoxazole/methane sulfonic acid-dope into fibers were not successful (E. W. Choe, et al., in Macromolecules 1981, 14, pp 920-924).

In the case of polybenzimidazole, prior art dopes of this polymer lack adequate strength to maintain filament integrity while dropping through the air-gap. In order to overcome this problem U. S. Patent No. 4,263,245 teaches dissolving a high concentration (up to 30%) of this polymer into suitable solvents such as concentrated sulfuric acid. At such high polymer concentrations lithium chloride is required to prevent the polybenzimidazole from phasing out of solution.

In the case of polybenzobisthiazole, U. S. Patent No. 4,225,700 teaches the formation of a liquid crystalline composition of this polymer at concentrations near 10% in methane sulfonic acid and chlorosulfonic acid and at about 6% in polyphosphoric acid. Concentrations of polybenzobisthiazole in polyphosphoric acid above about 10% by weight are difficult, if indeed possible to achieve. One difficulty encountered is that the solution of the 2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol monomer in polyphosphoric acid with the  $P_2O_5$

content described in U. S. Patent No. 4,225,700 is very viscous and dehydrohalogenation is difficult. Also considerable foaming results.

Although solutions of precipitated polymer in solvents such as methane sulfonic acid and chlorosulfonic acid can be prepared, high concentrations of polymer are difficult or impossible to achieve. S. R. Allen, et al., in Macromolecules 1981, 14, pp. 1135-1139 describes attempts at spinning polybenzobisthiazole directly from the polymerization medium (polyphosphoric acid) containing 5-6% polymer.

Insofar as polybenzobisthiazole is concerned it is possible to obtain compositions near to 10% of the polymer in polyphosphoric acid with intrinsic viscosity equal to 26dL/g (J. F. Wolfe, et al., Macromolecules 1981, 14, pp. 915-920). Attempts to increase the intrinsic viscosity of the polymer can only be achieved at a major sacrifice (decrease) in polymer concentration. Liquid crystalline compositions of 10% polybenzobisthiazole in polyphosphoric acid are heretofore unknown in the art. Liquid crystalline compositions of polybenzobisthiazole having intrinsic viscosities greater than about 30.3dL/g in polyphosphoric acid are heretofore unknown in the art.



In practical terms this means that such polymer-polyphosphoric acid compositions are severely limited in their potential usefulness for the production of highly ordered high molecular weight polymeric articles.

In general, liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions (with the exception of polybenzobisthiazole as mentioned above) in polyphosphoric acid are heretofore unknown in the art; and moreover, liquid crystalline extended chain copolymer and block polymer compositions are heretofore unknown in the art.

### Disclosure of Invention

#### 1. Objects of Invention

Accordingly, it is an object of the present invention to provide compositions substantially free of one or more of the disadvantages of prior art compositions.

Another object is to provide a process for preparing liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions.



A further object is to provide liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions having excellent cohesive strength.

5 Another object is to provide liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions having excellent spin stretchability.

Another object is to provide liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions capable of being drawn through long air gap distances.

10 Yet another object is to provide liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions capable of being drawn at high spin draw ratios.

15 A further object of the invention is to prepare a liquid crystalline spinning composition having a high extended chain polymer content.

A still further object is to provide liquid crystalline extended chain homopolymer compositions.

Another object is to provide liquid crystalline extended chain copolymer compositions.

20 Yet another object is to provide liquid crystalline extended chain block polymer compositions.



Another object of the invention is to provide a method of preparing a liquid crystalline polymer composition having a high polymer content of an extended chain homopolymer.

- 5 Another object of the invention is to provide a method of preparing a liquid crystalline polymer composition having a high polymer content of an extended chain copolymer.

- 10 Another object of the invention is to provide a method of preparing a liquid crystalline polymer composition having a high polymer content of an extended chain block polymer.

- 15 Another object of the invention is to provide a method of preparing liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions from selected monomers.

Another object is to provide a process for preparing liquid crystalline high molecular weight extended chain polymer compositions.

- 20 A further object of the invention is to provide a method for synthesizing high molecular weight extended chain homopolymers.



A further object of the invention is to provide a method for synthesizing high molecular weight extended chain copolymers.

5 A further object of the invention is to provide a method for synthesizing high molecular weight extended chain block polymers.

10 A still further object is to provide a method whereby the dehydrohalogenation of certain hydrohalide monomers may be carried out more easily and rapidly.

15 Yet another object is to provide a method whereby a substantially higher concentration of monomeric reactants can be employed which results in liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions of considerably higher polymer concentration than has been possible heretofore.

Another object is to alleviate the foaming problem referred to above.

20 Another object is to provide articles prepared from liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions.

A further object of the invention is to prepare articles such as fibers and films from a liquid



crystalline polymer composition comprising  
selected extended chain homopolymers.

5 A further object of the invention is to prepare  
articles such as fibers and films from a liquid  
crystalline polymer composition comprising  
selected extended chain copolymers.

10 A further object of the invention is to prepare  
articles such as fibers and films from a liquid  
crystalline polymer composition comprising  
selected extended chain block polymers.

Another object of the invention is to provide a process  
for the continuous production of extended chain  
homopolymer, copolymer, and block polymer articles such  
as fibers and films starting with selected monomers.

15 The above and other objects of the invention will  
be apparent from the ensuing description and the  
appended claims.

## 2. Statement of Invention

20 In accordance with our discovery, the present  
invention broadly encompasses novel polymer com-  
positions which are useful as dopes in the pro-  
duction of high strength shaped articles compris-  
ing blends of certain polyphosphoric acids, as  
described hereinafter, and a high concentration  
of one or more high molecular weight extended





chain polymers having one or more mesogenic group or groups. The extended chain polymers can be homopolymers, copolymers, or block polymers, as exemplified hereinafter. The extended chain polymer is present in the blend at a sufficient concentration so as to be capable of exhibiting an anisotropic polymer phase alone or in combination with one or more different polymers with or without mesogenic group or groups. The blends according to the invention are polycondensation products obtained by reaction of selected monomers in an appropriate solution of phosphoric acid; as described hereinafter. These blends exhibit special properties which make them very useful as dopes in the production of fibers, films, fibrils, and the like. In addition to being anisotropic (liquid-crystalline), the blends have a novel combination of properties including unexpectedly high spin-stretchability and excellent cohesive strength, as well as having the capability of being drawn through short, as well as extremely long, air-gap distances, and spun at low, as well as exceptionally high, draw ratios. It is believed that these properties can be attributed to the combination of high polymer concentration, high polymer molecular weight, and a high phosphorus pentoxide content comprising

the blends of the present invention.

Our discovery further broadly encompasses a process for preparing novel extended chain polymer compositions which are useful as dopes in the  
5 production of fibers and films. This process comprises:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer (as described hereinafter) with or  
10 without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups  
15 present and provide a first mixture of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer (as described hereinafter) in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a first  
20 mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or (c) to provide a first or a first and second



monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization.

(e) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product or a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity, or

(f) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homopolymeric product or a first copolymeric product,

(g) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, the second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a) and (b) followed by:

(1g) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a mixture of a first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(2g) then increasing the phosphorus



pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or (1g) to provide a first or a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(3g) causing polymerization of the first or first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form the second homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomers of step (a) or (1g) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomers of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product, or

(h) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of a second mixture of at least one of a selected first monomers or a first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent so as to form a monomer-oligomer mixture, and then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the monomer-oligomer mixture to provide a monomer-oligomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content



suitable for polymerization, the first monomer of the second mixture being formed by like steps (a) and (b) and the first and second monomer of the second mixture being formed by like steps (a),  
5 (b) and (c), with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomers of step (a) or (c) which forms the first or first and second monomer of the second mixture, be different from at least one of the selected monomers of step (a)  
10 or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

(i) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product resulting from step (g) or the monomer-oligomer resulting from step (h) at a  
15 temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first block-polymeric product,

(j) spinning, drawing, extruding, or casting an  
20 article from said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, said first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product, said  
25 first block-polymeric product, or mixtures thereof.



2a. Figures

The invention will be more fully explained with reference to the Figures wherein:

5 Figure 1. graphically illustrates the weight stability of as spun polymer fibers of  $\{BI\}_n$  and  $\{AI\}_n$  with time during isothermal aging in air at 371°C;

Figure 2. graphically illustrates the weight stability of precipitated polymers of  $\{V\}_n$  and  $\{T\}_n$  with time during isothermal aging in air at 371°C;

10 Figure 2a. graphically illustrates the weight stability of block copolymers AI-AN" and AI-AG" with temperature in air at a heating rate of 5°C per minute;

15 Figure 3. graphically illustrates the weight stability of polymers  $\{T\}_n$  and  $\{V\}_n$  with temperature in helium at a heating rate of 5°C per minute;

Figure 4. graphically illustrates the weight stability of polymers  $\{BI\}_n$  and  $\{AI\}_n$  with temperature in helium at a heating rate of 5°C per minute;

20 Figure 5. graphically illustrates the weight stability of polymers  $\{T\}_n$  and  $\{V\}_n$  with temperature in air at a heating rate of 5°C per minute;

Figure 6. graphically illustrates the weight stability



of polymers  $\{BI\}_n$  and  $\{AI\}_n$  with temperature in air at a heating rate of 5°C per minute;

5 Figure 7. graphically illustrates the relationship of amount of useable PPA and  $P_2O_5$  content required to achieved f of 0.822 for selected polymer concentrations (plot of equation a\*) showing a region of poor solubility for monomer 1a;

10 Figure 8. graphically illustrates the %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for a 14.8 wt%  $\{AI\}_n$  polymerization showing the limits of achievable molecular weight when starting with a high  $P_2O_5$  content preliminary solvent;

15 Figure 9. graphically illustrates the %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for a 8.6 wt%  $\{T\}_n$  polymerization showing the limits of achievable polymer concentration when starting with a high  $P_2O_5$  content preliminary solvent;

20 Figure 10. graphically illustrates a typical %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for a 14.5 wt%  $\{AI\}_n$  polymerization showing the advantages of the invention when starting with a low  $P_2O_5$  content preliminary solvent followed by an increase of  $P_2O_5$  content at the start of polymerization;

25 Figure 11. graphically illustrates a typical %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for a 13.0 wt%  $\{BI\}_n$  polymerization showing the advantages of the invention when starting with a low  $P_2O_5$  content preliminary solvent and

step-wise addition of  $P_2O_5$  followed by an increase of  $P_2O_5$  content at the start of polymerization;

Figure 12. graphically illustrates a typical %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for a 20.3 wt%  $\{T\}_n$  polymerization showing the advantages of the invention when starting with a low  $P_2O_5$  content preliminary solvent followed by an increase of  $P_2O_5$  content at the start of polymerization;

Figure 13. graphically illustrates a typical %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for a 16.87 wt%  $\{V\}_n$  polymerization showing the advantages of the invention when starting with a low  $P_2O_5$  content preliminary solvent followed by an increase of  $P_2O_5$  content at the start of polymerization;

Figure 14. is a %  $P_2O_5$  profile diagram giving the profile ranges of %  $P_2O_5$  for achieving the advantages of this invention.



### 3. Mode(s) for Carrying Out the Invention

The extended chain polymers of the compositions of the present invention are a class of polymers that can obtain a substantial degree of shape anisotropy in the liquid state due to restricted rotation of bonds in the polymer backbone and/or appropriate catenation geometry of rigid backbone segments. The degree of shape anisotropy is generally defined by the axial ratio,  $(roh)/d$ , where  $(roh)$  is the persistence length of the chain and  $d$  is the diameter of the chain. For extended chain polymers,  $(roh)$  may be substantially the same as or greater than the contour length  $l$  of the polymer. In the case of a rigid rod polymer,  $(roh)$  is essentially infinite and the axial ratio is  $l/d$ .

By the method of the present invention, it is possible to prepare liquid crystalline compositions of extended chain homopolymers, copolymers, or block polymers containing 15 percent or more of polymer. As will appear, the invention is applicable to the preparation of liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions of lower polymer concentration but there are special advantages to preparing compositions of high concentration.

Extended chain polymer-polyphosphoric acid compositions of such higher polymer concentration are advantageous.



For example, if the polymer is one, such as polybenzobisthiazole, polybenzobisoxazole, and polybenzobisimidazole, capable of forming liquid crystalline compositions at low concentration (e.g., 5 - 10%), that is, if the critical concentration necessary for formation of the anisotropic phase is low, compositions of even higher polymer concentration can be spun to produce a better quality, higher strength fiber.

We believe this results, in part at least, from a more fully anisotropic composition and improved composition integrity. These improvements allow greater drawing in the air-gap, improve the coagulation characteristics, which leads to fewer flaws, and increase polymer throughput when a liquid crystalline composition is spun by a dry-jet-wet spinning technique into a polyphosphoric acid-solvent/polymer-nonsolvent such as methanol, water, or dilute aqueous acid.

If the polymer is one, such as poly (2,6-benzothiazole) that is less rodlike in structure than polybenzobisthiazole or polybenzobisoxazole and thus possesses a critical concentration for anisotropic phase formation greater than 10% and in the region of concentrations of this invention, extruding of these heretofore unattainable solutions produces a dramatic increase in strength and modulus because of the ordering of the polymer during this fabrication.

These advantages result in a more highly ordered, lower-defect fiber than results from spinning a less concentrated composition of polymers.

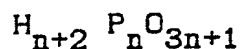


Another advantage of preparation of these polymers in the anisotropic phase is a considerable increase in the molecular weight of the polymer obtained.

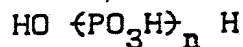
5 Preliminarily it is helpful to describe the chemistry of phosphoric acids and strong phosphoric acids or polyphosphoric acids as follows:

As used herein the term "phosphoric acid(s)" means commercial phosphoric acid(s) containing  
10 85-86%  $H_3PO_4$ .

The strong phosphoric acids, or polyphosphoric acids referred to as PPA (polyphosphoric acid) are members of a continuous series of amorphous condensed phosphoric acid mixtures given by the formula  
15



or



where the value of n depends on the molar ratio  
20 of water to phosphorus pentoxide present.

Characterization and methods of forming various polyphosphoric acids and examples of such strong acids useful in accordance with the practice of

the present invention can be found in the following papers: A. L. Huhti and P.A. Gartaganis "The Composition of the Strong Phosphoric Acids," Can.J. Chem., Vol. 34, 1956 pp. 785-797; and J. E. Such, "Linear Polyphosphoric Acids", Mellar's Comprehensive Treatise on Inorganic and Theoretical Chemistry, Vol VIII, Supplement III, pp. 726-753, Wiley 1971. The subject matter of these articles are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

In its most general definition, polyphosphoric acid composition can range from distributions where the average value of  $n$  is less than unity, giving rise to a mobile liquid, to high values of  $n$ , where the polyphosphoric acid is a glass at normal temperatures. Because the species of polyphosphoric acid are in a mobile equilibrium, a given equilibrium composition can be prepared in many ways. For instance, the same distribution or polyphosphoric acid composition could be prepared by either starting with concentrated orthophosphoric acid ( $H_3PO_4$ ,  $n = 1$ ) and driving off water or by starting with phosphorus pentoxide ( $P_2O_5$ ) and adding an appropriate amount of water.

All polyphosphoric acid compositions can be described as a ratio of  $P_2O_5$  and water by reducing the various species present (on paper) to  $P_2O_5$  and water. We will then use the convention that polyphosphoric acid composition will be expressed in terms of a  $P_2O_5$  content (as a percentage) defined as  $P_2O_5$  content

$$= \frac{\text{weight of } P_2O_5}{\text{Weight of } P_2O_5 + \text{weight of } H_2O} \times 100$$

Thus, the  $P_2O_5$  content of pure orthophosphoric acid could be derived by reducing one mole of  $H_3PO_4$  to 0.5 moles  $P_2O_5$  + 1.5 moles  $H_2O$ . Converting to weights gives the  $P_2O_5$  content as

$$\frac{0.5(142)}{0.5(142) + 1.5(18.01)} \times 100 = 72.4\%$$



Similarly, the  $P_2O_5$  content of commercial polyphosphoric acid can be derived in the following way. Polyphosphoric acid is available commercially in two grades, 105% and 115%. These percentages refer to  $H_3PO_4$  content, which means that 100g of the two grades contain 105 and 115 grams of  $H_3PO_4$ . The  $P_2O_5$  content of 115% polyphosphoric acid can then be calculated knowing the  $P_2O_5$  content of 100%  $H_3PO_4$ .

$$\frac{115(0.724)}{100} \times 100 = 83.3\%$$

Freshly prepared polyphosphoric acid as described by Wolfe and Loo U.S. Patent 4,225,700 employed 1.52 x g of  $P_2O_5$  to x grams of 85.6%  $H_3PO_4$ , thus the  $P_2O_5$  content of that mixture is

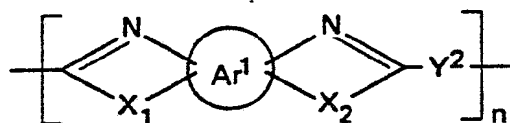
$$\frac{(1.52X) + (0.856)(0.724)X}{2.52X} \times 100 = 84.9\%$$



Thus, polyphosphoric acid compositions, by our definition, equivalent to these three examples could be prepared in principle by starting with  $P_2O_5$  and adding 27.6, 16.7, and 15.1% by weight of water.

### Homopolymeric Compositions and their preparation

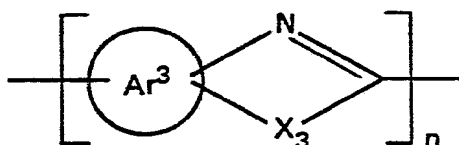
In accordance with one aspect of the invention, there is provided a liquid-crystalline composition useful in the preparation of fibers and films comprising a polycondensation product consisting essentially of a blend of certain polyphosphoric acids and a high concentration of at least one high molecular weight extended chain homopolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the general formulas:



I.

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

XX as defined below,  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is XXI as defined below, n being a positive integer;

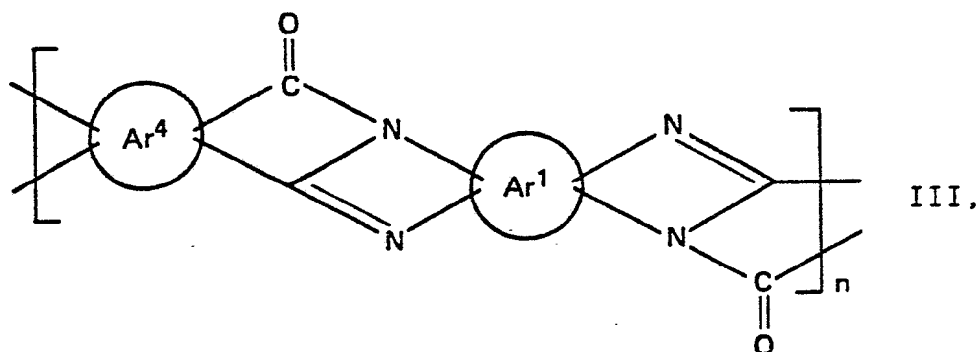


II,

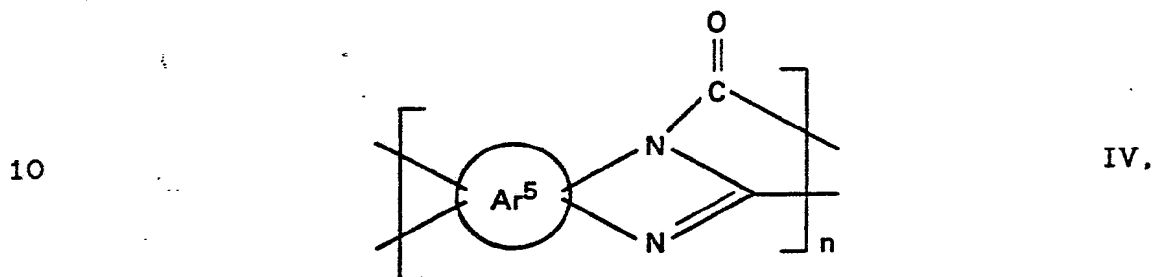
wherein  $Ar^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXII as defined below,  $X_3$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^3$ , N and  $X_3$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, n being a



positive integer;

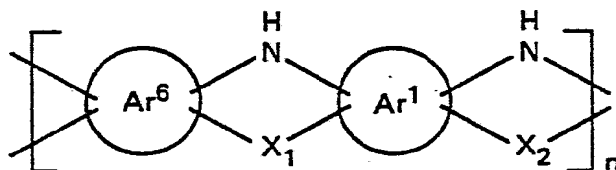


5 wherein Ar<sup>1</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is XX as defined below, and Ar<sup>4</sup> represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXIII as defined below, the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of Ar<sup>1</sup> and the carbon atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of Ar<sup>4</sup>, n being a positive integer;



10 wherein Ar<sup>5</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is

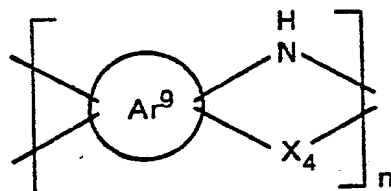
XXIV as defined below, the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $\text{Ar}^5$ , n being a positive integer;



V.

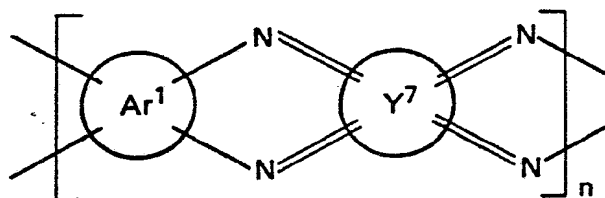
wherein  $\text{Ar}^6$  represents an aromatic moiety and is  
 5 XXV as defined below,  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents a different  
 aromatic moiety and is XX as defined below,  $\text{X}_1$   
 and  $\text{X}_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur,  
 oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic  
 group), the NH groups and  $\text{X}_1$  and  $\text{X}_2$  being bonded  
 10 to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^6$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$ , NH and  
 $\text{X}_1$  or  $\text{X}_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho

to one another, n being a positive integer;



VI,

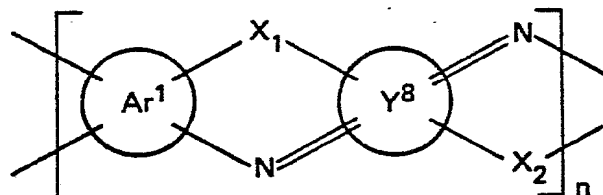
wherein  $Ar^9$  represents an aromatic moiety and is  
 XXVI as defined below,  $X_4$  is sulfur, oxygen, or  
 5 NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH  
 groups and  $X_4$  being bonded to aromatic carbon  
 atoms of  $Ar^9$ , n being a positive integer;



VII,

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is  
 10 XXVII as defined below,  $Y^7$  represents an aromatic  
 or hetroaromatic moiety and is XXVIII as defined

below, the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$  and bonded to adjacent carbon atoms of  $Y^7$ , n being a positive integer;



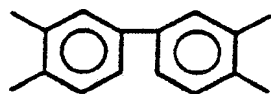
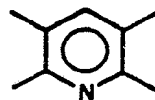
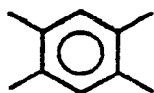
VIII.

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XX as defined below,  $Y^8$  is XXIX as defined below,  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$  and adjacent carbon atoms of  $Y^8$ . N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, n being a positive integer.

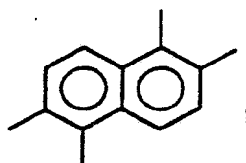
The aromatic moieties  $Ar^1$ ,  $Ar^3$ ,  $Ar^4$ ,  $Ar^5$ ,  $Ar^6$ ,  $Ar^9$ , and  $Y^2$ ,  $Y^7$ , and  $Y^8$  of the extended chain polymer formulas above are defined as follows:

31

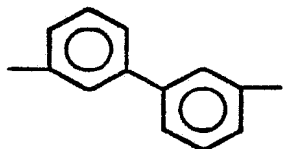
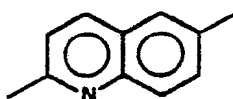
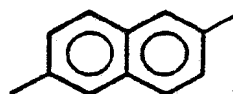
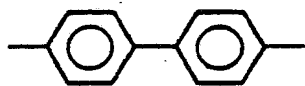
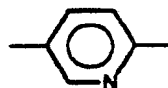
XX is



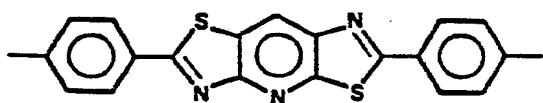
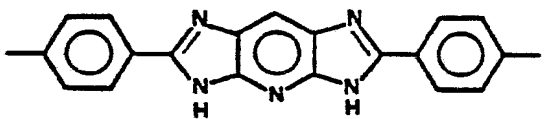
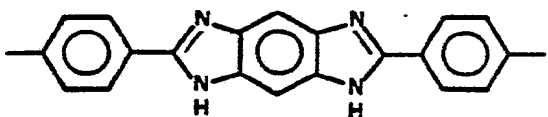
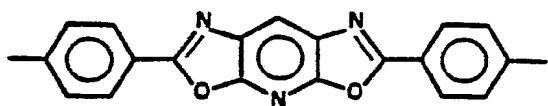
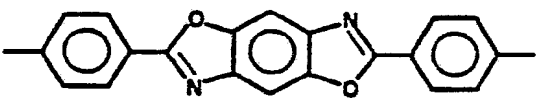
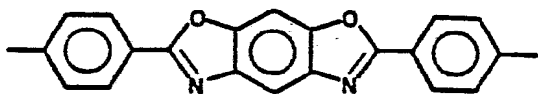
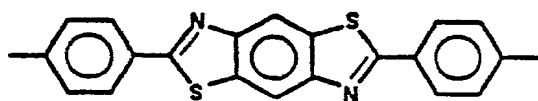
, or



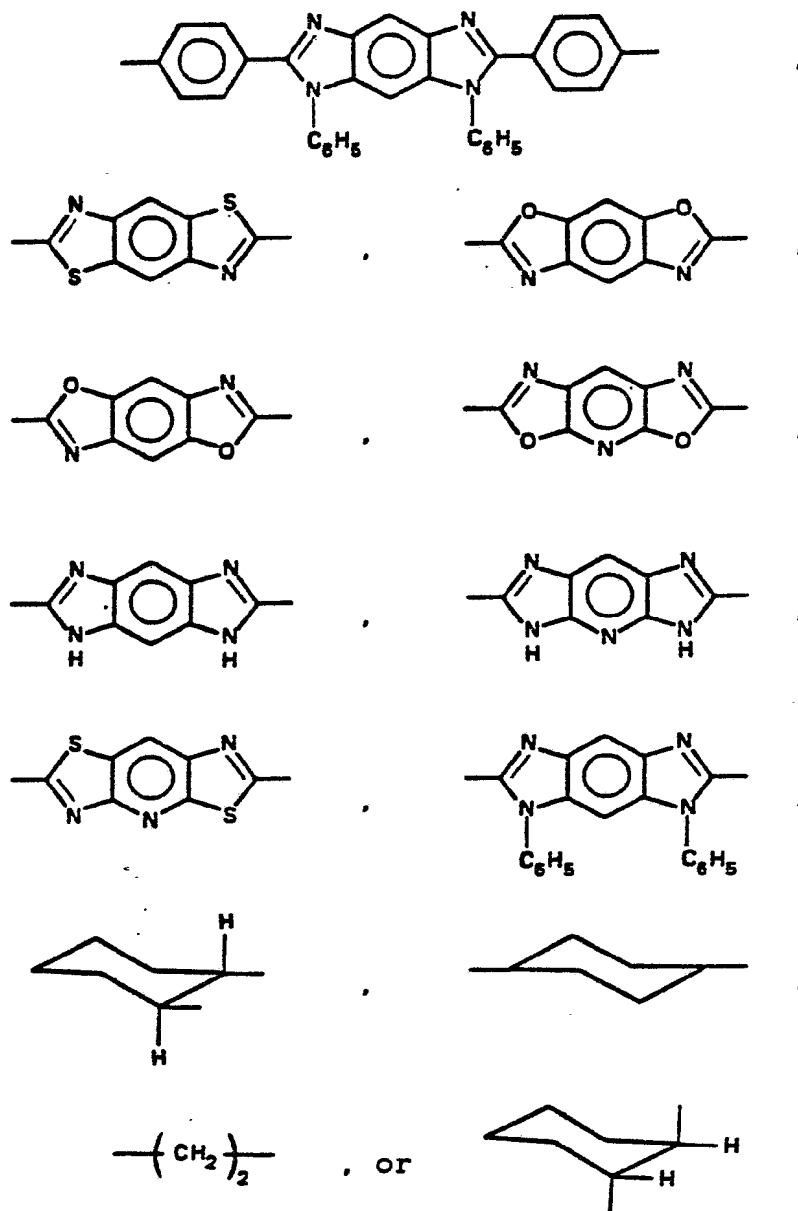
XXI is



5

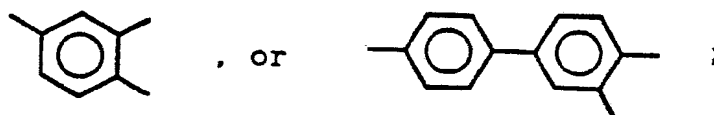


33

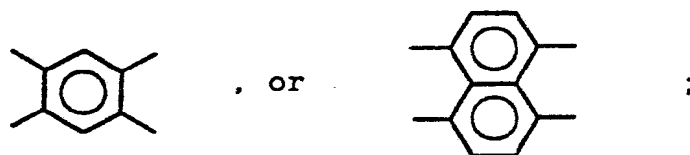


5

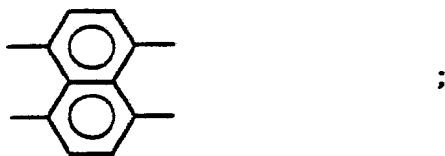
XXII is



XXIII is



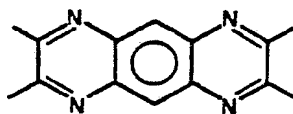
5 XXIV is



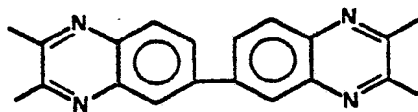


35

XXV is

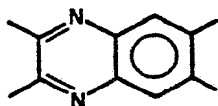


, or

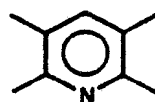
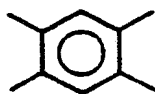


XXVI is

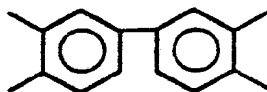
5



XXVII is

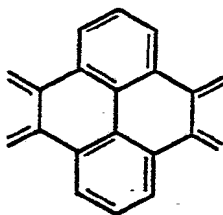


or

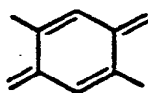


36

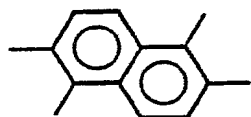
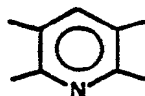
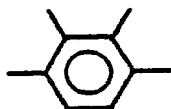
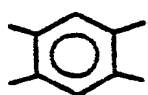
XXVIII is



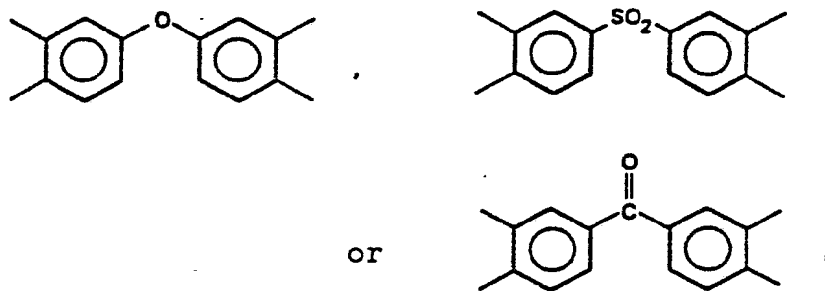
XXIX is



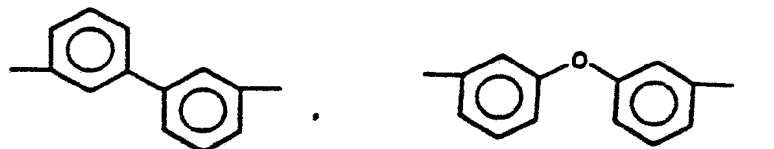
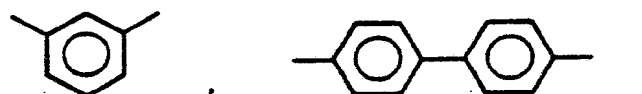
5 XXX is



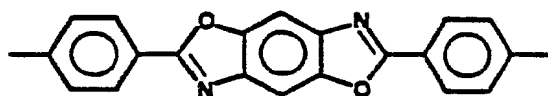
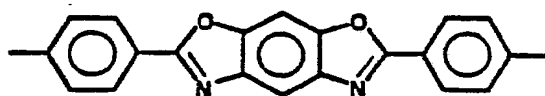
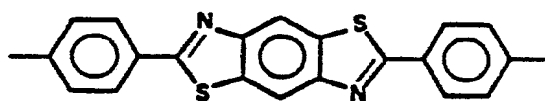
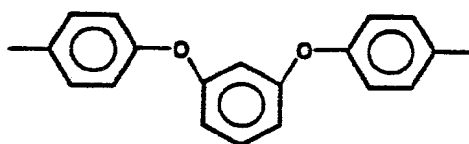
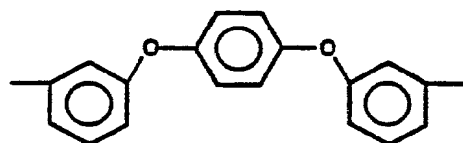
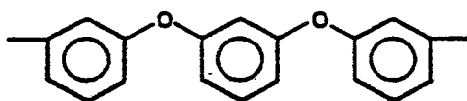
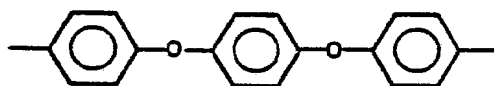
37



XXXI is

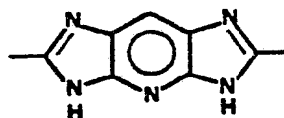
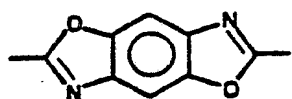
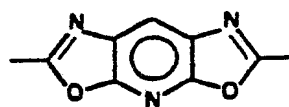
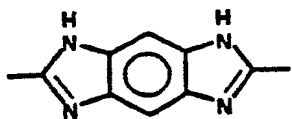
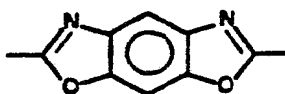
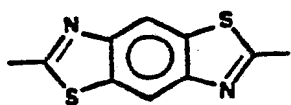
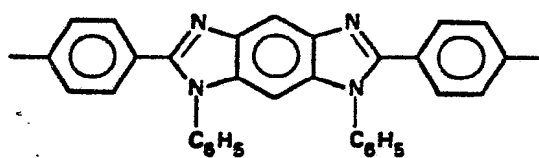
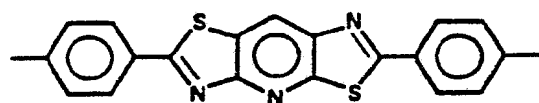
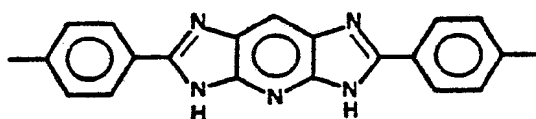
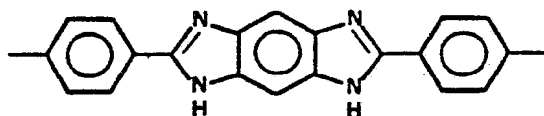
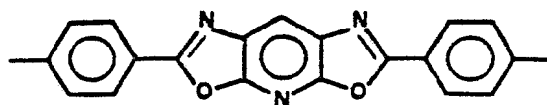


38



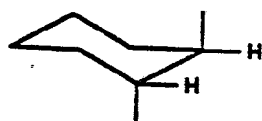
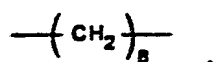
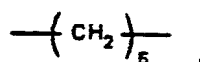
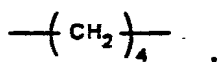
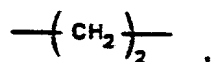
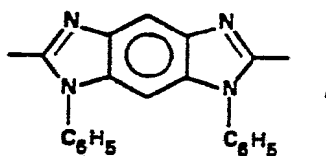
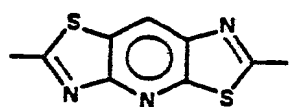
5

39

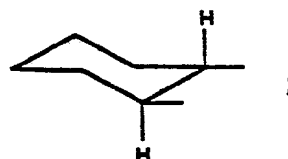


5

40

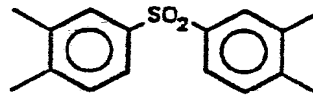
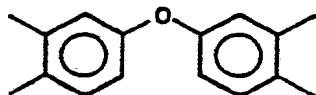
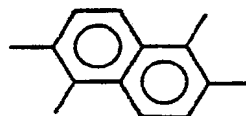
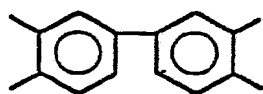
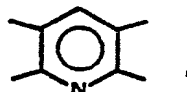
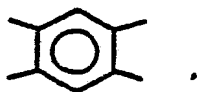


or

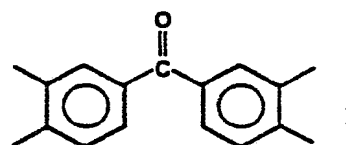


5

XXXII is



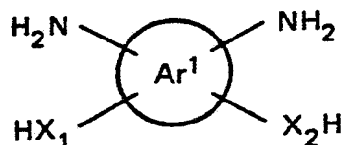
or



Any monomeric material or mixture of monomeric materials having the ability to react in polyphosphoric acid to form the extended chain polymers (i.e., the above formulas I-VIII homopolymers, and the various formulas IX-XIX copolymers and block polymers herein defined in the specification) of this invention can be utilized.

In general, suitable monomeric materials selected for use in forming liquid-crystalline extended chain polymer compositions of the present invention are of nine types as described below.

Type 1 monomers has the general formula

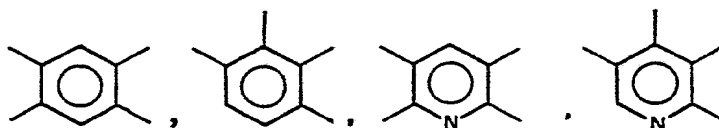


wherein  $Ar^1$  is an aromatic moiety;  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different atoms or groups selected from the class O, S, and NR; R is hydrogen or an organic group attached to N; the R's on the two nitrogen atoms where both  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are NR may be the same or different;  $NH_2$ ,  $X_1H$  and  $X_2H$  are

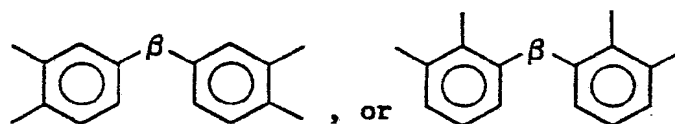
5 bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^1$ ; the groups on the left side of  $\text{Ar}^1$  are ortho with respect to one another and the groups on the right side of  $\text{Ar}^1$  are ortho with respect to one another.

10 The two sets of  $\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{XH}$  are positioned on  $\text{Ar}^1$  such that they do not both interact partially with the appropriate condensing moiety of another monomer. Monomer 1 is typically isolated as a hydrohalide salt of the monomer.

In general,  $\text{Ar}^1$  may be any aromatic moiety (carbocyclic or heterocyclic) and it may be a single ring such as



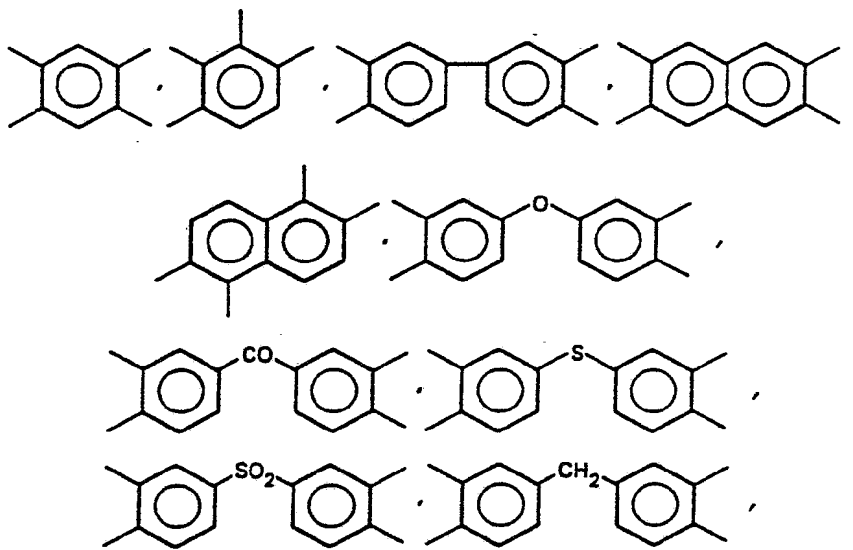
15 or it may comprise a plurality of aromatic rings connected by valence bonds or by linking atoms or groups such as



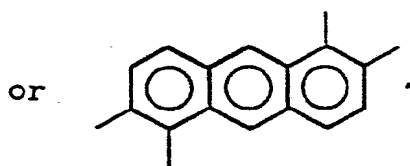
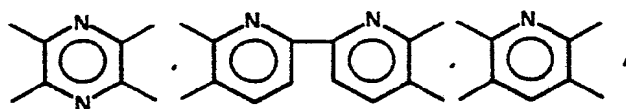
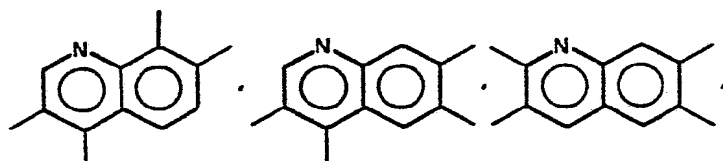
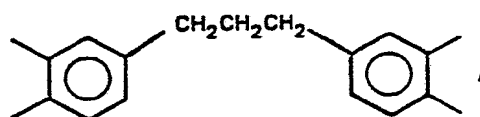
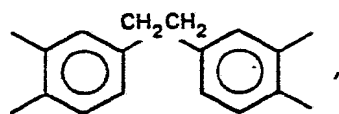
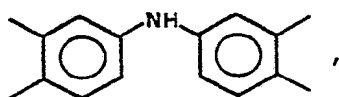


where  $\beta$  is a valence bond (as in diphenyl) or a divalent atom ( $-\text{O}-$  or  $-\text{S}-$ ) or group such as  $-\text{NR}-$  ( $\text{R}=\text{H}$  or an organic group),  $-(\text{CH}_2)_n-$  ( $n=1$  or a higher integer). Specific examples of  $\text{Ar}^1$  are as follows:

5



44



The aromatic ring or rings of  $Ar^1$ , such as those described above and others, may bear one or more substituent. These substituents, which may be organic or inorganic may be or may contain hetero atoms, may be any atom or group which is compatible with the reactant, the solvent, the polycondensation reaction and the resulting oligomer or polymer. Substituents which are chemically reactive with Types 2 thru 9 monomers (see below), with the solvent (PPA) or with the oligomeric or polymeric products are to be avoided. Also, substituents which offer steric hindrance to the polycondensation are to be avoided.

Among permissible hydrocarbon substituents are alkyl (e.g.,  $C_1$  to  $C_{10}$  straight chain and branched chain alkyl, benzyl, etc.), phenyl, chloro substituted alkyl, phenyl and benzyl. Among permissible hetero substituents are chloro, bromo, nitro, alkoxy, aryloxy,  $SO_3H$ , SR, and  $-NR_1R_2$  ( $R_1$  and  $R_2$  being organic groups).

Formula 1 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-crystalline compositions of the instant invention may also further be classified into three groups: Class 1 (1,1), Class 2 (1,2), and Class 3 (1,3). The first number of the number pairs denotes the



monomer type and the second number of the pairs denotes the monomer class.

The preferred (1,1) monomers are those wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  is a six-membered aromatic ring with the four valence positions being on carbon atoms having a 1, 2, 4, 5 relationship to each other, such as 1, 2, 4, 5-benzene or 2, 3, 5, 6-pyridine; R is H or a monovalent aromatic radical, such as phenyl, or a monovalent heteroaromatic radical, such as 2-pyridyl, or a monovalent aliphatic radical, such as methyl. Monomers (1,1) which when reacted with a diacid or a diacid derivative give two substantially collinear bonds are most preferred.

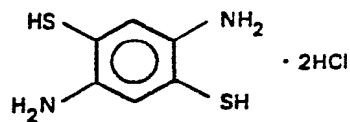
Specific examples of (1,1) monomers preferred for use in the invention include those monomers (shown as hydrohalides) in Table 1 below.

Table 1

Monomers of Type 1, Class 1

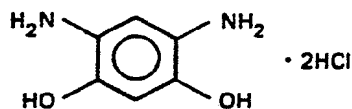


47



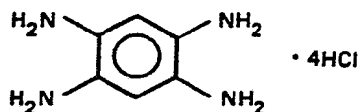
1a

2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol dihydrochloride  
 obtained according to Wolfe, et al.,  
Macromolecules, Vol. 14, Page 915 (1981).



1b

4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydrochloride  
 obtained from 4,6-dinitro-1,3-benzenediol  
 according to Wolfe, et al., Macromolecules, Vol.  
 14, Page 909 (1981).

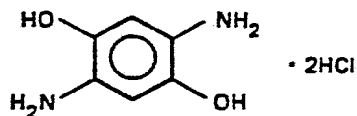


1c

1,2,4,5-tetraaminobenzene tetrahydrochloride  
 obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co. and purified  
 by recrystallization from dilute HCl by heating,  
 adding charcoal, filtering, and adding

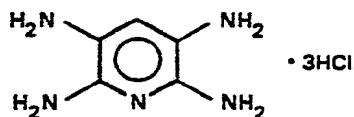
48

concentrated HCl.



1d

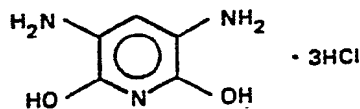
2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenediol dihydrochloride  
prepared according to Wolf, et al., J. Polymer  
5 Sci., Part A-1, Vol. 6, page 1503 (1968).



1e

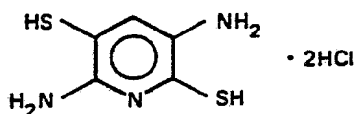
2,3,5,6-tetraaminopyridine trihydrochloride  
prepared by the dinitration of 2,6-diamino  
pyridine, followed by hydrolysis and reduction by  
10 the method of A. H. Gerber, J. Polymer Sci.,

Polymer Chemistry Ed., Vol. 11, page 1703(1973).



1f

3,5-diamino-2,6-pyridinediol trihydrochloride prepared by dinitration of 2,6-dimethoxy pyridine according to C. D. Johnson, et al., J. Chem. Soc. (B), 1967, page 1204, followed by reduction and dealkylation.

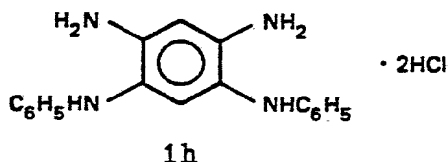


1g

3,6-diamino-2,5-pyridinedithiol dihydrochloride prepared from commercially available 2,5-diamino-pyridine by methods analogous to the

50

preparation of 1a.



$N^1, N^5$ -diphenyl-1,2,4,5-tetraaminobenzene dihydrochloride prepared starting from  $m$ -dichlorobenzene according to H. Vogel and C. S. Marvel, J. Polym. Sci., A, Vol. 1, page 1531 (1963) and purified from toluene before use.

---

The preferred (1,2) monomers are those wherein  $Ar^1$  is two six-membered aromatic rings attached by a covalent carbon-carbon bond each with valences on carbon atoms in the 3 and 4 positions, such as 3,3',4,4'-biphenyl or 4,4',5,5'-(2,2'-bipyridyl), or  $Ar^1$  is two fused six-membered rings with valence positions being on carbon atoms and having a 1,2,5,6 relationship to each other, such as 1,2,5,6-naphthalene.

The four functional groups attached to the valence positions of  $Ar^1$  by covalent bonds comprise two amino groups and the groups  $-X_1H$  and



-X<sub>2</sub>H such that one amino group is ortho to -X<sub>1</sub>H and the other amino group is ortho to X<sub>2</sub>H and X<sub>1</sub>H is attached to either the 3 or 4 position in the first case or the 1 or 2 position in the second case and -X<sub>2</sub>H is attached to either the 3' or 4' position in the first case and the 5 or 6 position in the second case. X<sub>1</sub> and X<sub>2</sub> are defined as above.

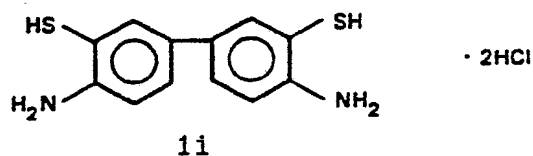
Specific examples of (1,2) monomers preferred for use in the invention include those monomers (shown as hydrohalides) in Table 2 below.

Table 2

---

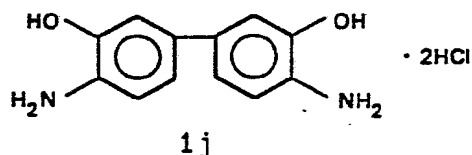
Monomers of Type 1, Class 2

---



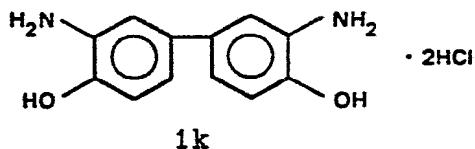
3,3'-dimercaptobenzidine dihydrochloride  
 prepared by the method of Houben-Weyl, Methoden  
 der Organischen Chemie, E. Miller, Ed., Vol IX.

page 39 (1955).



3,3'-dihydroxybenzidine dihydrochloride  
prepared by the method of C.G. Vogt and F.

5    Marschall, U. S. Patent 2,497,248 (1950) from o-  
dianisidine and aluminum chloride.

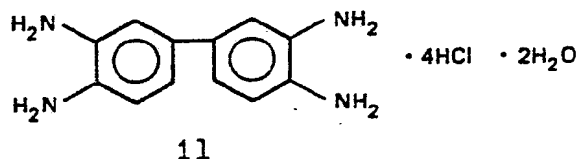


3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxybiphenyl dihydrochloride  
prepared by the method of Y. Imai, I. Taoka, K.

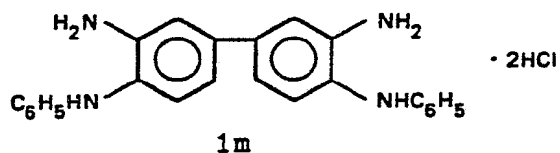
10    Uno, and Y. Iwakura, Makromol. Chem. 83, page 167

53

(1965).



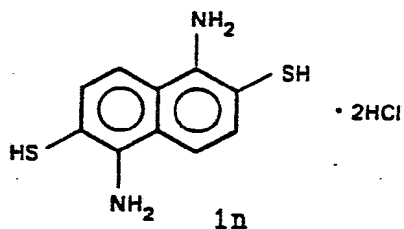
5 3,3'-diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate prepared according to (same ref. as for 1h) and the tetrahydrochloride recrystallized from dilute HCl containing stannous chloride by adding concentrated HCl.



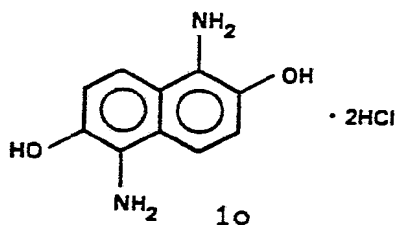
10 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dianilinobiphenyl dihydrochloride prepared from dinitration of 4,4'-dichlorobiphenyl, displacement of the chloro

54

groups by aniline, and reduction.

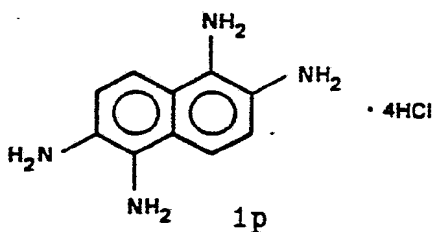


1,5-diamino-2,6-naphthalenedithiol dihydrochloride  
by methods analogous to Monomers 1a and 1i.



5

1,5-diamino-2,6-naphthalenediol dihydrochloride  
prepared from 2,6-dichloro-1,5-dinitro-  
naphthalene.



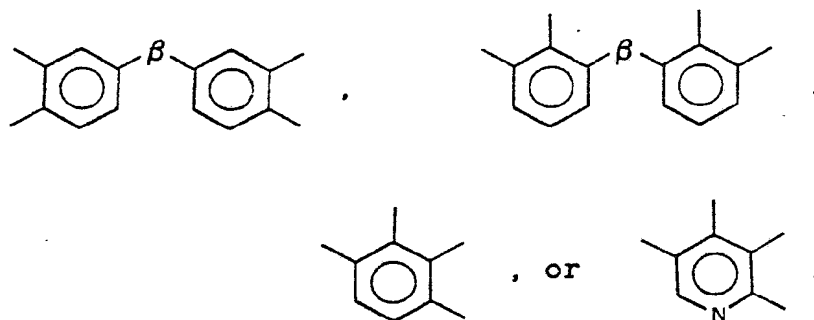
10

1,2,5,6-tetraminonaphthalene tetrahydrochloride  
prepared by the amination of 2,6-dichloro-1,5-  
dinitro-naphthalene followed by catalytic

reduction according to K. Imai, N. Kurihara, L. Mathias, J. Wittmann, W. B. Alston, and J. K. Stille, Macromolecules, **6**, 158 (1973).

---

- 5 The preferred (1,3) monomers are those wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  is any aromatic moiety with two sets of ortho-valences at carbon atoms, such as



- 10 wherein  $\beta$  is a bivalent aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety, O, S,  $\text{SO}_2$ ,  $\text{C}=\text{O}$ ,  $-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2-$ , etc.

- 15 The four functional groups attached to the valence positions of  $\text{Ar}^1$  are divided into two sets ( $\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{X}_1\text{H}$ ) and ( $\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{X}_2\text{H}$ ) with the

functional groups within each set being positioned ortho to each other and the two sets positioned on Ar<sup>1</sup> such that they cannot simultaneously react with the same functional group of another monomer. X<sub>1</sub> and X<sub>2</sub> are defined as above.

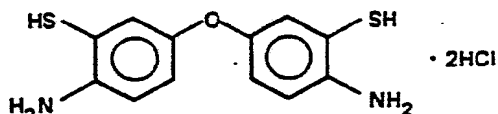
Specific examples of (1,3) monomers preferred for use in the invention include those monomers (shown as hydrohalides or as monomers) in Table 3 below.

Table 3

---

Monomers of Type 1, Class 3

---



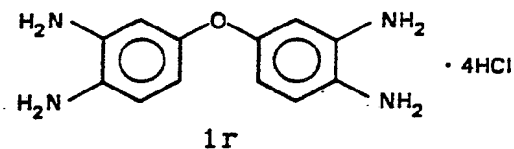
1q

3,3'-dimercapto-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl ether dihydrochloride prepared according to the method of V. V.

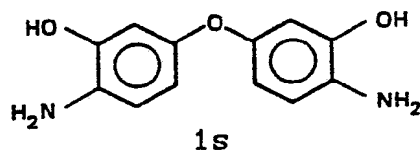
Korshak, E. S. Krongauz, A. P. Travnikova, A. L.

Rasanov, and A. D. Katsarava, Dokl. Akad. Nauk.

SSSR, 196, 106 (1971).

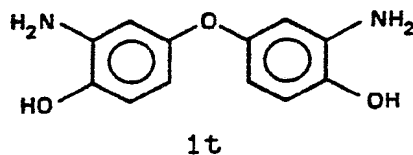


3,3',4,4'-tetraaminodiphenyl ether tetrahydrochloride  
obtained commercially from Pfaltz & Bauer.



5

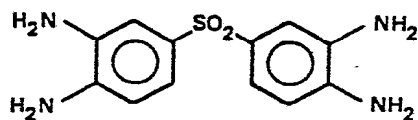
3,3'-dihydroxy-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl ether  
is prepared according to the method of S. U.  
Kantor and J. Sonnenberg, U. S. Patent 3,306,876  
(1967).



10

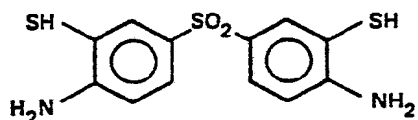
3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxydiphenyl ether  
prepared according to the method of A. S.

Lindsey, S. E. Hunt, and G. K. L. Gibson, U.K.  
Patent No. 1,181,531 (1970).



1u

5        3,3',4,4'-tetraaminodiphenyl sulfone  
prepared from commercially available 4,4'-  
diaminodiphenyl sulfone by acetylation,  
dinitration, hydrolysis, and reduction.



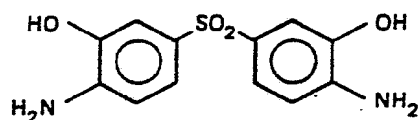
1v

10        3,3'-dimercapto-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl sulfone  
prepared from commercially available 4,4'-  
diaminodiphenyl sulfone by methods analogous to



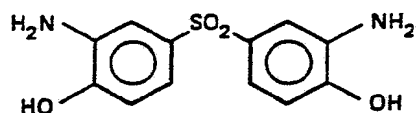
59

the preparation of 1a and 1i.



1w

3,3'-dihydroxy-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl sulfone  
prepared according to the method of G. I. Braz,  
5 I. Y. Kardash, and V. S. Yakubovich, Polym. Sci.  
USSR., 8, page 2013 (1967).

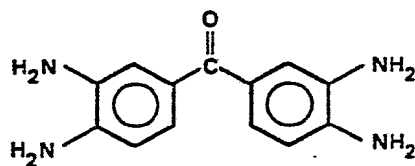


1x

3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxydiphenyl sulfone  
prepared from commercially available 4,4'-  
10 dihydroxydiphenyl sulfone by acetylation.

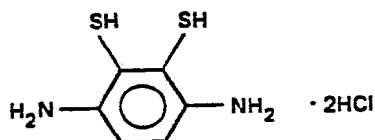
60

dinitration, hydrolysis and reduction.



1y

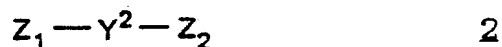
3,3',4,4'-tetraaminobenzophenone  
available commercially from Polysciences, Inc.



1z

3,6-diamino-1,2-benzenedithiol dihydrochloride  
prepared by isolation of 2,7-diaminobenzol[1,2-  
d;6,5-d']bisthiazole from the scheme to prepare  
1a followed by hydrolysis.

Type 2 monomers has the general formula



5 wherein  $Y^2$  is a bivalent organic group and  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  are electron-defficient carbon groups and may be the same or different groups selected from the following class:

10

-COOH	-CSSH	-COBr	-CSI
-CSOH	-COC1	-CSBr	-CONHR <sub>1</sub>
-COSH	-CSC1	-COI	-CSNHR <sub>1</sub>
			-CN

(R<sub>1</sub> = H or an organic group bonded to N by a carbon atom)

15 The only requirement of  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  is that they react with the  $X_1H$  and  $X_2H$  and with the two hydrogen atoms of the primary amino groups of Type 1 monomers to form suitable leaving entities, such as water, hydrogen sulfide, hydrogen halide, ammonia, etc.

The bivalent group  $Y^2$  may be an aromatic group, an acyclic aliphatic group, or a cycloaliphatic



group, and such groups may be substituted by hydrocarbon groups (aliphatic or aromatic) and by hetero atoms and groups. In general any of groups described above as substituents of the aromatic ring or rings of  $Ar^1$  may be used subject to the same restrictions.

Formula 2 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-crystalline compositions of the instant invention may also further be classified into three groups: Class 1 (2,1), Class 2 (2,2), and Class 3 (2,3). The first number of the number pairs denotes the monomer type and the second number of the pairs denotes the monomer class.

The preferred (2,1) monomers are those wherein  $Y^2$  is nil, or  $Y_2$  comprise at least two carbon atoms to which are attached  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  such that the two exocyclic bonds between  $Y^2$  and  $Z_1$  and between  $Y^2$  and  $Z_2$  have a rigid and fixed relationship to each other and are substantially collinear, or  $Y^2$  may also be a cycloaliphatic group that has at least two carbon atoms to which are attached  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  such that the two bonds between  $Y^2$  and  $Z_1$  and between  $Y^2$  and  $Z_2$  have a highly preferred relationship to each other that is substantially collinear. Carboxylic acid derivatives of 2j-2q



and 2z (as herein described below) such as COOH that decarboxylate at temperatures below that required for polycondensation with Type 1 monomers are less preferred.

- 5 Specific examples of (2,1) monomers preferred for use in the invention include those monomers in Table 4 below.

Table 4

10 Monomers of Type 2, Class 1



2a

terephthalic acid

obtained from Amoco Chemicals Co. and micronized

64

and dried before use.



2b

terephthaloyl chloride

obtained from Aldrich and sublimed immediately  
before use.

5



2c

1,4-benzenedicarboxamide

prepared from 2b or obtained commercially from  
Pfaltz and Bauer.



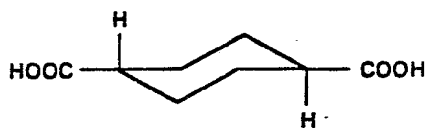
2d

terephthalonitrile

10

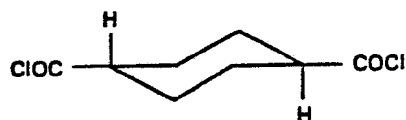
65

obtained from Pfaltz and Bauer.



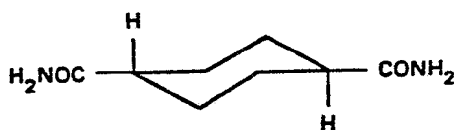
2e

trans-1,4-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid  
obtained from Aldrich and recrystallized from  
water.



2f

trans-1,4-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid chloride  
prepared from 2e.

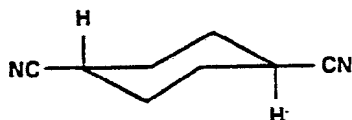


2g

trans-1,4-cyclohexanedicarboxamide

66

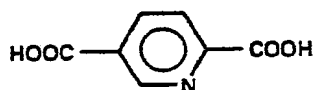
prepared from 2f.



2h

trans-1,4-dicyanocyclohexane

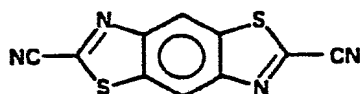
prepared from 2g.



2i

2,5-pyridinedicarboxylic acid

obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.



2j

2,6-benzo[1,2-d:4,5-d']bisthiazole-4,8-dinitrile

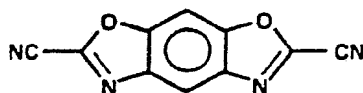
prepared by diazotization of 2,6-

diaminobenzobisthiazole (see reference for 1a)



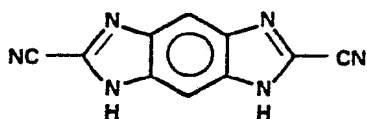
67

followed by treatment with cuprous cyanide.



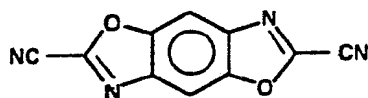
2k

5      2,6-benzo[1,2-d:5,4-d']bisoxazololedinitrile  
prepared from the condensation of compound 1b  
with urea followed by diazotization as for  
compound 2j.



2l

2,6-benzobisimidazololedinitrile  
prepared as for 2k using compound 1c.

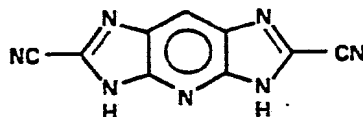


2m

10      2,6-benzo[1,2-d:4,5-d']bisoxazololedinitrile

68

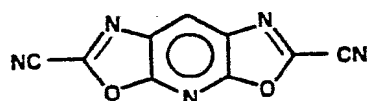
prepared as described for 2k using compound 1d.



2n

2,6-pyridobisimidazoledinitrile

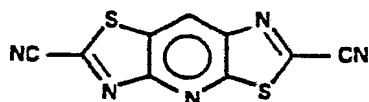
prepared as for 2k using compound 1e.



2o

2,6-pyrido[2,3-d:6,5-d']bisoxazoledinitrile

prepared as for 2k using compound 1f.



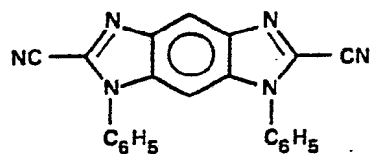
2p

2,6-pyrido[2,3-d:5,6-d']bisthiazoledinitrile

prepared as for 2j, using 2,6-diaminopyridobisthiazole as prepared in the

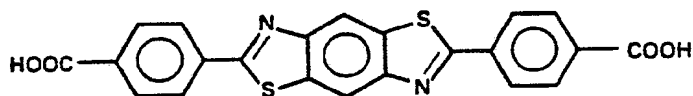
69

synthesis of 1g.



2q

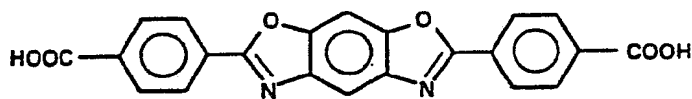
1,7-diphenyl-2,6-benzobisimidazolidinitrile  
prepared as for 2k using compound 1h.



2r

5

2,6-bis(4-carboxyphenyl)benzo[1,2-d:4,5-d']bisthiazole  
prepared by the condensation of compound 1a with  
p-toluic acid followed by oxidation.



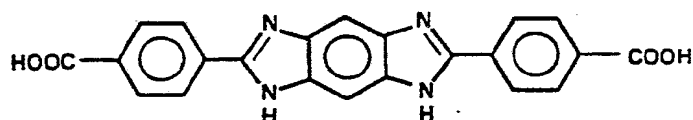
2s

10

2,6-bis(4-carboxyphenyl)benzo[1,2-d:5,4-d']bisoxazole  
prepared by the condensation of 1b with p-toluic

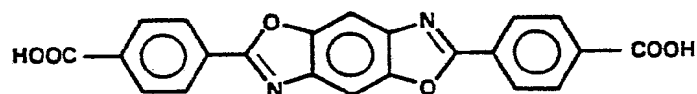
70

acid followed by oxidation.



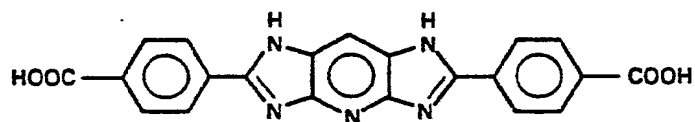
2t

2,6-bis(4-carboxyphenyl)benzobisimidazole  
prepared by a method similar to 2s using 1c.



2u

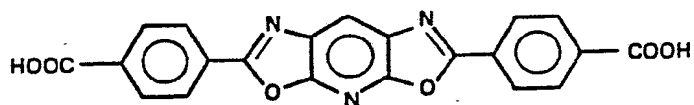
2,6-bis(4-carboxyphenyl)benzo[1,2-d:4,5-d']bisoxazole  
prepared by method similar to 2s using 1d.



2v

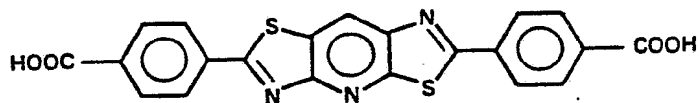
2,6-bis(4-carboxyphenyl)pyridobisimidazole

prepared by a method similar to 2s using 1e.



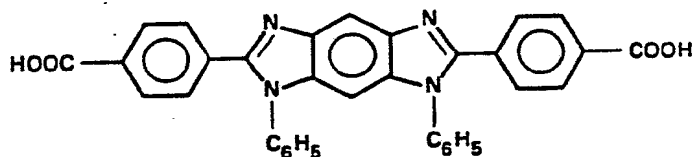
2w

2,6-bis(4-carboxyphenyl)pyrido[2,3-d:6,5-d']bisoxazole  
prepared by a method similar to 2s using 1f.



2x

2,6-bis(4-carboxyphenyl)pyrido[2,3-d:5,6-d']bisthiazole  
prepared by a method similar to 2s using 1g.

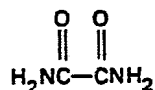


2y

1,7-diphenyl-2,6-bis(4-carboxyphenyl)benzobisimidazole

72

prepared by a method similar to 2s using 1h.



2z

oxamide

obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.

5

The preferred (2,2) monomers are those wherein  $Y^2$  comprise two six-membered rings attached by a covalent carbon-carbon bond each with valences on the 4-position or each with valences on the 3-position, such as 4,4'-biphenyl or 3,3'-biphenyl, or  $Y^2$  comprise two fused six-membered rings with valence positions being on carbon atoms and having a 1,5 relationship to each other, such as 2,6-naphthalene or 2,6-quinoline, or  $Y^2$  is a cycloaliphatic divalent moiety with valences on carbon atoms and in a 1,2-trans configuration, or  $Y^2$  is a variety of condensed aromatic and heteroaromatic ring systems attached only by carbon-carbon bonds and having 2 valences,  $Z_1$  and  $Z_2$  are the same as defined above.

Specific examples of (2,2) monomers preferred for use in the invention include those monomers in Table 5 below.

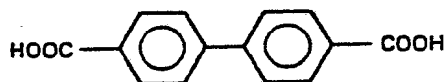
Table 5

5

---

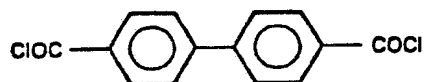
Monomers of Type 2, Class 2

---



2aa

10 4,4'-biphenyldicarboxylic acid  
obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.

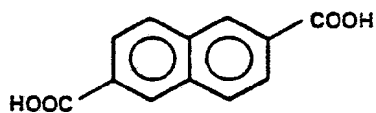


2bb

4,4'-biphenyldicarboxylic acid chloride

74

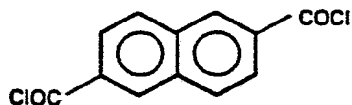
prepared from 2aa.



2cc

2,6-naphthalenedicarboxylic acid

5 prepared according to the method of B. Raecke and  
H. Schirp, Org. Syn. Coll. Vol. V, page 813  
(1973) from commercially available 1,8-  
naphthalenedicarboxylic anhydride.

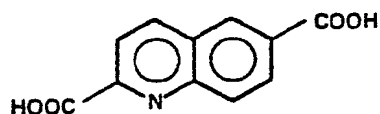


2dd

10 2,6-naphthalenedicarboxylic acid chloride  
prepared from 2cc by treatment with thionyl



chloride.

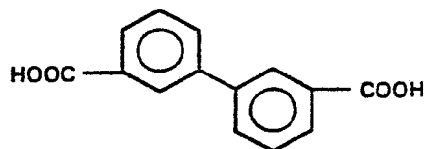


2ee

2,6-quinolinedicarboxylic acid

prepared from commercially available (Aldrich)

5 2,6-dimethyl quinoline by oxidation.

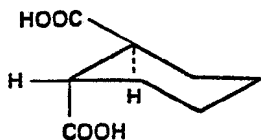


2ff

3,3'-biphenyldicarboxylic acid

prepared from o-nitrobenzoic acid by the method  
of M. Kurihara and N. Yoda, J. Macromol. Sci.

10 Chem A1(6), page 1069 (1967).

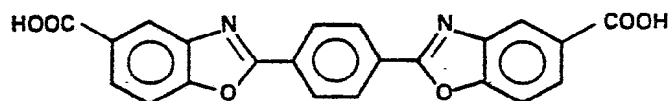


2gg

trans-1,2-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid

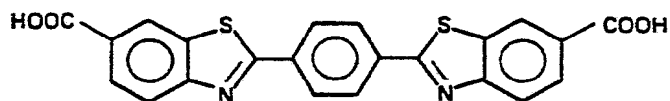
76

was obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co. and recrystallized from methanol before use.



2hh

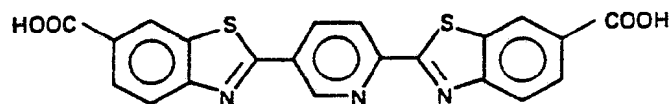
- 5 1,4-bis(5-carboxybenzoxazole-2-yl)benzene prepared by the method of J. Preston, W. De Winter and W. L. Hofferbert, J. Heterocyclic Chem. 5, page 269 (1968).



2ii

- 1,4-bis(6-carboxybenzothiazole-2-yl)benzene

prepared by methods analogous to 2hh.



2jj

2,5-bis(6-carboxybenzothiazole-2-yl)pyridine.  
prepared by methods analogous to 2hh.

5

The preferred (2,3) monomers are those wherein  $Y^2$  may be any aromatic, heteroaromatic and aliphatic divalent species not previously described.

Specific examples of (2,3) monomers preferred for  
use in the invention include those monomers in  
Table 6 below.

Table 6

Monomers of Type 2, Class 3

15

78



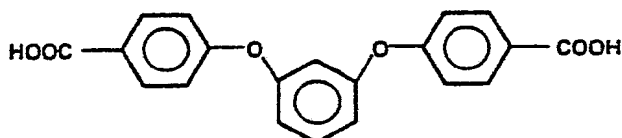
2kk

4,4'-(p-phenylenedioxy)dibenzoyl chloride  
prepared according to the method of R. C. Evers,  
F. E. Arnold, and T. E. Helminiak Macromolecules,  
14 , page 925 (1981).



211

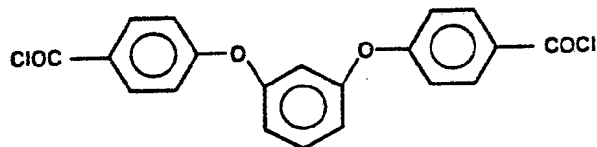
4,4'-(p-phenylenedioxy)dibenzonitrile  
prepared according to method of T. Takekoshi, J.  
G. Wirth, Dr. Heath, J. E. Kochanowski, J. S.  
Manello, and M. J. Weber, Polym. Prepr., J. Am.  
Chem. Soc., 20(1), page 179 (1979).



2mm

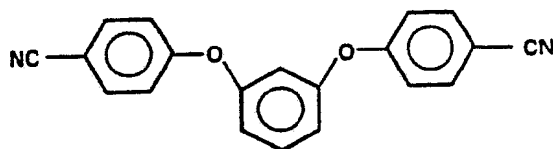
4,4'-(m-phenylenedioxy)dibenzoic acid  
prepared according to method of T. Takekoshi, J.  
G. Wirth, Dr. Heath, J. E. Kochanowski, J. S.  
Manello, and M. J. Weber, Polym. Prepr., J. Am.

Chem. Soc., 20 (1), page 179(1979).



2nn

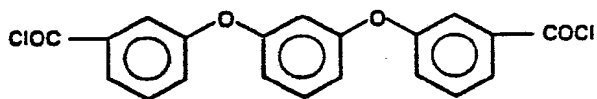
4,4'-(m-phenylenedioxy)dibenzoyl chloride  
from 2mm according to method of R. C. Evers, F.  
5 E. Arnold, and T. E. Helminiak, Macromolecules,  
14, page 925(1981).



2oo

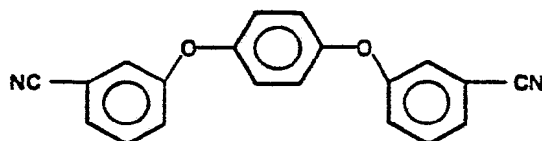
4,4'-(m-phenylenedioxy)dibenzonitrile  
prepared according to the method of R. C. Evers,  
10 F. E. Arnold, and T. E. Helminiak Macromolecules.

14. page 925(1981).



2pp

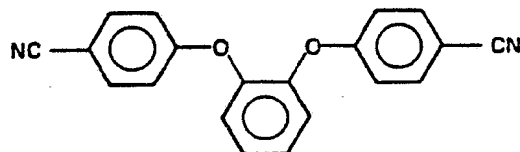
3,3'-(m-phenylenedioxy)dibenzoyl chloride  
according to the method of R. C. Evers, F. E.  
5 Arnold, and T. E. Helminiak Macromolecules, 14,  
page 925(1981).



2qq

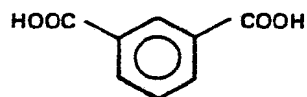
3,3'-(p-phenylenedioxy)dibenzonitrile  
prepared according to the method of R. C. Evers.  
10 F. E. Arnold, and T. E. Helminiak Macromolecules,

14. page 925(1981).



2rr

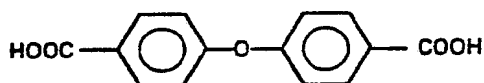
4,4'-(o-phenylenedioxy)dibenzonitrile  
prepared according to the method of R. C. Evers,  
5 F. E. Arnold, and T. E. Helminiak Macromolecules,  
14. page 925(1981).



2ss

isophthalic acid

obtained from Pfaltz and Bauer and recrystallized  
10 from 90% ethanol.

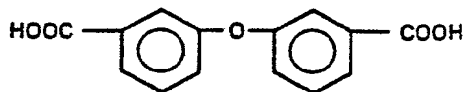


2tt

4,4'-dicarboxydiphenyl ether

82

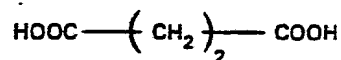
obtained from Polysciences, Inc.



2uu

3,3'-dicarboxydiphenyl ether

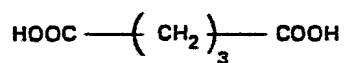
prepared from a coupling of m-cresol and m-bromotoluene followed by oxidation by the method of M. Tomita, J. Pharm. Soc., Japan, 57, page 391(1937).



2vv

succinic acid

obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.

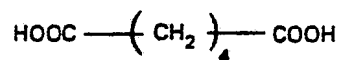


2ww

glutaric acid



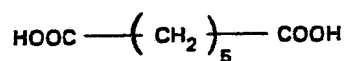
obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.



2xx

adipic acid

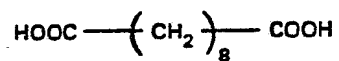
obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.



2yy

pimelic acid

obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.



2zz

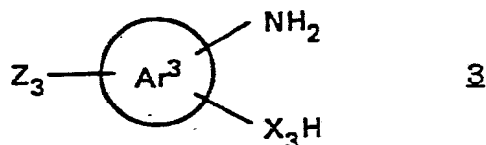
sebacic acid

10 obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.

---

84

Type 3 monomers has the general formula



wherein  $\text{Ar}^3$  is a trivalent aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety, and  $\text{X}_3$  is O, S, or N-R (R = H or an organic group).

Formula 3 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-crystalline compositions of the instant invention may also further be classified into two groups: Class 1 (3,1) and Class 2 (3,2). The first number of the number pairs denotes the monomer type and the second number of the pairs denotes the monomer class.

The preferred (3,1) monomers are those wherein  $\text{Z}_3$  is the same as defined for  $\text{Z}_1$ ,  $\text{Ar}^3$  is a trivalent aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety with the three valence positions being on carbon atoms and having the relationship that the valence bond between  $\text{Z}_3$  and  $\text{Ar}^3$  is nearly collinear with the same valence bond in subsequently condensed

monomers, and  $X_3$  is defined as for  $X_1$  in Table 1.  $X_3$  and  $NH_2$  are positioned ortho to each other on  $Ar^3$ .

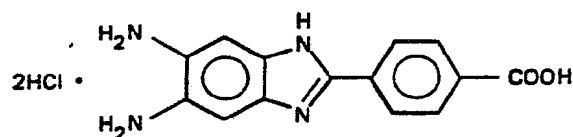
Specific examples of (3,1) monomers preferred for use in the invention include the monomer in Table 7 below.

Table 7

---

Monomers of Type 3, Class 1

---



3k

2-(4-carboxyphenyl)-5,6-diaminobenzimidazole  
dihydrochloride

prepared according to R. F. Kovar and F. E.

Arnold, J. Polym. Sci. Polym. Chem. Ed., 14, page 2807 (1976).

---

The preferred (3,2) monomers are those wherein  $Z_3$ ,  $Ar^3$ , and  $X_3$  are defined as above. The bonds that are formed in homopolymerization of (3,2) monomers are defined in their spatial relationship having an angle of catenation of less than about 150 to about 180°.

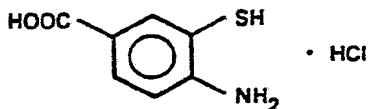
Specific examples of (3,2) monomers preferred for use in the invention include those monomers (shown as hydrohalides or as monomers) in Table 8 below.

Table 8

---

Monomers of Type 3, Class 2

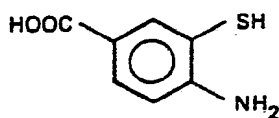
---



3a

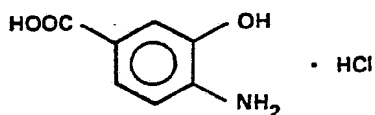
3-mercapto-4-aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride

prepared according to Wolfe, AFOSR Final Technical Report, Dec. 15, 1980.



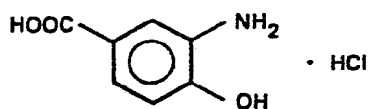
3b

3-mercapto-4-aminobenzoic acid  
prepared as described in Example 5 .



3c

5      3-hydroxy-4-aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride  
prepared as described by Y. Imai, K. Uno, and Y.  
Iwakura, Makromol. Chem., **83**, 179(1965).

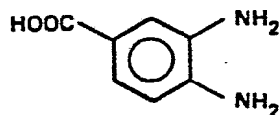


3d

10      3-amino-4-hydroxybenzoic acid hydrochloride  
prepared as described by K. Auwers and H. Rohrig.

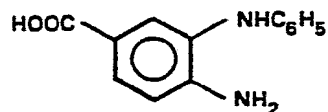
88

Chem. Ber., 30, 992(1897).



3e

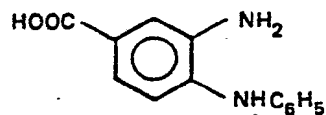
3,4-diaminobenzoic acid  
obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co. and  
5 recrystallized from deoxygenated water before  
use.



3f

N<sup>3</sup>-phenyl-3,4-diaminobenzoic acid  
prepared from p-aminobenzoic acid by  
10 chlorination, oxidation to 3-chloro-4-  
nitrobenzoic acid, followed by anilation and

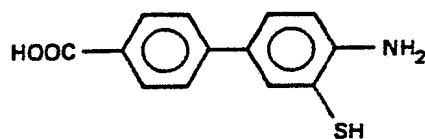
reduction.



3g

N<sup>4</sup>-phenyl-3,4-diaminobenzoic acid

5 prepared by nitration of commercially available  
(Aldrich) p-chlorobenzoic acid, followed by  
anilation and reduction.



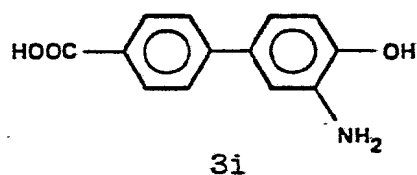
3h

4-carboxy-3'-mercapto-4'-aminobiphenyl

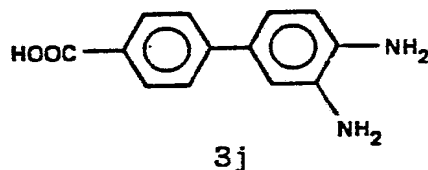
10 prepared by nitration of commercially available  
4-carboxybiphenyl (ICN/K and K) and reduction to  
4-amino-4'-carboxybiphenyl, followed by placement  
of the  $\alpha$ -mercapto group by methods analogous to

90

those described for 3a.



4-carboxy-3'-amino-4'-hydroxybiphenyl  
prepared by the nitration of commercially  
5 available (ICN/K and K) 4-carboxybiphenyl,  
conversion to 4-carboxy-p-phenol by reduction and  
diazotization, followed by acetylation,  
nitration, hydrolysis, and reduction.

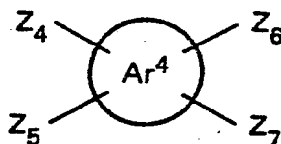


10 4-carboxy-3',4'-diaminobiphenyl  
prepared by acetylation of 4-amino-4'-  
carboxylbiphenyl (see preparation of 3h) followed  
by nitration, hydrolysis, and reduction.

---



Type 4 monomers have the general formula



4

- wherein  $Z_4$ ,  $Z_5$ ,  $Z_6$ , and  $Z_7$  are the same or different and are chosen from the list of carboxylic acid derivatives given for  $Z_1$  in Table 4.  $Z_4$  and  $Z_5$ , or  $Z_6$  and  $Z_7$ , or both sets can also be carboxylic acid anhydride groups.  $Ar^4$  is an aromatic or aromatic heterocyclic moiety having four valence positions at carbon atoms.
- $Ar^4$  can be a six-member ring with the valence positions having 1, 2, 4, 5 relationship, or  $Ar^4$  can be two condensed six-member rings, such as naphthalene.  $Z_4$  and  $Z_5$  as one set and  $Z_6$  and  $Z_7$  as another set must either be ortho-positioned within each set or bear a 1, 4, 5, 8 relationship to each other. An (imaginary) line perpendicular to the bond between the valence carbons attached to  $Z_4$  and  $Z_5$  must be collinear with the corresponding (imaginary) line for  $Z_6$  and  $Z_7$ .
- Formula 4 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-

crystalline compositions of the instant invention are classified as Class 1 (4,1). The first number of the number pairs denotes the monomer type and the second number of the pairs denotes the monomer class.

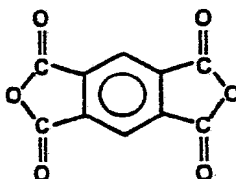
Specific examples of (4,1) monomers preferred for use in the invention include those monomers in Table 9 below.

Table 9

---

Monomers of Type 4, Class 1

---

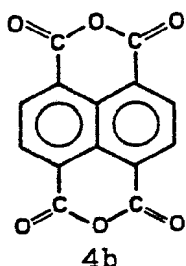


4a

pyromellitic dianhydride

obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co. and sublimed

or recrystallized (acetic anhydride) before use.

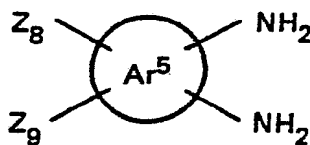


1,4,5,8-naphthalenetetracarboxylic dianhydride  
obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.

5

---

Type 5 monomers has the general formula



5

wherein  $Z_8$  and  $Z_9$  are defined as for  $Z_4$  and  $Z_5$  in  
Table 9,  $Ar^5$  is defined as in Table 9, the two  
amino groups are ortho to each other, and  $Z_8$ ,  $Z_9$ ,  
and the two amino groups are positioned such that  
two imaginary lines drawn perpendicular to the  
bonds between their valence carbons are  
collinear.

10

Formula 5 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-crystalline compositions of the instant invention are classified as Class 1 (5,1). The number pair (5,1) has the same significance as above.

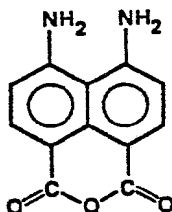
Specific examples of (5,1) monomers preferred for use in the invention include the monomer in Table 10 below.

Table 10

---

Monomers of Type 5, Class 1

---

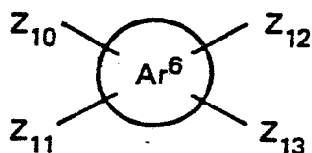


5a

4,5-diaminonaphthalene-1,8-dicarboxylic anhydride prepared from the dinitroderivative by chemical reduction according to I. Honda and M. Okazaki, J. Soc. Org. Synthetic Chem. (Japan), 7, page 25(1950).

---

Type 6 monomer has the general formula



6

wherein  $Ar^6$  represents an aromatic moiety and is a tetrahydroxy fused ring system,  $Z_{10}$ ,  $Z_{11}$ ,  $Z_{12}$ ,  $Z_{13}$  are the same HO atoms bonded to carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$ .

In general,  $Ar^6$  may comprise a single or a plurality of aromatic rings in the center of a completely conjugated fused ring system. The center aromatic ring or rings of the completely conjugated fused ring system can be any of those described above, and others.

Formula 6 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-crystalline compositions of the instant invention may also be further classified into two groups: Class 1 (6.1), and Class 2 (6.2). The number pairs have the same significance as above.

The preferred (6,1) monomers are those wherein  $\text{Ar}^6$  comprise a single center aromatic ring in the center of the fused ring system.

- 5 The preferred (6,2) monomers are those wherein  $\text{Ar}^6$  comprise at least two center aromatic rings in the center of the fused ring system.

Specific examples of (6,1) and (6,2) preferred for use in the invention include those monomers in Tables 11 and 12 respectively.

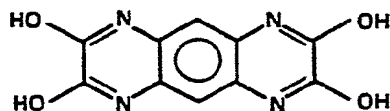
10

Table 11

---

Monomers of Type 6, Class 1

---



6a

15

2,3,7,8-tetrahydroxy-1,4,6,9-tetraazaanthracene prepared from condensation of 1,2,4,5-tetraaminobenzene with oxalic acid according to

H. Tadamus, F. DeSchryver, W. DeWinter, and C.  
S. Marvel, J. Polym. Sci. A-1, 4, page 2831 (1966).

---

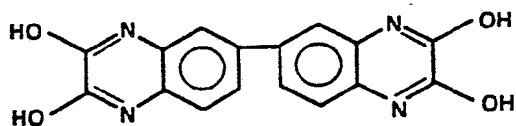
Table 12

5

---

Monomers of Type 6, Class 2

---



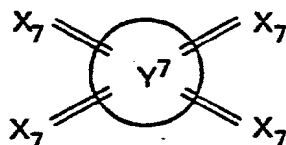
6b

10

2,2',3,3'-tetrahydroxy-6,6'-biquinoxaline  
prepared from condensation of 3,3'-  
diaminobenzidine with oxalic acid according to  
method of H. Tadamus, et al., J. Polym. Sci. A-1,  
4, page 2831 (1966).

---

Type 7 monomer has the general formula



7

5 wherein  $Y^7$  represents an aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety and is a fused ring carbon group, the  $X_7$ 's are double bonded to carbon of  $Y^7$ .

10 Formula 7 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-crystalline compositions of the instant invention can be classified as Class 1 (7,1). The number pair (7,1) has the same significance as above.

A specific example of (7,1) preferred for use in the present invention is 7a in Table 13 below.

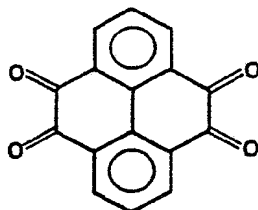


Table 13

---

Monomers of Type 7, Class 1

---



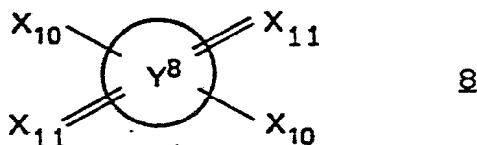
7a

1,2,6,7-tetraketopyrene

M. Corell, and H. Streck, *Ann.* 531, page 6 (1937).

100

Type 8 monomer has the general formula



5 wherein  $Y^8$  is a single carbon cyclic moiety,  $X_{10}$  and  $X_{11}$  are HO and O atoms respectively, bonded to carbon atoms of  $Y^8$ .

10 Formula 8 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-crystalline compositions of the instant invention can be classified as Class 1 (8,1). The number pair (8,1) has the same significance as above.

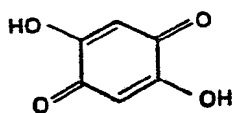
A specific example of (8,1) preferred for use in the present invention is 8a in Table 14 below.

Table 14

---

 Monomers of Type 8, Class 1
 

---

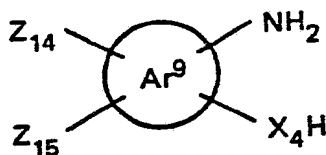


8a

5                      2,5-dihydroxy-1,4-benzoquinone  
 obtained from Aldrich Chemical Co.

---

Type 9 monomer has the general formula



9

10                      wherein Ar<sup>9</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is  
 a partially fused ring system, Z<sub>14</sub> and Z<sub>15</sub> are OH  
 atoms, X<sub>4</sub> are selected from the class O, S, and  
 NR; R is H or an organic group attached to N;

102

of Ar<sup>9</sup>; NH<sub>2</sub> and X<sub>4</sub>H are positioned ortho; Z<sub>14</sub> and Z<sub>15</sub> are positioned ortho.

Formula 9 monomers useful in preparing the extended chain polymers and novel liquid-crystalline compositions of the present invention can be classified as Class 1 (9,1). The number pair (9,1) has the same significance as above.

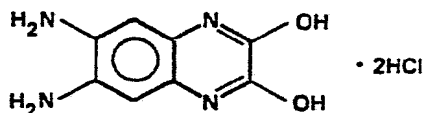
A specific example of (9,1) preferred for use in the present invention is 9a in Table 15 below.

Table 15

---

Monomers of Type 9, Class 1

---



9a

2,3-dihydroxy-6,7-diaminoquinoxaline dihydrochloride prepared from 1,2-diamino-4,5-dinitrobenzene by condensation with oxalic acid followed by reduction according to R. F. Kovar and F. E. Arnold, J. Polym. Sci., Polym. Chem. Ed., 14, page 2807(1976).

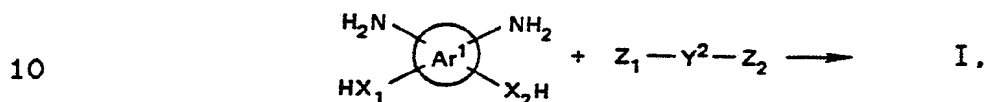
---

All of the above-cited patents and/or publications of Tables 1-15 are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

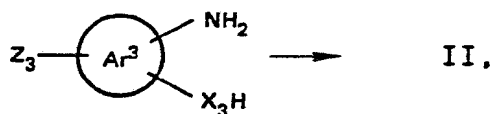
5 In accordance with the practice of the present invention, the synthesis of the aforementioned formulas I-VIII homopolymers may be illustrated by the following general reaction system:

### Reaction Mechanism

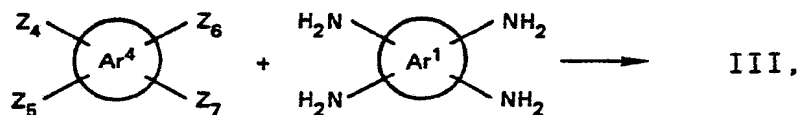
Formation of formula I homopolymer



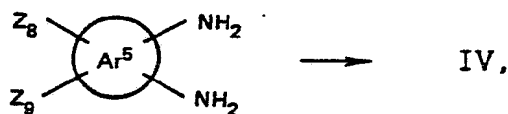
Formation of formula II homopolymer



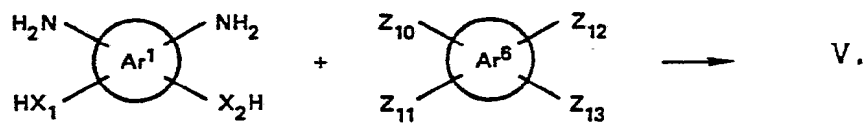
Formation of formula III homopolymer



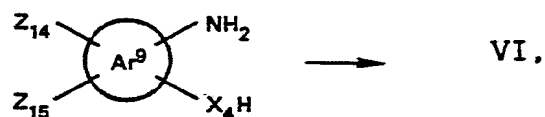
15 Formation of formula IV homopolymer



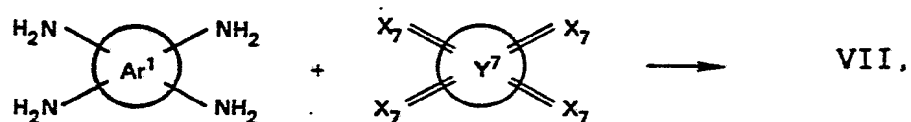
Formation of formula V homopolymer



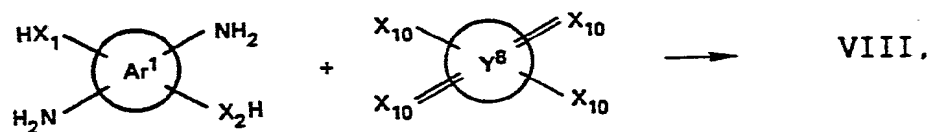
Formation of formula VI homopolymer



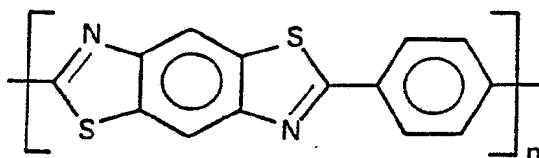
5 Formation of formula VII homopolymer



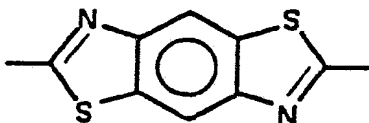
Formation of formula VIII homopolymer



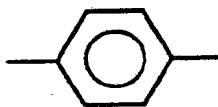
Representative examples of suitable homopolymers forming liquid crystalline homopolymer compositions in accordance with the practice of the present invention (provided they fall within the above-defined general formulas I-VIII) include the following polymers. For the sake of convenience, polymer formulas are hereinbelow shown in simplified representation. As an example,  $\{AI\}_n$  is



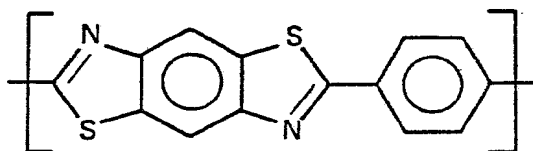
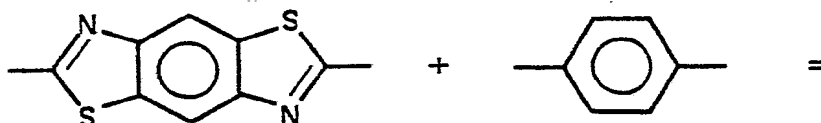
The structures representing  $\{AI\}$  are defined in the Appendix.  $\{A\}$  has the structure



and  $\{I\}$  has the structure



Their sequential combination is therefore



- 5 All simplified polymer formula representations appearing in the specification may be readily interpreted by reference to the Appendix.

{AI}<sub>n</sub>, {AIBI}<sub>n</sub>, {BI}<sub>n</sub>, and {T}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {AIDI}<sub>n</sub>, {AIEI}<sub>n</sub>, {AIFI}<sub>n</sub>, {AILI}<sub>n</sub>, {AIMI}<sub>n</sub>, {AINI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 10 {ATIT'}<sub>n</sub>, {ATKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {BIDI}<sub>n</sub>, {BIEI}<sub>n</sub>, {BIFI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {BILI}<sub>n</sub>, {BIMI}<sub>n</sub>, {BINI}<sub>n</sub>, {BTIT'}<sub>n</sub>, {BTKT'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {EILI}<sub>n</sub>, {FILI}<sub>n</sub>, {LI}<sub>n</sub>, {TI}<sub>n</sub>, {U}<sub>n</sub>, and {V}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {A}<sub>n</sub>, {AB}<sub>n</sub>, {AC}<sub>n</sub>, {AE}<sub>n</sub>, {AF}<sub>n</sub>, {AICI}<sub>n</sub>, {AIOI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {AIQI}<sub>n</sub>, {AJ}<sub>n</sub>, {AL}<sub>n</sub>, {AM}<sub>n</sub>, {AN}<sub>n</sub>, {AQ}<sub>n</sub>, {AVIV'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 15 {B}<sub>n</sub>, {BC}<sub>n</sub>, {BD}<sub>n</sub>, {BE}<sub>n</sub>, {BF}<sub>n</sub>, {BICI}<sub>n</sub>, {BIOI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {BIQI}<sub>n</sub>, {BJ}<sub>n</sub>, {BL}<sub>n</sub>, {BM}<sub>n</sub>, {BN}<sub>n</sub>, {BQ}<sub>n</sub>, {BVIV'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {B'A'B'Z'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'A'F'Z'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'H'}\* (\* denotes  
 oxygens always meta on B') {B'I'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'P'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {B'Q'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'S'}\* {C}<sub>n</sub>, {CE}<sub>n</sub>, {CF}<sub>n</sub>, {CI}<sub>n</sub>, {CIEI}<sub>n</sub>.



{CIFI}<sub>n</sub>, {CILI}<sub>n</sub>, {CIMI}<sub>n</sub>, {CINI}<sub>n</sub>, {CIOI}<sub>n</sub>, {CJ}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {CL}<sub>n</sub>, {CM}<sub>n</sub>, {CN}<sub>n</sub>, {CTIT}'<sub>n</sub>, {CTKT}'<sub>n</sub>, {C'A'B'Z}'<sub>n</sub>,  
 {C'A'F'Z}'<sub>n</sub>, {D'A'B'Z}'<sub>n</sub>, {D'A'F'Z}'<sub>n</sub>, {E}<sub>n</sub>, {EF}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {EI}<sub>n</sub>, {EIFI}<sub>n</sub>, {EIMI}<sub>n</sub>, {EINI}<sub>n</sub>, {EIOI}<sub>n</sub>, {EIQI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 5 {EJ}<sub>n</sub>, {EL}<sub>n</sub>, {EM}<sub>n</sub>, {EN}<sub>n</sub>, {ETIT}'<sub>n</sub>, {ETKT}'<sub>n</sub>,  
 {E'A'B'Z}'<sub>n</sub>, {E'A'F'Z}'<sub>n</sub>, {F}<sub>n</sub>, {FI}<sub>n</sub>, {FIMI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {FINI}<sub>n</sub>, {FIOI}<sub>n</sub>, {FJ}<sub>n</sub>, {FL}<sub>n</sub>, {FM}<sub>n</sub>, {FN}<sub>n</sub>, {F'A}'<sub>n</sub>,  
 {L}<sub>n</sub>, {LJ}<sub>n</sub>, {LTIT}'<sub>n</sub>, {LTKT}'<sub>n</sub>, {M}<sub>n</sub>, {MI}<sub>n</sub>, {MTIT}'<sub>n</sub>,  
 {MTKT}'<sub>n</sub>, {N}<sub>n</sub>, {NI}<sub>n</sub>, {NTIT}'<sub>n</sub>, {NTKT}'<sub>n</sub>, {QI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 10 {QJ}<sub>n</sub>, {RI}<sub>n</sub>, {RJ}<sub>n</sub>, and {UI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {AD}<sub>n</sub>, {AG}<sub>n</sub>, {AH}<sub>n</sub>, {AIGI}<sub>n</sub>, {AIHI}<sub>n</sub>, {AIPi}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {AIRI}<sub>n</sub>, {AISi}<sub>n</sub>, {AK}<sub>n</sub>, {AO}<sub>n</sub>, {AP}<sub>n</sub>, {AR}<sub>n</sub>, {AS}<sub>n</sub>, {BG}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {BIGI}<sub>n</sub>, {BH}<sub>n</sub>, {BIHI}<sub>n</sub>, {BIPI}<sub>n</sub>, {BIRI}<sub>n</sub>, {BISI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {BK}<sub>n</sub>, {BO}<sub>n</sub>, {BP}<sub>n</sub>, {BR}<sub>n</sub>, {BS}<sub>n</sub>, {B'G'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 15 {B'H'}<sub>n</sub> \*\* (\*\* denotes oxygens always para on B'),  
 {B'J'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'K'}<sub>n</sub> \* (\* denotes oxygens always meta on B'),  
 {B'K'}<sub>n</sub> \*\*, {B'L'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'M'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'N'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'O'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {B'R'}<sub>n</sub>, {B'S'}<sub>n</sub> \*\*, {B'U'}<sub>n</sub>, {CD}<sub>n</sub>, {CG}<sub>n</sub>, {CH}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {CIDI}<sub>n</sub>, {CIGI}<sub>n</sub>, {CIHI}<sub>n</sub>, {CIPi}<sub>n</sub>, {CIQI}<sub>n</sub>, {CIRI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 20 {CISI}<sub>n</sub>, {CK}<sub>n</sub>, {CO}<sub>n</sub>, {CP}<sub>n</sub>, {CQ}<sub>n</sub>, {CR}<sub>n</sub>, {CS}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {CVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'G'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'H'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'I'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'J'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'K'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {C'L'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'O'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'Q'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'R'}<sub>n</sub>, {C'S'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {D}<sub>n</sub>, {DE}<sub>n</sub>, {DF}<sub>n</sub>, {DG}<sub>n</sub>, {DH}<sub>n</sub>, {DI}<sub>n</sub>, {DIEI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {DIFI}<sub>n</sub>, {DIGI}<sub>n</sub>, {DIHI}<sub>n</sub>, {DILI}<sub>n</sub>, {DIMI}<sub>n</sub>, {DINI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 25 {DIOI}<sub>n</sub>, {DIPI}<sub>n</sub>, {DIQI}<sub>n</sub>, {DIRI}<sub>n</sub>, {DISI}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {DJ}<sub>n</sub>, {DK}<sub>n</sub>, {DL}<sub>n</sub>, {DM}<sub>n</sub>, {DN}<sub>n</sub>, {DO}<sub>n</sub>, {DP}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {DQ}<sub>n</sub>, {DR}<sub>n</sub>, {DS}<sub>n</sub>, {DTIT}'<sub>n</sub>, {DTKT}'<sub>n</sub>, {DVIV'}<sub>n</sub>,

{D'G'}<sub>n</sub>, {D'H'}<sub>n</sub>\* (\* denotes oxygen always in  
 3,3'-positions on D'), {D'H'}<sub>n</sub>\*\* (\*\* denotes oxygen always  
 in 4,4'-positions on D'), {D'I'}<sub>n</sub>, {D'J'}<sub>n</sub>, {D'K'}<sub>n</sub>\*, {D'K'}<sub>n</sub>\*\*,  
 {D'L'}<sub>n</sub>, {D'M'}<sub>n</sub>, {D'N'}<sub>n</sub>, {D'O'}<sub>n</sub>, {D'Q'}<sub>n</sub>, {D'R'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 5 {D'S'}<sub>n</sub>\*, {D'S'}<sub>n</sub>\*\*, {D'U'}<sub>n</sub>, {EG'}<sub>n</sub>, {EH'}<sub>n</sub>, {EIGI'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {EIH'I'}<sub>n</sub>, {EIP'I'}<sub>n</sub>, {EIR'I'}<sub>n</sub>, {EISI'}<sub>n</sub>, {EK'}<sub>n</sub>, {EO'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {EP'}<sub>n</sub>, {EQ'}<sub>n</sub>, {ER'}<sub>n</sub>, {ES'}<sub>n</sub>, {EVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {E'G'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {E'H'}<sub>n</sub>, {E'I'}<sub>n</sub>, {E'J'}<sub>n</sub>, {E'K'}<sub>n</sub>, {E'L'}<sub>n</sub>, {E'O'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {E'Q'}<sub>n</sub>, {E'R'}<sub>n</sub>, {E'S'}<sub>n</sub>, {FG'}<sub>n</sub>, {FH'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 10 {FIGI'}<sub>n</sub>, {FIH'I'}<sub>n</sub>, {FIPI'}<sub>n</sub>, {FIQI'}<sub>n</sub>, {FIRI'}<sub>n</sub>, {FISI'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {FK'}<sub>n</sub>, {FO'}<sub>n</sub>, {FP'}<sub>n</sub>, {FQ'}<sub>n</sub>, {FR'}<sub>n</sub>, {FS'}<sub>n</sub>, {FTIT'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {FTKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {FVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {G'}<sub>n</sub>, {GH'}<sub>n</sub>, {GI'}<sub>n</sub>, {GIH'I'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {GILI'}<sub>n</sub>, {GIMI'}<sub>n</sub>, {GINI'}<sub>n</sub>, {GIOI'}<sub>n</sub>, {GIPI'}<sub>n</sub>, {GIQI'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {GIRI'}<sub>n</sub>, {GISI'}<sub>n</sub>, {GJ'}<sub>n</sub>, {GK'}<sub>n</sub>, {GL'}<sub>n</sub>, {GM'}<sub>n</sub>, {GN'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 15 {GO'}<sub>n</sub>, {GP'}<sub>n</sub>, {GQ'}<sub>n</sub>, {GR'}<sub>n</sub>, {GS'}<sub>n</sub>, {GTIT'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {GTKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {GVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {H'}<sub>n</sub>, {HI'}<sub>n</sub>, {HILI'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {HIMI'}<sub>n</sub>, {HINI'}<sub>n</sub>, {HIOI'}<sub>n</sub>, {HIPI'}<sub>n</sub>, {HIQI'}<sub>n</sub>, {HIRI'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {HISI'}<sub>n</sub>, {HJ'}<sub>n</sub>, {HK'}<sub>n</sub>, {HL'}<sub>n</sub>, {HM'}<sub>n</sub>, {HN'}<sub>n</sub>, {HO'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {HP'}<sub>n</sub>, {HQ'}<sub>n</sub>, {HR'}<sub>n</sub>, {HS'}<sub>n</sub>, {HTIT'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 20 {HTKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {HVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {LK'}<sub>n</sub>, {LVIV'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {MJ'}<sub>n</sub>, {MK'}<sub>n</sub>, {MVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {NJ'}<sub>n</sub>, {NK'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {NVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {OI'}<sub>n</sub>, {OJ'}<sub>n</sub>, {OK'}<sub>n</sub>, {OTIT'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {OTKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {OVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {PI'}<sub>n</sub>, {PJ'}<sub>n</sub>, {PK'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {PTIT'}<sub>n</sub>, {PTKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {PVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {Q'}<sub>n</sub>, {QK'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 25 {QTIT'}<sub>n</sub>, {QTKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {QVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {R'}<sub>n</sub>, {RK'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {RTIT'}<sub>n</sub>, {RTKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {RVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {SI'}<sub>n</sub>, {SJ'}<sub>n</sub>,  
 {SK'}<sub>n</sub>, {STIT'}<sub>n</sub>, {STKT'}<sub>n</sub>, {SVIV'}<sub>n</sub>, {W'}<sub>n</sub>.

$\{X\}_n$ , and  $\{Y\}_n$ .

The most preferred extended chain homopolymers in accordance with the practice of the present invention include

5  $\{AI\}_n$ ,  $\{AIBI\}_n$ ,  $\{BI\}_n$ , and  $\{T\}_n$ .

The especially preferred extended chain homopolymers in accordance with the practice of the present invention include

10  $\{AIDI\}_n$ ,  $\{AIEI\}_n$ ,  $\{AIFI\}_n$ ,  $\{AILI\}_n$ ,  $\{AIMI\}_n$ ,  $\{AINI\}_n$ ,  
 $\{ATIT'\}_n$ ,  $\{ATKT'\}_n$ ,  $\{BIDI\}_n$ ,  $\{BIEI\}_n$ ,  $\{BIFI\}_n$ ,  
 $\{BILI\}_n$ ,  $\{BIMI\}_n$ ,  $\{BINI\}_n$ ,  $\{BTIT'\}_n$ ,  $\{BTKT'\}_n$ ,  
 $\{EILI\}_n$ ,  $\{FILI\}_n$ ,  $\{LI\}_n$ ,  $\{TI\}_n$ ,  $\{U\}_n$ , and  $\{V\}_n$ .

15 The preferred extended chain homopolymers in accordance with the practice of the present invention include

$\{A\}_n$ ,  $\{AB\}_n$ ,  $\{AC\}_n$ ,  $\{AE\}_n$ ,  $\{AF\}_n$ ,  $\{AICI\}_n$ ,  $\{AIOI\}_n$ ,



110

$\{AIQI\}_n$ ,  $\{AJ\}_n$ ,  $\{AL\}_n$ ,  $\{AM\}_n$ ,  $\{AN\}_n$ ,  $\{AQ\}_n$ ,  $\{AVIV'\}_n$ ,  
 $\{B\}_n$ ,  $\{BC\}_n$ ,  $\{BD\}_n$ ,  $\{BE\}_n$ ,  $\{BF\}_n$ ,  $\{BICI\}_n$ ,  $\{BIOI\}_n$ ,  
 $\{BIQI\}_n$ ,  $\{BJ\}_n$ ,  $\{BL\}_n$ ,  $\{BM\}_n$ ,  $\{BN\}_n$ ,  $\{BQ\}_n$ ,  $\{BVIV'\}_n$ ,  
 $\{B'A'B'Z\}_n$ ,  $\{B'A'F'Z\}_n$ ,  $\{B'H'\}_n$  (\* denotes  
5 oxygens always meta on B')  $\{B'I'\}_n$ ,  $\{B'P'\}_n$ ,  
 $\{B'Q'\}_n$ ,  $\{B'S'\}_n$  \*  $\{C\}_n$ ,  $\{CE\}_n$ ,  $\{CF\}_n$ ,  $\{CI\}_n$ ,  $\{CIEI\}_n$ ,  
 $\{CIFI\}_n$ ,  $\{CILI\}_n$ ,  $\{CIMI\}_n$ ,  $\{CINI\}_n$ ,  $\{CIOI\}_n$ ,  $\{CJ\}_n$ ,  
 $\{CL\}_n$ ,  $\{CM\}_n$ ,  $\{CN\}_n$ ,  $\{CTIT'\}_n$ ,  $\{CTKT'\}_n$ ,  $\{C'A'B'Z\}_n$ ,  
 $\{C'A'F'Z\}_n$ ,  $\{D'A'B'Z\}_n$ ,  $\{D'A'F'Z\}_n$ ,  $\{E\}_n$ ,  $\{EF\}_n$ ,  
10  $\{EI\}_n$ ,  $\{EIFI\}_n$ ,  $\{EIMI\}_n$ ,  $\{EINI\}_n$ ,  $\{EIOI\}_n$ ,  $\{EIQI\}_n$ ,  
 $\{EJ\}_n$ ,  $\{EL\}_n$ ,  $\{EM\}_n$ ,  $\{EN\}_n$ ,  $\{ETIT'\}_n$ ,  $\{ETKT'\}_n$ ,  
 $\{E'A'B'Z\}_n$ ,  $\{E'A'F'Z\}_n$ ,  $\{F\}_n$ ,  $\{FI\}_n$ ,  $\{FIMI\}_n$ ,  
 $\{FINI\}_n$ ,  $\{FIOI\}_n$ ,  $\{FJ\}_n$ ,  $\{FL\}_n$ ,  $\{FM\}_n$ ,  $\{FN\}_n$ ,  $\{F'A'\}_n$ ,  
 $\{L\}_n$ ,  $\{LJ\}_n$ ,  $\{LTIT'\}_n$ ,  $\{LTKT'\}_n$ ,  $\{M\}_n$ ,  $\{MI\}_n$ ,  $\{MTIT'\}_n$ ,  
15  $\{MTKT'\}_n$ ,  $\{N\}_n$ ,  $\{NI\}_n$ ,  $\{NTIT'\}_n$ ,  $\{NTKT'\}_n$ ,  $\{QI\}_n$ ,  
 $\{QJ\}_n$ ,  $\{RI\}_n$ ,  $\{RJ\}_n$ , and  $\{UI\}_n$ .

It is helpful to define three  $P_2O_5$  contents,  
 operative at different stages of polymerization,  
 that must be controlled in order to optimize the  
 20 synthesis procedure of the present invention. We  
 will define the initial  $P_2O_5$  content  $m_0$  as the  
 $P_2O_5$  content of the polyphosphoric acid operative  
 during dehydrohalgenation (in step b above and as  
 explained more fully hereinafter). The initial  
 25  $P_2O_5$  content in accordance with the practice of



111

the instant invention should be below about 83.3%, and may range from between about 83.3% to about 63%; preferably below about 82%, more preferably below about 80%, and most preferably below about 76%.

The intermediate  $P_2O_5$  content is operative at the initiation of polycondensation and is calculated so as to give the third (or final)  $P_2O_5$  content f that accounts for polyphosphoric acid hydrolysis by 100% of the theoretical water of polycondensation. The final  $P_2O_5$  content, f, must be above some minimum value if the solution is to maintain its effectiveness as a reaction medium at the late stages of polymerization. The final  $P_2O_5$  content should be between about 82% to about 86%, preferably between about 82% to about 84%, and most preferably between about 82% to about 83%.

The various important general process steps for preparing liquid crystalline polymer compositions of the present invention may include one or more of the following stages which are considered to be within the process parameters described above. These stages are:



Stage One--One or more of a selected first monomers selected from the group consisting of (amino-group-containing) monomers 1, 3, 5, or 9 is added to a specified initial weight in grams (given by  $a^*$ ) of a polyphosphoric acid with a  $P_2O_5$  content  $m_o$  according to the empirical equation

$$a^* = \{ [1-f] ([P_y/P_c] - P_y) - [n_o(18.02)/M_w] P_y \} (1-m_o)^{-1}$$

where  $P_y$  is the weight in grams of the theoretical yield of polymer,  $P_c$  is the weight fraction of polymer in the total weight of the final liquid crystalline polymer composition (and is chosen to be above the critical concentration of the polymer necessary for liquid crystalline phase formation in the resulting polymer-polyphosphoric acid composition),  $n_o$  is an integer giving the number of moles of condensation by-product per mole of polymer repeating unit. The number 18.02 is the molecular weight of the condensation by-product,  $M_w$  is molecular weight of the polymer repeating unit, and  $f$  is the final  $P_2O_5$  content that must be above a minimum value as defined by this invention.

Stage Two--Once the first monomer(s) are combined with polyphosphoric acid, and protecting groups, if present, released, (optionally, depending on the particular polymer and reaction mechanism chosen) a stoichiometric amount of one or more of a selected second monomer selected from the group consisting of 2, 4, 6, 7 or 8 is next added and the chosen value of  $f$  is achieved by adding  $b^*$  (an intermediate weight in grams of  $P_2O_5$ ) to the mixture according to the equation.

$$b^* = [P_y/P_c] - P_y - [\{n_o(18.02)/M_w\}] P_y - a^*$$

Stage Three--The resulting mixture (containing the first monomer(s) and/or the second monomer(s)) is then heated to a temperature suitable for polycondensation. The reaction temperature may range from about 100°C to about 210°C, preferably about 110°C to about 200°C, more preferably about 160°C to about 190°C, and most preferably about 185°C.

The  $P_2O_5$  content,  $m_o$ , should be low enough to:

- (1) achieve efficient dehydrohalogenation and/or
- (2) achieve sufficient monomer loading to achieve desired  $P_c$  without foaming problem or unusually high bulk viscosity.  $f$  should be high enough to:



(2a) maintain a polyphosphoric acid composition that is an effective reaction medium at late stages of polycondensation.

5 (2b) provide an effective phosphorylating medium as described in N. Yoda and M. Kurihara, "New Polymers of Aromatic Heterocycles by Polyphosphoric Acid Solution Methods", J. Polymer Science, Macromolecular Reviews, Volume 5, (1971), p. 159 at initial stage of  
10 polymerization. The subject matter of the paper by Yoda and et. al., is specifically incorporated herein by reference.

(2c) provide an effective solvent for the polymer at the end of polycondensation.

15 For purpose of illustration, a plot of equation a\* is presented in Figure 7 showing regions (shaded dash area) of poor monomer la solubility. In the case of polymer  $\{AI\}_n$ , the family of  $P_c$  curves can be utilized as follows:

20 1. choose a  $\{AI\}_n$  polymer concentration,  $P_c$ , as an example 0.16;

2. select a point on the curve  $P_c = 0.16$  above the shaded dash area indicating poor monomer la solubility;



3. from that point selected, the weight in grams of PPA ( $a^*$ ) of the corresponding  $P_2O_5$  content ( $m_o$ ) that should be added to 92.06 g of monomer 1a;

5 4. after dehydrochlorination is complete, the amount of monomer 2a to be added is 62.38 g; and

10 5. if the final  $P_2O_5$  content ( $f$ ) has been chosen to be 82.2%, then the amount of  $P_2O_5$  to be added ( $b^*$ ) is the difference between the amount of PPA used in step 3 above and the weight of PPA at the end of the curve for  $P_c = 0.16$ .

15 The choice of the optimal  $m_o$  is dependent on the desired polymer concentration and the solubility limits of the first monomer. The region of poor solubility for monomer 1a is shown in Figure 7. Other monomers exhibit different solubility limits. Solubility rankings of some representative monomers are listed below.

20 monomers with solubilities greater than 1a;

1f, 1g, 3a, 3b, 3c, and 3d;

monomers with solubilities comparable to 1a:

1d, and 3e;



116

monomers with solubilities less than 1a:

1b, 1c, 1e, 1i, 1k, 3f, 3g, 3h, 3i, and 3j;

and monomers with solubilities much less than 1a:

1h, 1l, 1m, 1n, 1o, 1p, 5a, and 9a.

5 Accordingly, it is possible to dehydrohalogenate  
the selected hydrohalide (monomers) more rapidly;  
the foaming problem is alleviated or eliminated;  
the solution in PPA of lesser  $P_2O_5$  content than  
that of U.S. Patent 4,225,700 is much less  
10 viscous and dehydrohalogenation can be carried  
out much more readily. Further, a solution of  
selected monomers in PPA of considerably higher  
concentration is possible and a reaction product  
containing a much higher concentration of polymer  
15 is possible.



The above-mentioned formulas I, III, V, VII, and VIII homopolymer compositions may be prepared in accordance with the above process parameters by:

- 5 (a) mixing a selected first monomer (for example, a selected first monomer selected from the group consisting of (1,1), (1,2), or (1,3) with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a  
10 relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,
- (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first  
15 monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- (c) adding a selected second monomer (for example, a second monomer selected from the group consisting of (2,1), (2,2), (2,3), (4,1), (6,1), (6,2), (7,1) or (8,1)) in the resulting solution  
20 of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction  
25 medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,
- (e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-  
30 oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first homopolymeric product.



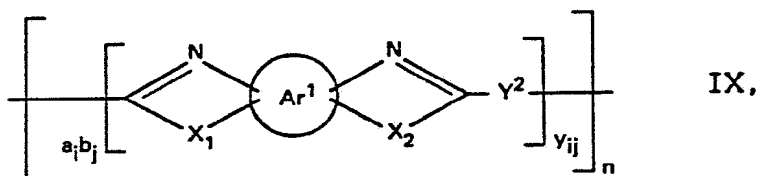
Formulas II, IV, and VI homopolymer compositions may be prepared by:

- 5       (a) mixing a selected first monomer (for example, a selected first monomer selected from the group consisting of (3,1), (3,2), (5,1), or (9,1)) with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,
- 10       (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- 15       (c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,
- 20       (d) causing polymerization of the first monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first homopolymeric product.



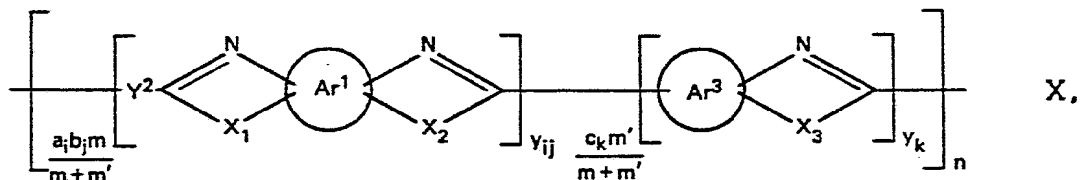
## Copolymeric Compositions and their preparation

In accordance with a further aspect of the invention, there is provided a liquid-crystalline composition useful in the preparation of fibers and films comprising a polycondensation product consisting essentially of a blend of certain polyphosphoric acids and a high concentration of at least one high molecular weight extended chain copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the general formulas:



wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXX as defined above,  $\text{X}_1$  and  $\text{X}_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $\text{X}_1$  and  $\text{X}_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^1$ , N and  $\text{X}_1$  or  $\text{X}_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, and  $\text{Y}^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is XXXI as defined above,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said

copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;

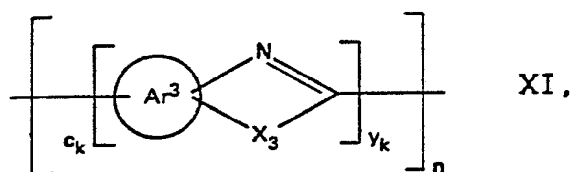


X,

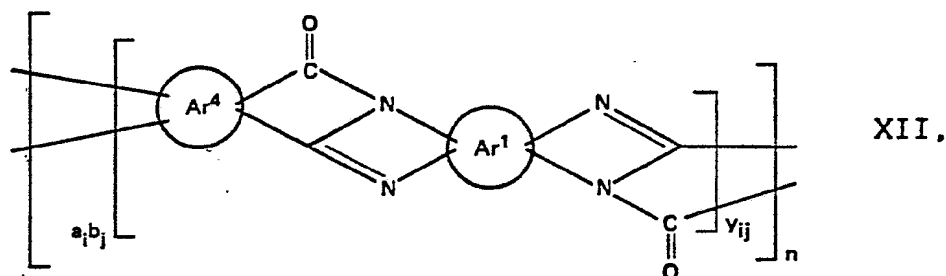
wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXX as defined above,  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and  $Y^2$

represents a bivalent organic radical and is XXXI as defined above,  $a_i b_j m / (m+m')$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $Ar^3$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXII as defined above, the nitrogen atom and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^3$ ,  $c_k m' / (m+m')$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;

121

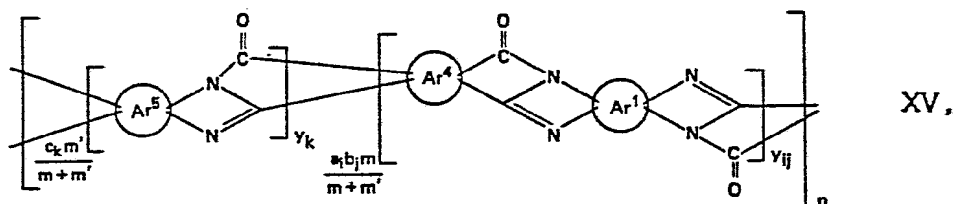


wherein  $Ar^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXII as defined above,  $X_3$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^3$ , N and  $X_3$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $c_k$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer, n being a positive integer;



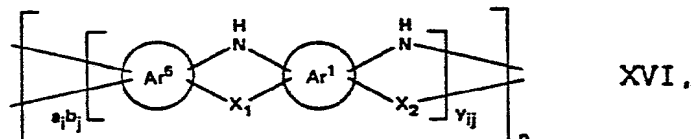
wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXXII as defined above,  $Ar^4$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXIII as defined above, the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $Ar^1$  and the carbon atoms being bonded to  $Ar^4$ ,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer, n being a positive integer;

122



wherein  $Ar^4$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXIII as defined above,  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXXII as defined above, and  $Ar^5$  represents an aromatic moiety different from  $Ar^4$  and  $Ar^1$  and is XXIV as defined above, the carbon atoms being bonded to  $Ar^4$  and  $Ar^5$  and the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $Ar^1$  and  $Ar^5$ ,  $n$  being a positive integer;

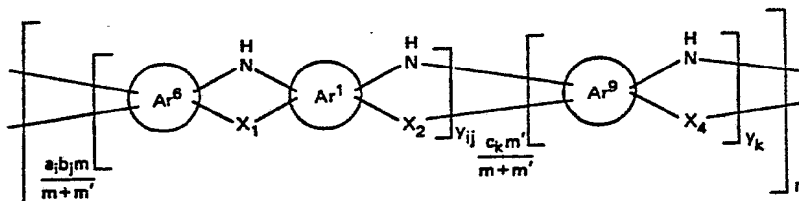
$c_k m' / m + m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $a_i b_j m / m + m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXX as defined above,  $Ar^6$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXV as defined above,  $X_1$



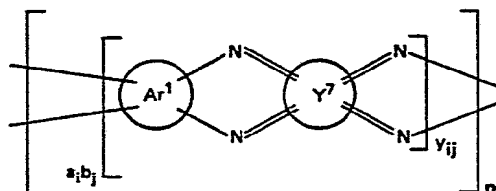
and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_4$  and  $X_1$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^1$ , NH and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer, n being a positive integer;



XVII.

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXX as defined above,  $Ar^6$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXV as defined above,  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^1$ , NH and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $a_i b_j m / (m+m')$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said

copolymer,  $\text{Ar}^9$  represents an aromatic moiety different from  $\text{Ar}^6$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$  and is XXVI as defined above,  $\text{X}_4$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $\text{X}_4$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^6$  and  $\text{Ar}^9$ ,  $c_{k m'}/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



XVIII.

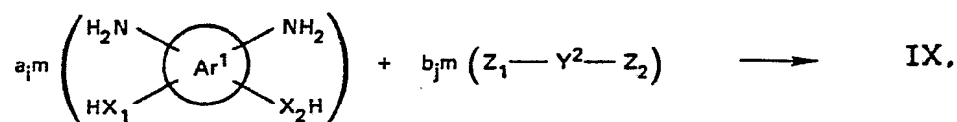
wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXXII as defined above,  $\text{Y}^7$  represents an aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety and is XXVIII as defined above, the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^1$  and bonded to adjacent carbon atoms of  $\text{Y}^7$ ,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer.

In accordance with the practice of the present invention, the synthesis of the aforementioned formulas IX - XVIII copolymers may be illustrated by the following general reaction system:

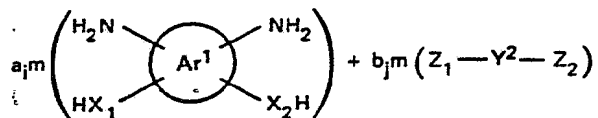
5

### Reaction Mechanism

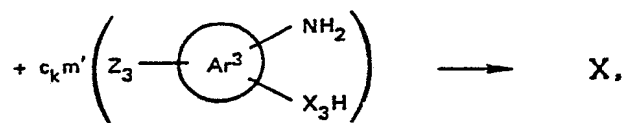
Formation of formula IX copolymer



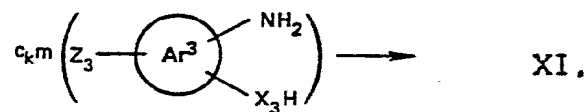
Formation of formula X copolymer



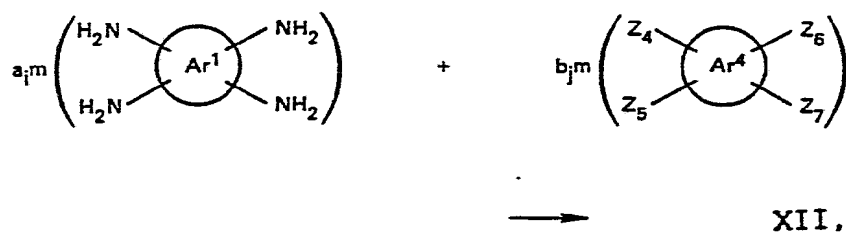
10



Formation of formula XI copolymer

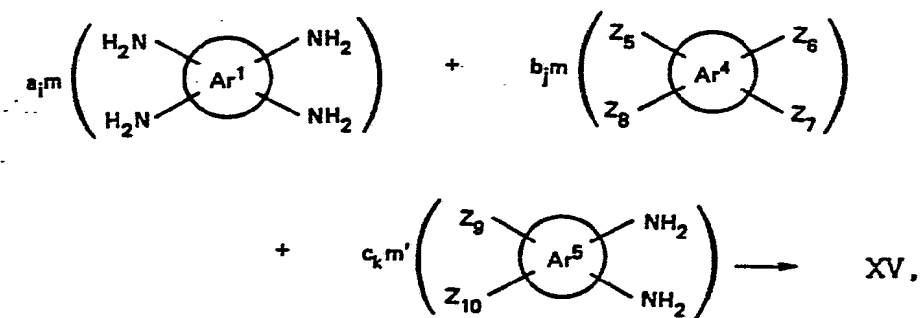


Formation of formula XII copolymer



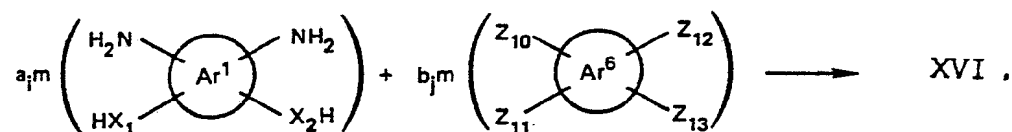
5

Formation of formula XV copolymer

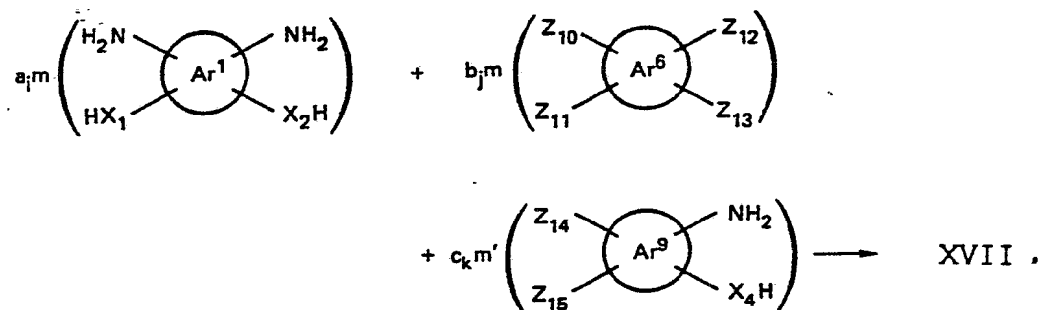


127

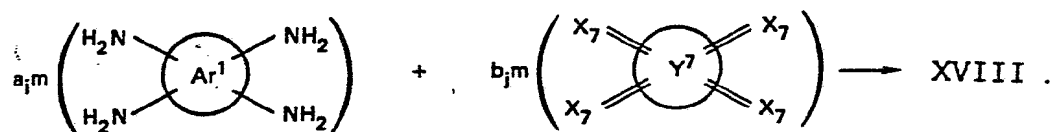
Formation of formula XVI copolymer



Formation of formula XVII copolymer



Formation of formula XVIII copolymer



The above-mentioned formulas IX, X, XII, XV, XVI, XVII, and XVIII copolymer compositions can be prepared in accordance with the above process parameters by:

(a) mixing at least two of a selected first monomers (for example, two or more of a monomer selected from the group consisting of (1.1),

(1,2), (1,3), (3,1), (3,2), (5,1), or (9,1)) with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least one of a selected second monomers (for example, one or more of a monomer selected from the group consisting of (2,1), (2,2), (2,3), (4,1), (6,1), (6,2), (7,1) or (8,1)) in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-



oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first copolymeric product.

Similarly formulas IX, XII, XVI, and XVIII copolymer compositions can be prepared by:

5           (a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomers (for example, one or more of a monomer selected from the group consisting of (1,1), (1,2), (1,3), (3,1), (3,2), (5,1), or (9,1)) with  
10           or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

15           (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

20           (c) adding at least two of a selected second monomers (for example, one or more of a monomer selected from the group consisting of (2,1), (2,2), (2,3), (4,1), (6,1), (6,2), (7,1) or (8,1)) in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content  
5 suitable for polymerization,

(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic  
10 viscosity or a first copolymeric product.

Preferred formulas IX, X, XI, XII, XV, XVI, XVII, and XVIII copolymers forming liquid crystalline copolymer compositions of the instant invention are those wherein  $a_i$  is the mole  
15 fraction of the  $i$ th monomer selected from Type 1,  $b_j$  is the mole fraction of the  $j$ th monomer selected from Types 2, 4, 6, 7, or 8,  $c_k$  is the mole fraction of the  $k$ th monomer selected from Types 3, 5, or 9,  $m$  and  $m'$  are appropriate molar  
20 quantities based on desired yield,  $a_i b_j$  and  $a_i b_j m / m + m'$  are the molar proportions of the recurring units resulting from the condensation of the  $i$ th monomer of Type 1 and the  $j$ th monomer of Type 2, 4, 6, 7, or 8,  $c_k$  and  $c_k m' / m + m'$  are  
25 the molar proportions of the recurring unit resulting from the condensation of the  $k$ th





monomer of Type 3, 5, or 9,  $y_{ij}$  is the average block length (i.e., the average number of sequential recurring units unbroken by a different recurring unit) of the recurring unit formed from the  $i$ th monomer of Type 1 and the  $j$ th monomer of Type 2, 4, 6, 7, or 8,  $y_k$  is the average block length of the recurring unit formed by self-condensation of the  $k$ th monomer of Type 3, 5, or 9, and  $n$  is the average overall length of the copolymer (i.e., the average total number of recurring units independent of structure). The number of recurring units in the copolymer may be the product of the highest  $i$  and the highest  $j$  or may be the product of the highest  $i$  and the highest  $j$  plus the highest  $k$ .  $i$ ,  $j$  and  $k$  can be as high as is practical, but may have certain minimal values if copolymers, rather than homopolymers, are to be obtained.

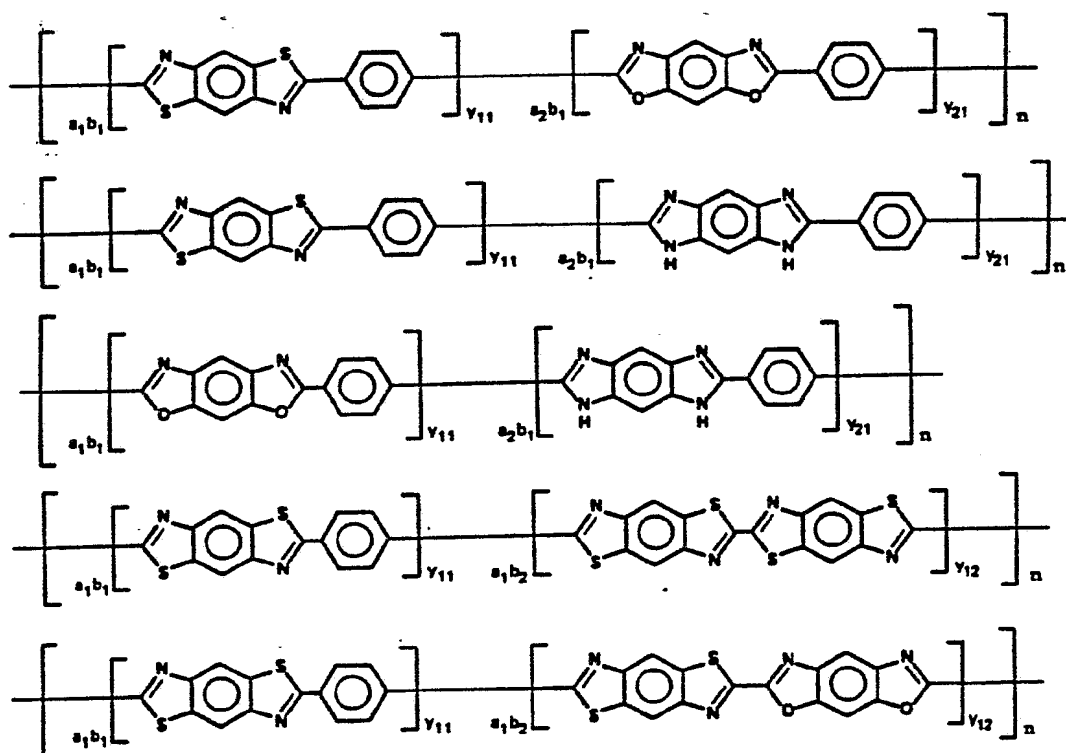
Selected molar quantities ( $a_{1m}$ ,  $a_{2m}$ , ...  $a_{im}$ ) of monomers of Type 1 may be mixed with a phosphoric acid having a phosphorus pentoxide content of from about 63% to about 78%, preferably greater than about 68%, most preferably about 78%, and the protecting groups, such as hydrogen halide, if present, may be substantially removed by heating, and applying reduced pressure if desired. The quantity of the phosphoric acid is

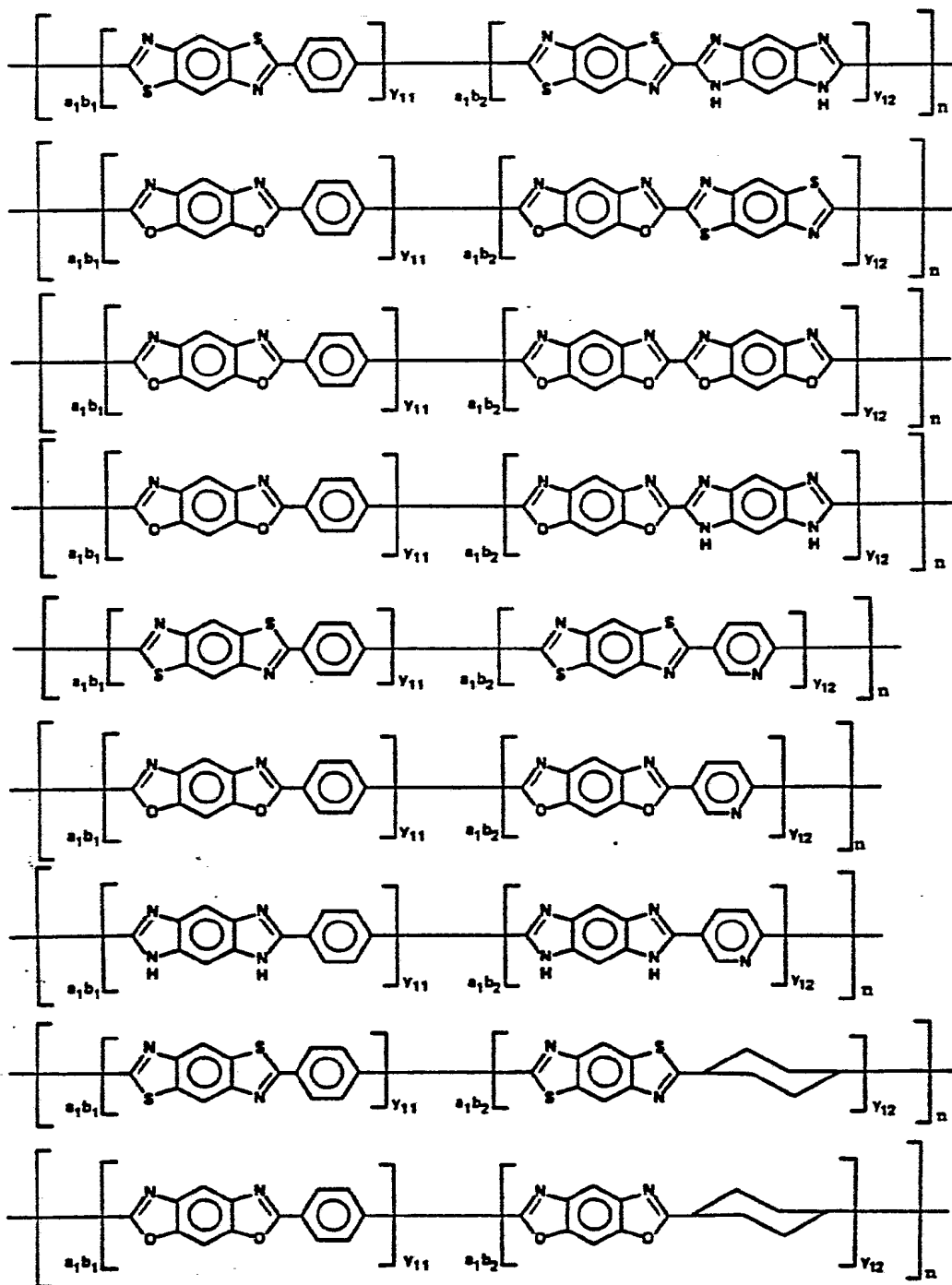
most desirably determined in accordance with equation a\* above, making the necessary calculations for addition of monomers of possibly different molecular weights and different proportions. A stoichiometric quantity (i.e.,  $b_{1,m} + b_{2,m} + \dots b_{j,m} = m$ ) of monomer selected from Type 2, 4, 6, 7, or 8 may then be added to the resulting solution. The phosphorus pentoxide content of the resulting mixture may then be raised in accordance with equation b\* above, so as to raise the final phosphorus pentoxide content of the substantially copolymerized mixture to a value preferably within the range between about 81% to about 84% and most preferably between about 82% to about 83.5%. The resulting mixture may then be heated to a temperature preferably about 100°C to about 210°C, most preferably to about 170°C to about 185°C within a practical time period, from less than about one hour to greater than about 5 hours, preferably within about 1 to about 3 hours. The temperature may be maintained for a sufficient time, which may range from less than about 1 hour to about 48 hours or more, most preferably between from about 1 to about 23 hours, to achieve the desired n value. The practice of the present invention as it relates



to the production of novel liquid-crystalline compositions comprising copolymers with the general formulas IX, XII, XVI, and XVIII is illustrated for those compositions including  
 5 general formula IX wherein the selected monomers of Type 1 are further classified as being of Types (1,1), (1,2) or (1,3) and the selected monomers of Type 2 are of Types (2,1), (2,2), or (2,3).

10 General formula IX copolymers prepared from type (1,1) and type (2,1) monomers have the advantage that the critical concentration necessary for liquid-crystalline behavior is low. For the copolymers listed below, their critical  
 15 concentration may be as low as about 5 weight percent in polyphosphoric acid at substantially moderate  $n$  values, thus allowing a broad range of operable concentrations.





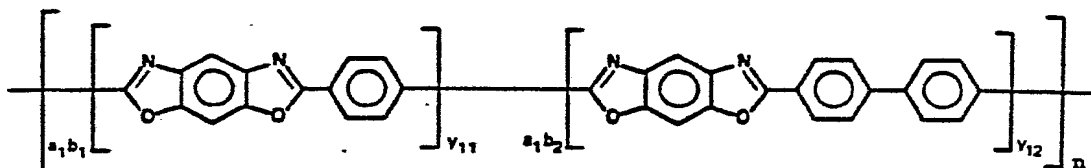
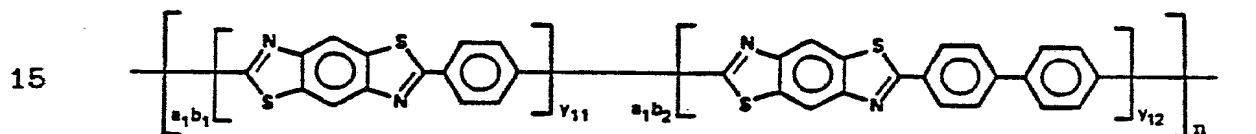
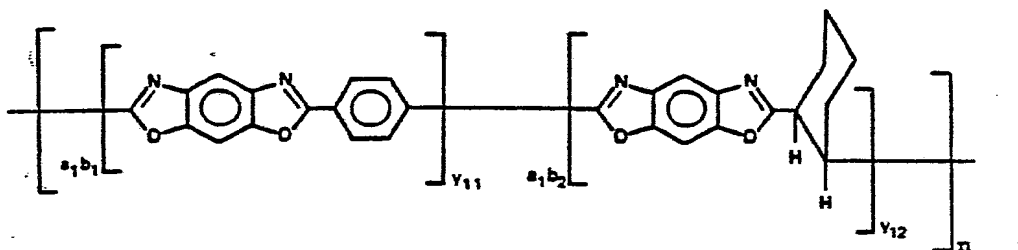
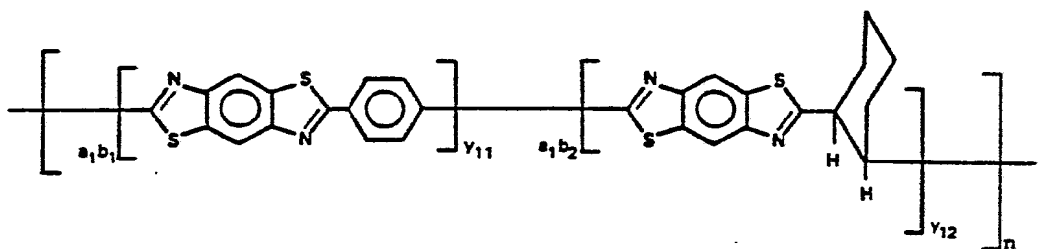
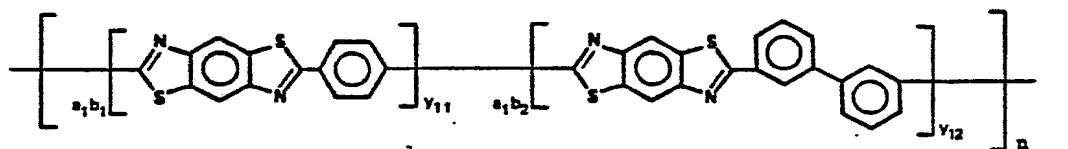
Since the recurring units of the copolymers are of essentially comparable mesogenicity, a broad range of copolymer compositions may be achieved; for instance,  $a_1b_1$  can range from nearly zero to nearly one while  $a_1b_2$  or  $a_2b_1$  (because it is equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ) ranges from nearly one to nearly

zero, respectively. The average block lengths  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  are governed by the method of monomer addition described above and the molar quantities selected. Thus, for monomer pairs of essentially equal reactivity,  $y_{11}$ , which equals  $1/1-a_1b_1$ , may range from nearly one to very high values. In a like manner,  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  can range from very high values to nearly one. Monomer purity, control of stoichiometry, and exclusion of side reactions caused by oxidizing impurities must be sufficient to obtain an overall copolymer length,  $n$ , greater than about 50 in order to obtain the desired polymeric properties of useful mechanical strength, modulus, etc. The practice of the invention as it relates to copolymers derived from Class 1 monomers is further illustrated in Examples 49-51 and 54-66 below.

General formula IX copolymers may be prepared from type (1,1), (2,1) and (2,2) monomers and from type (1,1), (1,2) and (2,1) monomers. These monomers are classified as Class 2 owing either to a moderately reduced mesogenic character of the recurring unit derived from them or to their tendency to reduce the solubility range of the resulting polymer, which in turn is usually owing to an overall reduction of the heteroatom/hydrocarbon ratio of the resulting

polymer. Both of these conditions dictate that incorporation of Class 2 monomers into copolymers of the present invention should be carefully selected. The degree of this selectivity is

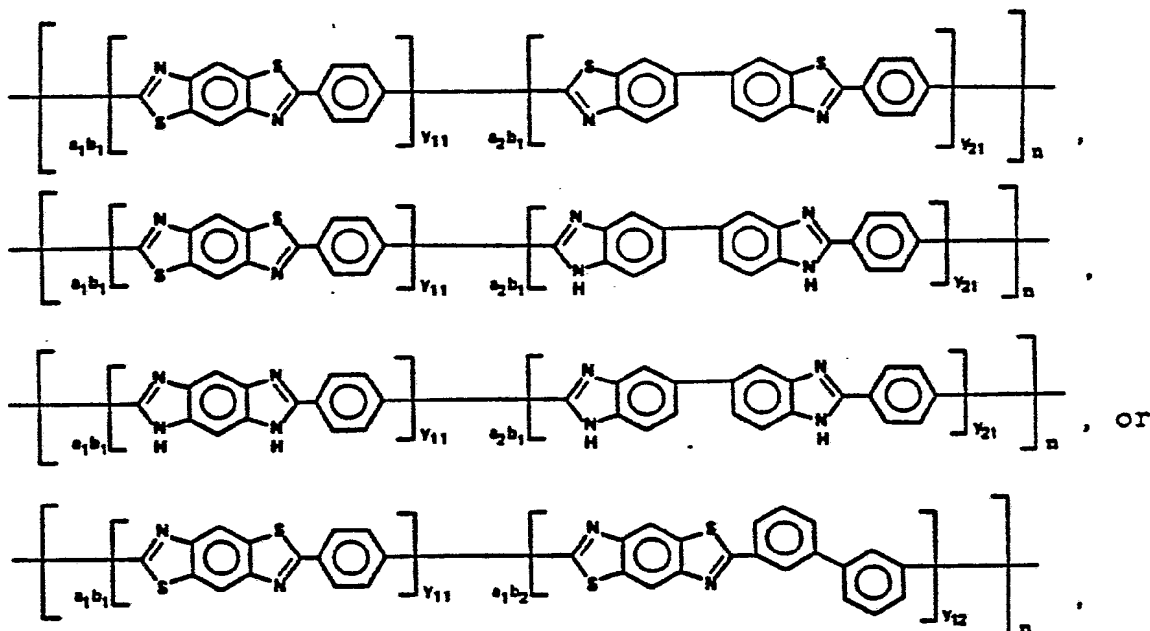
5 illustrated by the following copolymers prepared in accordance with the practice of the invention.



The immediately preceding list of copolymers is derived from monomer compositions containing monomers imparting reduced solubility to the copolymer. The preferred values of  $a_1b_1$  (i.e., the mole fraction of the more soluble recurring unit) are those greater than about 0.8, leading to values of  $y_{11}$  greater than about 5 and  $y_{12}$  values of nearly one. Monomer purity, control of stoichiometry, exclusion of oxidizing impurities, and selection of the molar quantity of the less soluble monomer to maintain copolymer solubility must be sufficient to achieve an average  $n$  value of greater than about 50. Increased proportion of a less soluble monomer may be achieved by selecting comonomers that impart improved solubility to the copolymer. In general, monomers of Type 1 wherein X is S impart greater solubility than those in which X is O or N. The practice of the invention as it relates to copolymers of partially reduced solubility is further illustrated in Examples 52, 53, 70, 71, and 72 below.

The following list of copolymers is derived from incorporation of monomers of moderately reduced mesogenicity and the practice of the invention is illustrated for them.





- 5 The preferred ranges of  $a_1b_1$  are from nearly zero to nearly one for copolymers in this classification with the overall proviso that the overall copolymer concentration in the polyphosphoric acid be above a critical
- 10 concentration determined by the least mesogenic recurring unit. Thus, above about 13% the above copolymers may have  $a_1b_1$  values between about one and zero,  $y_{11}$  values of nearly one and greater, and  $y_{21}$  values of nearly one and greater. The
- 15 preferred concentration with these  $a_1b_2$  and  $a_2b_1$  values may be between about 15 and about 22 weight percent. If the molar proportion of the more highly mesogenic recurring unit (i.e.,  $a_1b_1$ ) is selected to have values of greater than about
- 20 0.6, preferably greater than about 0.75, then the range of operable concentrations is increased to



include concentrations of the copolymer in greater than about 8 weight percent, preferably above about 10 weight percent. Values of n greater than about 50 are preferable as stated above.

General formula IX copolymer compositions may be prepared from class 3 monomers.

Monomers characterized as belonging to Class 3 lead to polymer recurring units that have little or no mesogenic character. Their incorporation into copolymers prepared as above are within the scope of the present invention but are less preferred because the random incorporation of a significant molar proportion of these non-mesogenic units leads to insufficient block length of the mesogenic recurring unit or units to impart liquid-crystalline behavior.

Incorporation of less than about 3 molar percent of Type 3 monomers is preferred. Increased incorporation of Class 3 polymers are highly preferred by use of a block polymer procedure described below. A less preferred embodiment of the present invention is the preparation of General formulas X, XV, and XVII by the addition of monomers of Types 3, 5, and 9, respectively, to the initial solution of the above copolymer



procedure. The unique feature of the geometry of monomers of Types 3 (except for 3k), 5, and 9 is the requirement that the block lengths,  $y_k$ , be large or, if small, be an even number. This condition dictates that preferred compositions of formulas X, XV, and XVII are prepared by a block polymer procedure described below.

The general formula XI copolymer composition shown above is prepared according to the following procedure:

(a) mixing at least two of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,



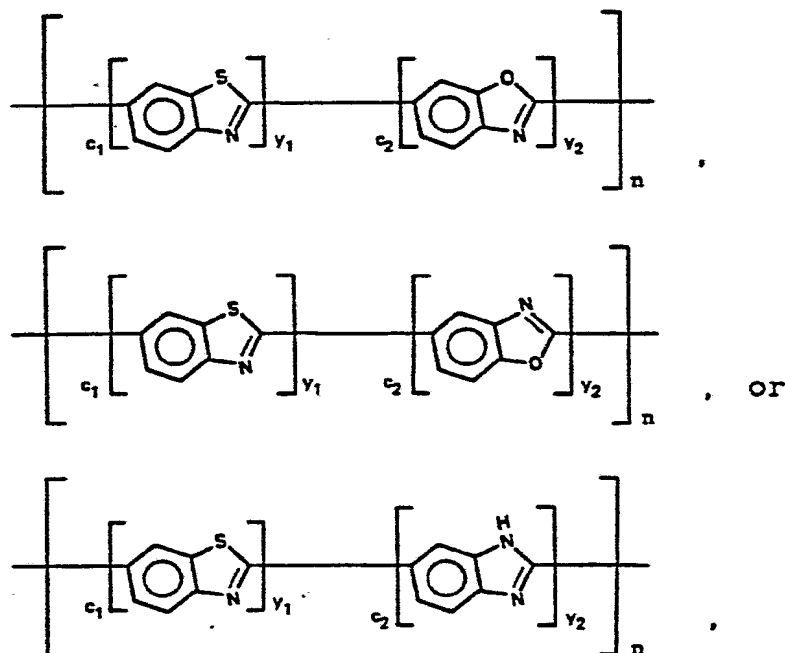
(d) causing polymerization of the the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first copolymeric product.

Selected molar quantities ( $c_{1m}$ ,  $c_{2m}$ , ...  $c_{km}$ ) of Type 3 monomers may be mixed with a phosphoric acid having a phosphorus pentoxide content of from about 63% to about 78%, preferably greater than about 68%, most preferably about 78%, and the protecting groups, if present, may be substantially removed by heating, and applying reduced pressure, if desired. The quantity of phosphoric acid is determined in accordance with equation a\* above, making the necessary calculations for the addition of monomers of possibly different molecular weights and different proportions. The phosphorus pentoxide content of the resulting mixture may then be raised in accordance with equation b\* above, so as to raise the final phosphorus pentoxide of the substantially copolymerized mixture to a value greater than about 81%, most preferably between about 82% to about 83% but less than about 84%. The resulting mixture may then be heated to about 100°C to about 200°C, most preferably between

about 150°C to about 185°C within a practical period of time, preferably within a time period of less than about 1 hour to about 5 hours or more, and most preferably within a period of about 1 hour to about 3 hours, and then maintained at the selected temperature for sufficient time to achieve the desired n value.

The practice of the present invention as it relates to the production of novel liquid-crystalline compositions that include copolymers with the general formula XI is further illustrated for those compositions wherein the selected monomers of Type 3 are further classified as being of Type (3,2).

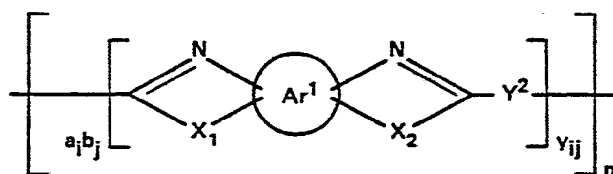
The polymers



are prepared according to the above procedure wherein  $c_1$  is the molar proportion of the more soluble recurring unit and selected to be above about 0.5, more preferably above about 0.7, to ensure the solubility of the resulting copolymer to the high concentrations required for liquid-crystalline behavior. A weight percent of the copolymer above about 15 weight percent, more preferably above about 17.5 weight percent, may be selected. Molar proportions selected above and monomer reactivity ratios determine the average block lengths  $y_1$  and  $y_2$ . The block length does not bear on whether liquid-crystalline behavior in polyphosphoric acid is obtained with these polymers. The important factor is the maintenance of solubility at high concentration and the preparation of these copolymers in polyphosphoric acid at high concentration from monomers.

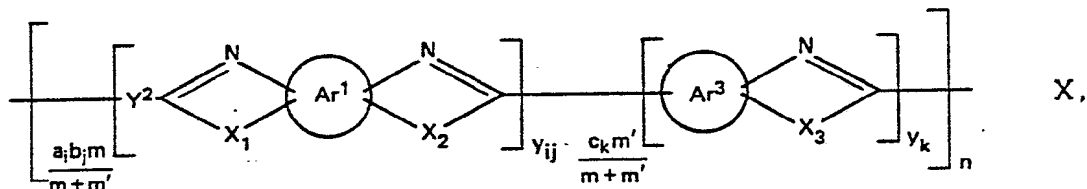
## Blockpolymeric Compositions and their preparation

In accordance with a still further aspect of the invention, there is provided a liquid-crystalline composition useful in the preparation of fibers and films comprising a polycondensation product consisting essentially of a blend of certain polyphosphoric acids and a high concentration of at least one high molecular weight extended chain block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the general formulas:



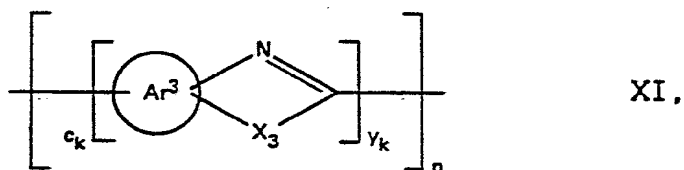
wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXX as defined above,  $\text{X}_1$  and  $\text{X}_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $\text{X}_1$  and  $\text{X}_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^1$ , N and  $\text{X}_1$  or  $\text{X}_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and  $\text{Y}^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is XXXI as defined above,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective

different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;

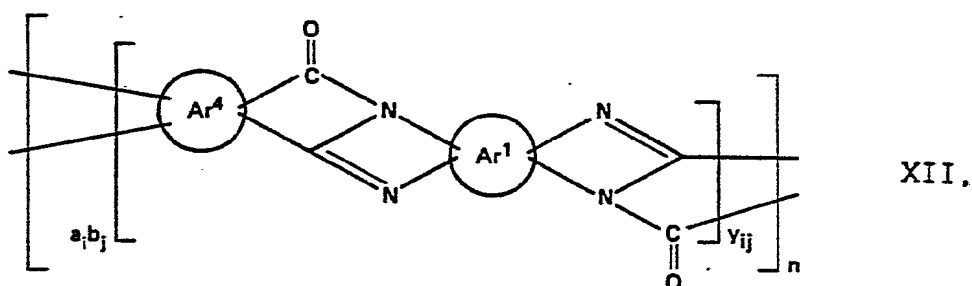


wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is  
 5 XXX as defined above,  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or  
 different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being  
 hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms  
 and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon  
 atoms of  $Ar^1$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring  
 10 are disposed ortho to one another and  $Y^2$  is nil  
 or represents a bivalent organic radical and is  
 XXXI as defined above,  $a_i b_j m / m + m'$  represents the  
 molar proportions of the respective different  
 recurring units present in said block polymer,  
 15  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respec-  
 tive different sequential recurring units present  
 in said block polymer,  $Ar^3$  represents an aromatic  
 moiety and is XXII as defined above,  $X_3$  is sul-  
 fur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an  
 20 organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$  being  
 bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$ , N and  $X_3$   
 of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one  
 another,  $c_k m' / m + m'$  represents the molar propor-  
 tions of the respective different recurring units  
 25 present in said block polymer,  $y_k$  represents an

average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



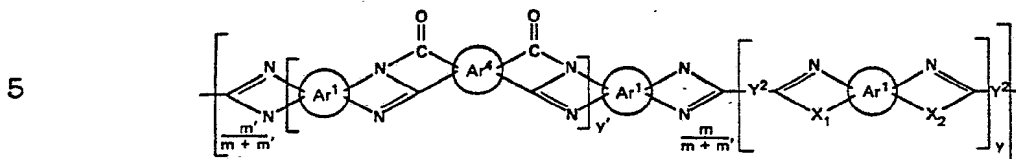
5 wherein  $Ar^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is  
 XXII as defined above,  $X_3$  is sulfur, oxygen, or  
 NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the  
 nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic  
 carbon atoms of  $Ar^3$ , N and  $X_3$  of each hetero ring  
 10 are disposed ortho to one another,  $c_k$  represents  
 the molar proportions of the respective different  
 recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_k$   
 represents an average number of the respective  
 different sequential recurring units present in  
 15 said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



20 wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is  
 XXXII as defined above,  $Ar^4$  represents a dif-  
 ferent aromatic moiety and is XXIII as defined  
 above, the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $Ar^1$  and  
 the carbon atoms being bonded to  $Ar^4$ ,  $a_i b_j$   
 represents the molar proportions of the respec-  
 tive different recurring units present in said



block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXXII or XXX as defined above with the proviso that when  $Ar^1$  is bonded to nitrogen atoms  $Ar^1$  is XXXII and when  $Ar^1$  is bonded to both nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$ ,  $Ar^1$  is XXX as defined above,  $Ar^4$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXIII as defined above, the carbon atoms being bonded to  $Ar^4$ ,  $m'/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y'$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^4$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is XXXI as defined above,  $m/m+m'$  represents the

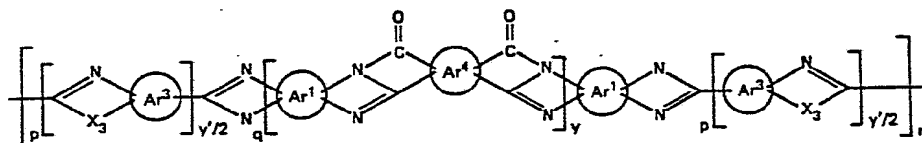
10

15

20

25

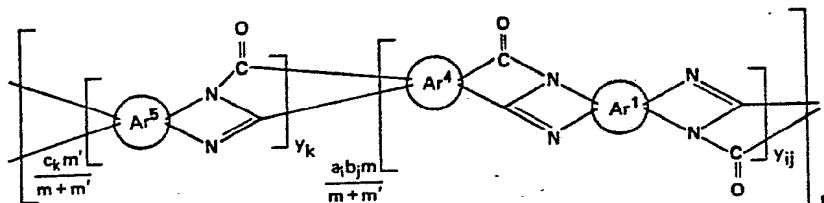
molar proportions of the respective different  
 recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y$   
 represents an average number of the respective  
 different sequential recurring units present in  
 said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



XIV.

wherein  $Ar^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is  
 XXII as defined above,  $X_3$  is sulfur, oxygen, or  
 NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the  
 nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic  
 carbon atoms of  $Ar^3$ , N and  $X_3$  of each hetero ring  
 are disposed ortho to one another,  $p$  represents  
 the molar proportions of the respective different  
 recurring units present in said block polymer,  
 $y'/2$  represents an average number of the respec-  
 tive different sequential recurring units present  
 in said block polymer,  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic  
 moiety and is XXXII as defined above,  $Ar^4$   
 represents a different aromatic moiety and is  
 XXIII as defined above, the nitrogen atoms being  
 bonded to  $Ar^1$  and the carbon atoms being bonded  
 to  $Ar^4$ ,  $q$  represents the molar proportions of the  
 respective different recurring units present in  
 said block polymer,  $y$  represents an average  
 number of the respective different sequential

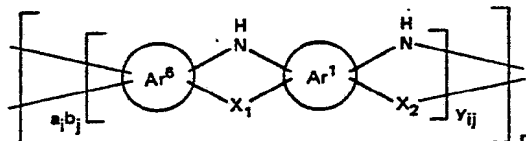
recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



XV.

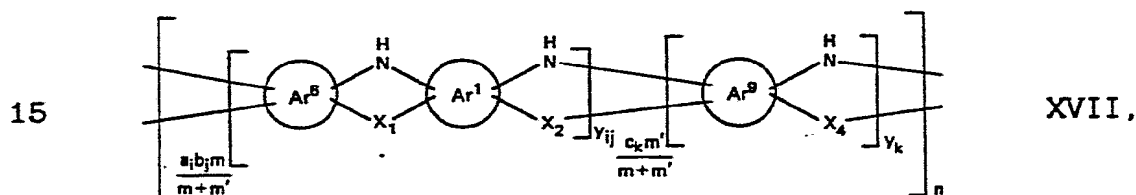
wherein  $Ar^4$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXIII as defined above,  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXXII as defined above, and  $Ar^5$  represents an aromatic moiety different from  $Ar^4$  and  $Ar^1$  and is XXIV as defined above, the carbon atoms being bonded to  $Ar^4$  and  $Ar^5$  and the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $Ar^1$  and  $Ar^5$ ,  $n$  being a positive integer;

$c_k m' / m + m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $a_i b_j m / m + m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



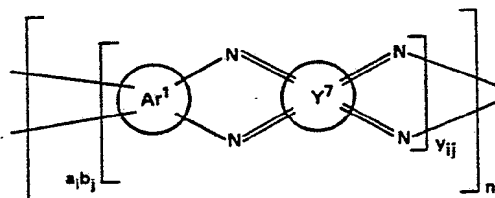
XVI.

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXX as defined above,  $Ar^6$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXV as defined above,  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^1$ , NH and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer, n being a positive integer;



wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXX as defined above,  $Ar^6$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is XXV as defined above,  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^1$ , NH and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $a_i b_j m / (m + m')$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring

units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $Ar^9$  represents an aromatic moiety different from  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^1$  and is XXVI as defined above,  $X_4$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_4$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^9$ ,  $c_{km'}/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer, n being a positive integer;



XVIII.

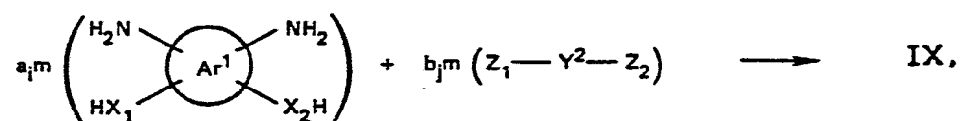
wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is XXXII as defined above,  $Y^7$  represents an aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety and is XXVIII as defined above, the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$  and bonded to adjacent carbon atoms of  $Y^7$ ,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer, n being a positive integer.

In accordance with the practice of the present invention, the synthesis of the aforementioned formulas IX -XIX block polymers can be illustrated by the following general reaction system:

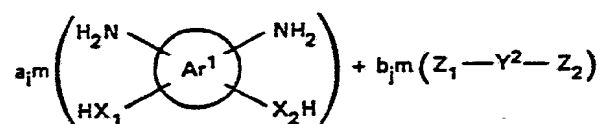
5

Reaction Mechanism

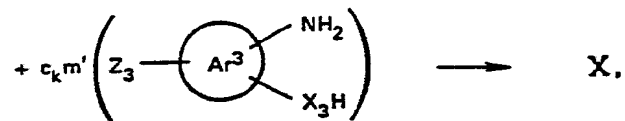
Formation of formula IX block polymer



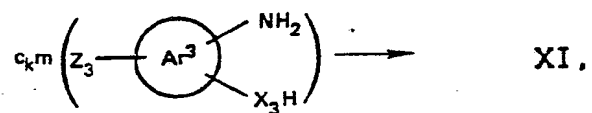
Formation of formula X block polymer



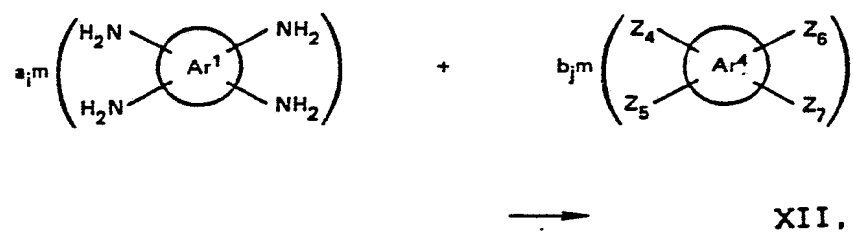
10



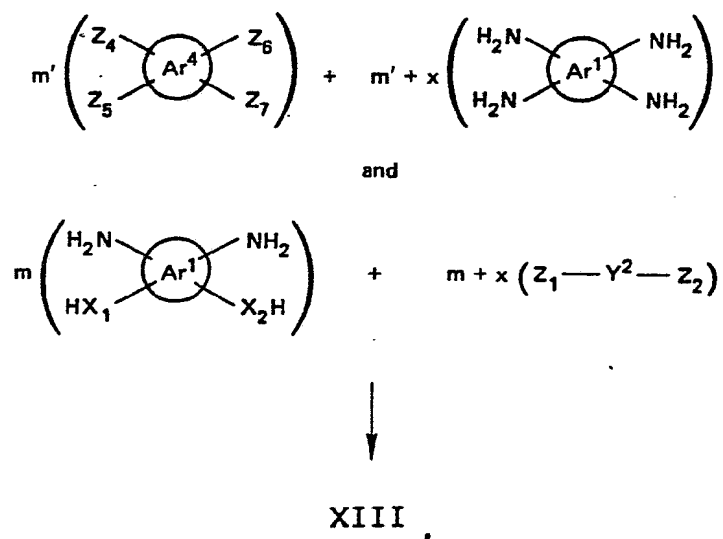
Formation of formula XI block polymer



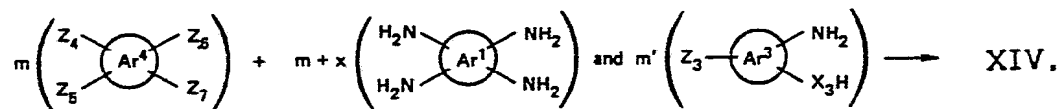
Formation of formula XII block polymer



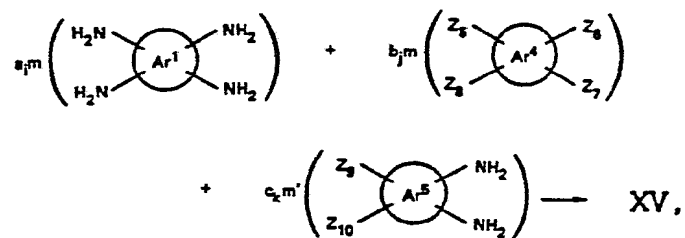
Formation of formula XIII block polymer



Formation of formula XIV block polymer

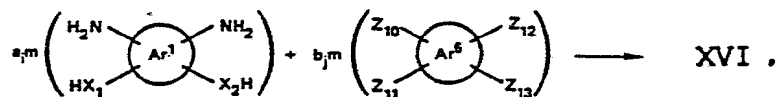


Formation of formula XV block polymer

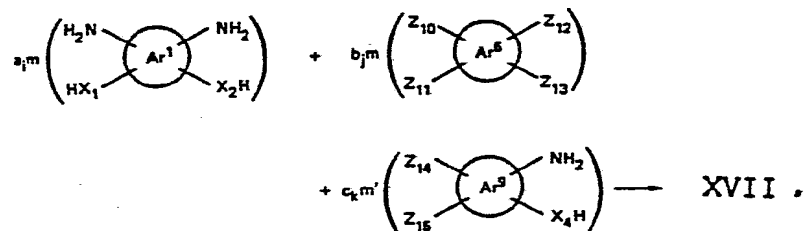


5

Formation of formula XVI block polymer



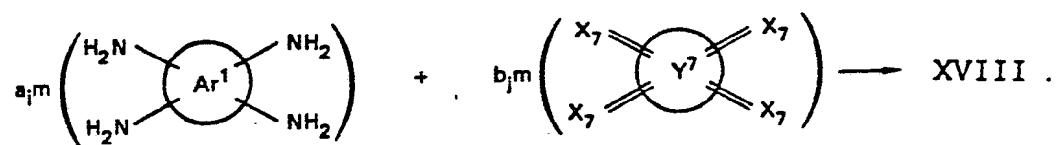
Formation of formula XVII block polymer



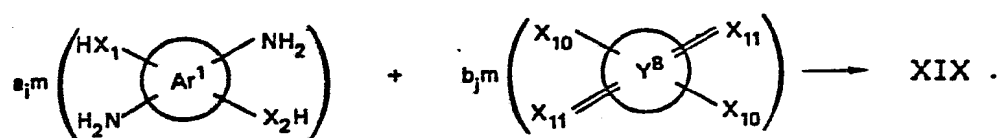
10



Formation of formula XVIII block polymer



Formation of formula XIX block polymer



- 5 The above-mentioned formulas IX, XII, XVI, XVIII, and XIX block polymer compositions may be prepared in accordance with the above process parameters by:

10 (a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content.

15 (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups

156

present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent.

(c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent.

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization.

(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity.

(f) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a), (b), (c), (d), and (e) with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be



different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product.

5 (g) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first block-polymeric product.

10 Alternatively, formulas IX, XII, XVI, XVIII, and XIX block polymer compositions may be prepared by:

15 (a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

20 (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a first mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,



(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content  
5 suitable for polymerization,

(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic  
10 viscosity,

(f) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of a second mixture of a different first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent, said second  
15 mixture being formed by like steps (a), (b) and (c) with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the second mixture be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or  
20 (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

(g) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (f) to provide a first oligomer-monomer reaction medium  
25 of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable



for polymerization,

(h) causing polymerization of the mixture resulting from step (g) at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a  
5 preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first block-polymeric product.

The above IX-XIX block polymers forming the liquid crystalline block polymer compositions of the instant invention can be characterized as  
10 having more than one recurring unit, the distribution or sequencing of which may be different from that obtained by the random condensation of monomers as in the copolymers described  
15 above and is further characterized as having contiguous blocks of the same recurring unit as obtained by the random condensation of oligomers.

The preferred formulas IX, XII, XVI, XVIII, and XIX block polymers are those polymers wherein  
20  $a_{ij}$  is the mole fraction of the recurring unit formed by the condensation of a homo-oligomeric reaction product (defined below) derived from the  $i$ th monomer of Type 1 with a stoichiometric quantity of  $j$ th monomer of Type 2, 4, 6, 7, or 8,  
25 respectively, and incorporated by a block-polymeric procedure described below, and  $y_{ij}$  and  $n$  have the same meaning as described above for copolymers.

The preferred XI block polymers are those



wherein  $c_k$  is the mole fraction of the recurring unit formed by the condensation of a homo-oligomeric reaction product (defined below) derived from the  $k$ th monomer of Type 3 and incorporated by a block polymeric procedure described below, and  $y_k$  and  $n$  are as defined for copolymers.

The preferred X, XV, and XVII block polymers are those wherein  $a_i b_j m / m + m'$  is the mole fraction of the recurring unit formed by the condensation of  $m$  moles of recurring units of a homo-oligomeric reaction product derived from the  $i$ th monomer of Type 1 and the  $j$ th monomer of Type 2, 4, or 6 and combined with  $m'$  moles of recurring units of a homo-oligomeric reaction product derived from condensation of the  $k$ th monomer of Type 3, 5, or 9, respectively, and  $y_{ij}$ ,  $y_k$ , and  $n$  are as defined for copolymers.

The preferred XIII block polymers are those wherein  $m'$  and  $m$  are appropriate molar quantities of the monomers that form the reaction products and are selected to give desired yields and molar



proportions of the respective recurring units,  $y'$  and  $y$  are block lengths as defined above,  $n$  is the total number of recurring units, and  $x$  is a molar quantity substantially less than  $m'$  that is selected to give an appropriate block length of the first homo-oligomer end-capped with *o*-diamine functional groups.

The preferred XIV block polymers are those wherein  $m'$ ,  $m$ ,  $x$ ,  $n$ ,  $y$ ,  $y'$  are as defined above,  $q$  is equal to  $m'/(m+m')$  and  $p$  is equal to  $m/2(m+m')$ .

Selected molar quantity,  $m$ , of a monomer of Type 1 may be mixed with a phosphoric acid having a phosphorus pentoxide content of from about 63% to about 78%, preferably greater than about 68%, most preferably about 78%, and the protecting groups, if present, may be removed as described previously. The quantity of the phosphoric acid is most desirably determined in accordance with equation a\* as described above. A stoichiometric quantity (i.e.,  $m$ ) of a monomer of Type 2, 4, 6, 7, or 8 may then be added to the resulting solution. The phosphorus pentoxide content of the resulting mixture may then be raised in



accordance with equation b\* given above, so as to raise the final phosphorus pentoxide content of the substantially polymerized mixture to a value greater than about 81%, most preferably between about 82% to about 83.5%, but less than about 84%. The resulting mixture may then be heated to about 100°C to about 185°C, most preferably to about 170°C to about 185°C, within a practical period of time, preferably within a period of from less than about one to about 5 hours, most preferably from about one to about 3 hours. This temperature is maintained for sufficient time to achieve a selected n value, hereinafter referred to as the homo-oligomeric n value, that is above a selected minimum value to be described for specific cases below, is characterized as being equal to  $1/2(1-p)$ , where p is the extent of reaction, defined as the mole fraction of either type of functional group present that has undergone condensation, and being preferably below a selected maximum value characteristic of complete polymerization. A selected molar quantity,  $m_{ij}$ , of the homo-oligomeric reaction product thus obtained is diverted into a second vessel containing a selected molar quantity,  $m_{ij}$ , of a similarly obtained but structurally different homo-oligomeric reaction product and the heating





at elevated temperatures continued.

The average block lengths,  $y_{ij}$ , of the block polymers may be determined the following way. The  $ij$ th oligomeric reaction product is prepared by adding  $a_i$  moles of a first monomer to an equimolar amount  $b_j$  of the second monomer. The sum of all  $a_i$  or  $b_j$  is 1. The mixture is polymerized to a selected intermediate extent of reaction,  $p_{ij}$ . The oligomeric  $n$  value of the  $ij$ th oligomeric reaction product,  $n_{ij}$ , is given by  $1/2(1-p_{ij})$ . The molar proportions of the recurring units incorporated into the block polymer are given by

$$\sqrt{a_i b_j}.$$

The block lengths  $y_{ij}$  can be calculated by the equation

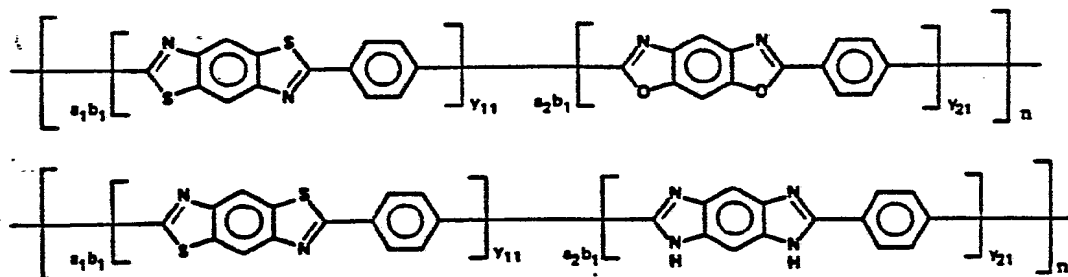
$$y_{ij} = \frac{n_{ij}}{1 - \frac{\sqrt{a_i b_j} (1 - p_{ij})}{\sum_{ij} \sqrt{a_i b_j} (1 - p_{ij})}}$$

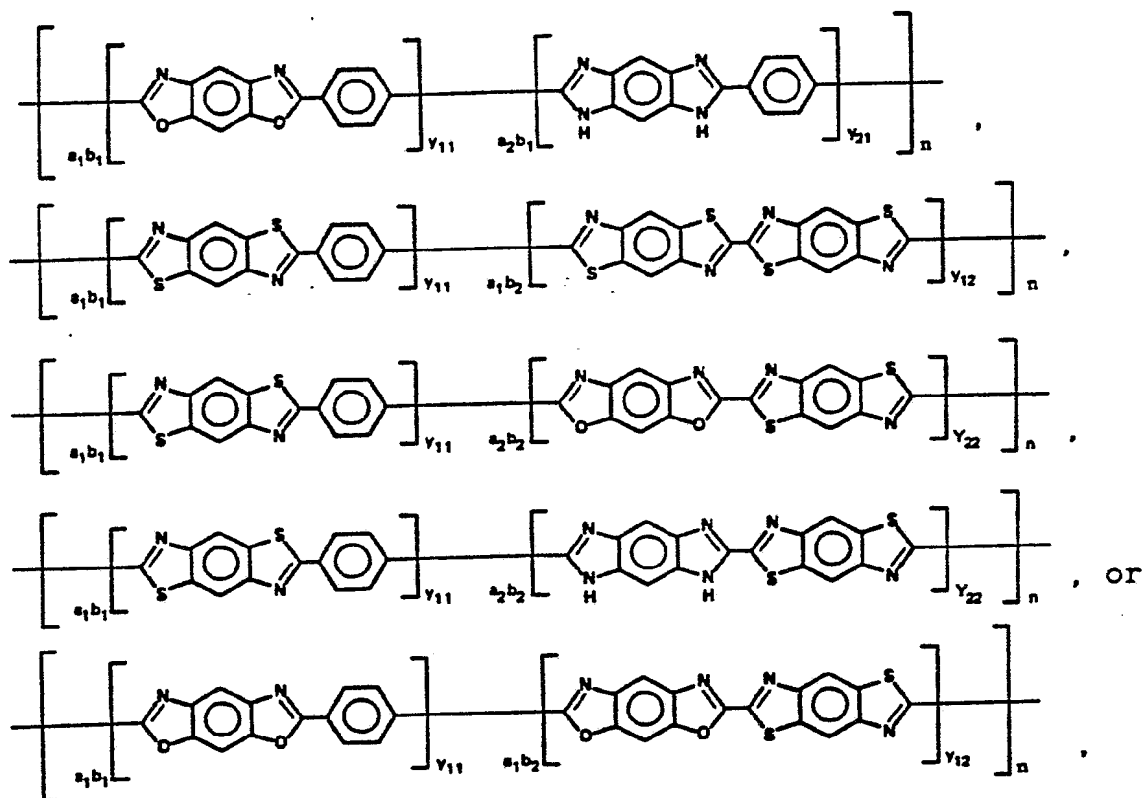
which assumes that the homo-oligomers condense with equal reactivity. The above equation for  $y_{ij}$  shows that if either of two homo-oligomeric reaction products are polymerized to high conversion, (i.e., allowed to achieve a high  $n_{ij}$  value

before mixing) then both block lengths in the resulting block polymer will be high.

The practice of the present invention as it relates to the production of novel liquid-crystalline compositions that include block polymers with the general formulas IX, XII, XVI, XVIII, and XIX is illustrated for those compositions including general formula IX wherein the selected first homo-oligomer may be prepared from monomers of Type 1 and Type 2 that are further classified as belonging to class 1 and the selected second homo-oligomer is further characterized as belonging to either class 1, class 2, or class 3.

General formula IX block polymers may be prepared from homo-oligomers derived exclusively from class 1 monomers. The block polymers,

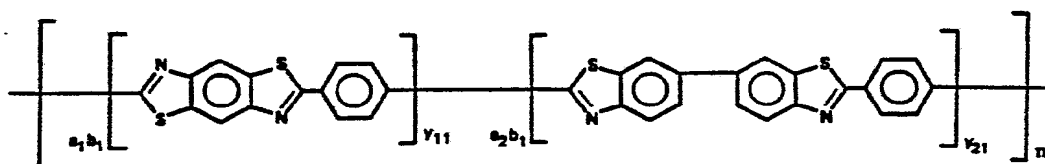


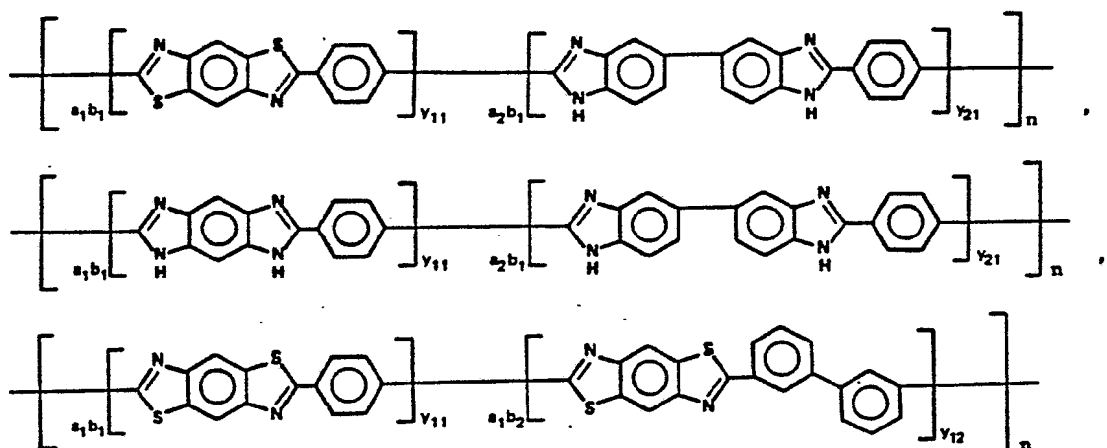


have the same advantage of a broad range of operable concentrations as described for copolymers formed exclusively from class 1 monomers. The advantage to the block polymer procedure described above for these polymers is the ability to vary  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$ , or  $y_{21}$ , or  $y_{22}$  essentially independent of the molar proportion  $a_1b_1$ , or  $a_2b_2$ , or  $a_2b_1$ , or  $a_1b_2$  by selecting appropriate extents of reaction for the corresponding homo-

oligomer. For example,  $y_{11}$  may be 20 or greater for a broad range of  $a_1b_1$  values by increasing the extent of reaction,  $p_{11}$ , as the  $a_1b_1$  value is decreased.  $y_{12}$ ,  $y_{21}$ , or  $y_{22}$  of the above formulas may be obtained with values from about one to about 75, most preferably from about 25 to about 50, by selecting appropriate  $p_{11}$  and  $p_{12}$ ,  $p_{21}$ , or  $p_{22}$  values. In practice, the members of this selected class of block polymers, because all the recurring units have a high degree of mesogenicity, are liquid-crystalline when an  $n$  value of greater than about 40 is obtained at a concentration of greater than about 6 weight percent independent of the block lengths achieved. The practice of the invention as it relates to block polymers of class 1 is further illustrated in Examples 75-84 below.

General formula IX block polymers may be prepared from a first homo-oligomer of class 1 and a second homo-oligomer derived from monomer pairs containing class 2 monomers. The block polymers,





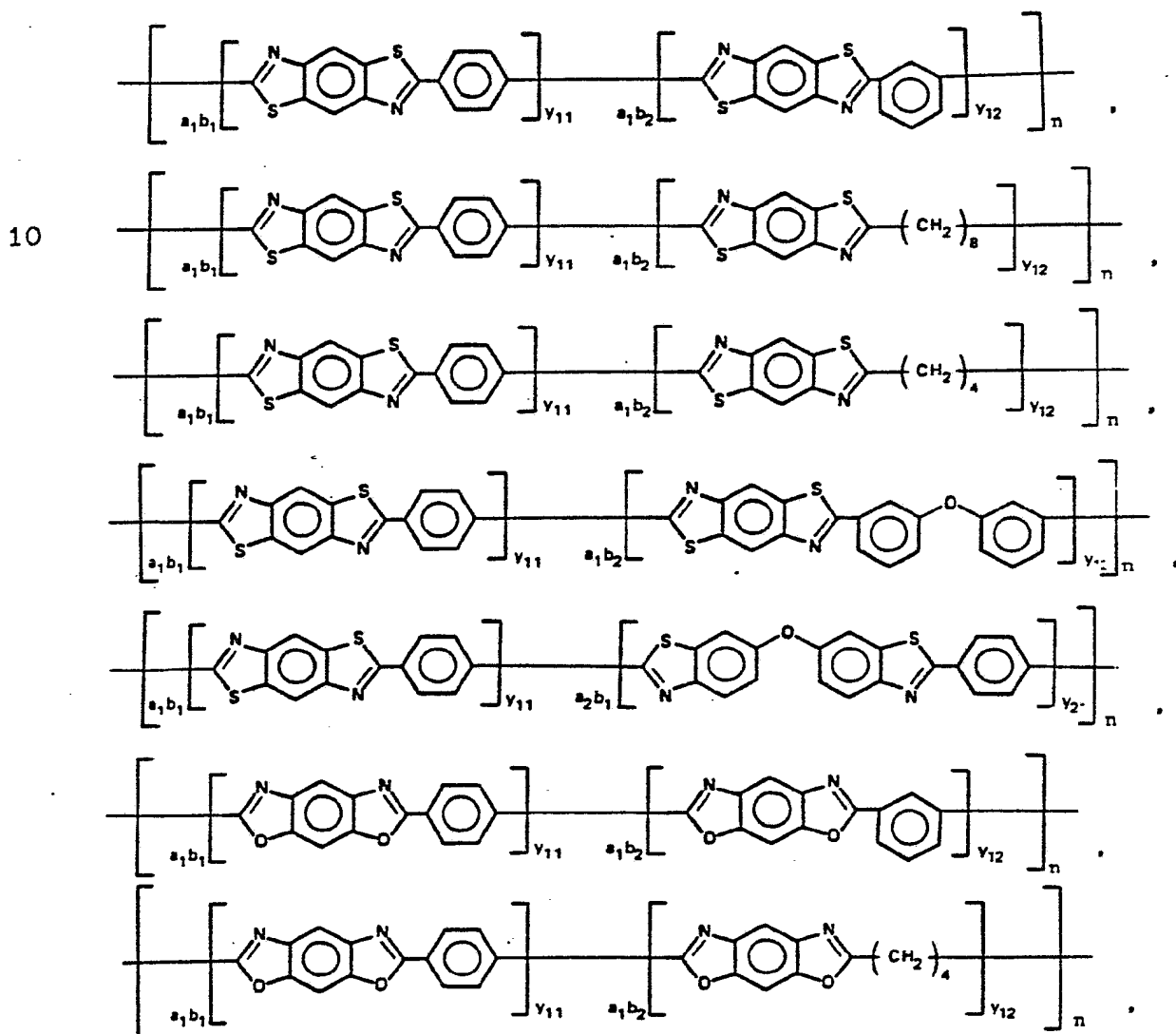
are derived from homo-oligomers of different  
 5 mesogenicity. The selection of  $a_1b_1$  (the molar  
 proportion of the first and more highly mesogenic  
 recurring unit) and the preferred  $y_{11}$  (the aver-  
 age block length of the first and more highly  
 mesogenic recurring unit) are governed by the  
 10 following considerations. The block polymer  
 reaction product in the first case may derive  
 liquid-crystalline behavior by virtue of the sole  
 presence of the first recurring unit when  $y_{11}$  is  
 greater than about 30, more preferably greater  
 15 than about 40, at concentrations of the first  
 recurring unit alone (i.e., the weight of the  
 first oligomer added / weight of the final block

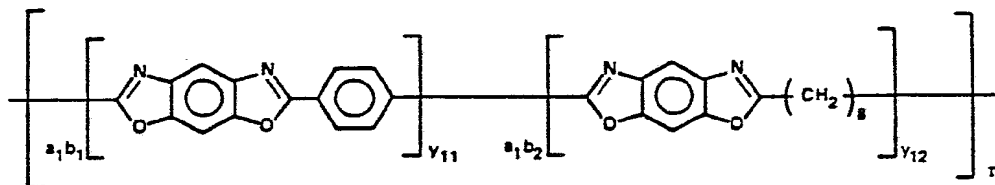
polymer reaction product) greater than about 7 percent, or the block polymer reaction product in the second case may derive liquid-crystalline behavior by virtue of the combined presence of both recurring units, independent of  $y_{11}$ , at concentrations above which the moderately mesogenic recurring unit derived from the second homo-oligomer is liquid-crystalline alone. The preferred values of  $a_1b_1$  are from about 0.4 to about one, with  $y_{11}$  ranging from about 80 to about 20, respectively, as  $a_1b_1$  is varied from 0.4 to one. The most preferred concentrations of these block polymers is above about 15 weight percent but may be lower as either the  $a_1b_1$  value or the  $y_{11}$  value or both values are increased. The preferred  $n$  value for these compositions is from about 50 to 150, most preferably greater than 100. Obtaining sufficient  $n$  values may be aided by the addition of the second homo-oligomeric reaction product before the phosphorus pentoxide content is raised to the value necessary for polymerization (i.e., when  $p_{12}$  or  $p_{21}$  is zero and  $n_{12}$  or  $n_{21} = 1/2$ ) and then adding the appropriate amount of phosphorus pentoxide to raise the mixture to sufficient phosphorus pentoxide content. This procedure aids in mixing and is most preferred when the homo-oligomeric  $n$  value of the



first homo-oligomer,  $n_{11}$ , is large. The practice of the invention as it relates to the preparation of block polymers of class 2 is further illustrated in Examples 85-88 below.

- 5 General formula IX block polymers may be prepared from a first homo-oligomer of class 1 and a second homo-oligomer derived from monomer pairs containing class 3 monomers. The block polymers





derive their liquid-crystalline behavior entirely  
 from the presence of the first recurring unit,  
 its average block length  $y_{11}$ , and its concentra-  
 5 tion alone in the total weight of the final block  
 polymer reaction product. Thus, the values of  
 $a_1b_1$ ,  $y_{11}$ , and concentration must meet the condi-  
 tions of the first case described for the block  
 polymers containing class 2 monomers. The method  
 10 of the invention allows the preparation of such  
 highly concentrated mixtures of mesogenic units,  
 i.e., reaction products substantially higher in  
 polymer concentration than that required for  
 liquid-crystalline behavior, that incorporation  
 15 of significant amounts of non-mesogenic units is  
 possible if the above conditions are met.

The preferred values of  $a_1b_1$  are from about 0.6  
 to about one. The preferred values of  $y_{11}$  are  
 from at least about 30 to about 100, more prefer-  
 20 ably between about 50 to 100. The preferred  
 values of  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  are from about one to about  
 50. The preferred values of  $n$  are from about 50



to 200 with the most preferred values being about 100 to 150. The preferred selected concentrations of the block polymer are above about 15 weight percent, especially as the proportion of the non-mesogenic recurring unit is increased. The practice of the invention as it relates to production of block polymers containing class 3 monomers is further illustrated in Examples 73, 74, 89-94 below.

The practice of the invention as it relates to the production of novel liquid-crystalline compositions that include block polymers with the general formulas X, XV, XVII are illustrated for block polymers of formula X wherein the selected first homo-oligomer is prepared from Type (1,1) or (1,2) and Type (2,1) monomers and the selected second homo-oligomer is prepared from monomers of Type (3,2).

The general formulas X, XV, and XVII liquid crystalline block polymer compositions shown above are prepared according to the following procedure:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of



172

phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

5 (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

10 (c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

15 (d) causing polymerization of the first monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

20 (e) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a) and (b) followed by:



(1e) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of a first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

5           (2e) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (1e) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

10           (3e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form said second homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

15           with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (1e) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) which forms the first homo-oligomeric  
20           product,

            (f) causing polymerization of the poly-  
oligomeric product at a temperature sufficient to  
effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-  
oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic  
25           viscosity or a first block-polymeric product.



Alternatively, the general formulas X, XV, and XVII liquid crystalline block polymer compositions shown above may be also prepared by:

5 (a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

10 (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

15 (c) mixing a selected amount of the solution of step (b) with a selected amount of at least one of a selected first homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first oligomeric-first monomer reaction medium, said first homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a) and (b) followed by:  
20

(1c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of a first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,



(2c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (1) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(3c) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form said first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (1c) which forms the first monomer solution, be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

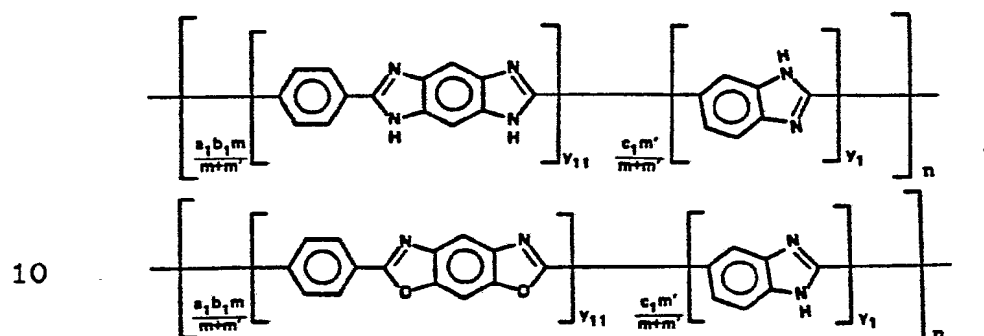
(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

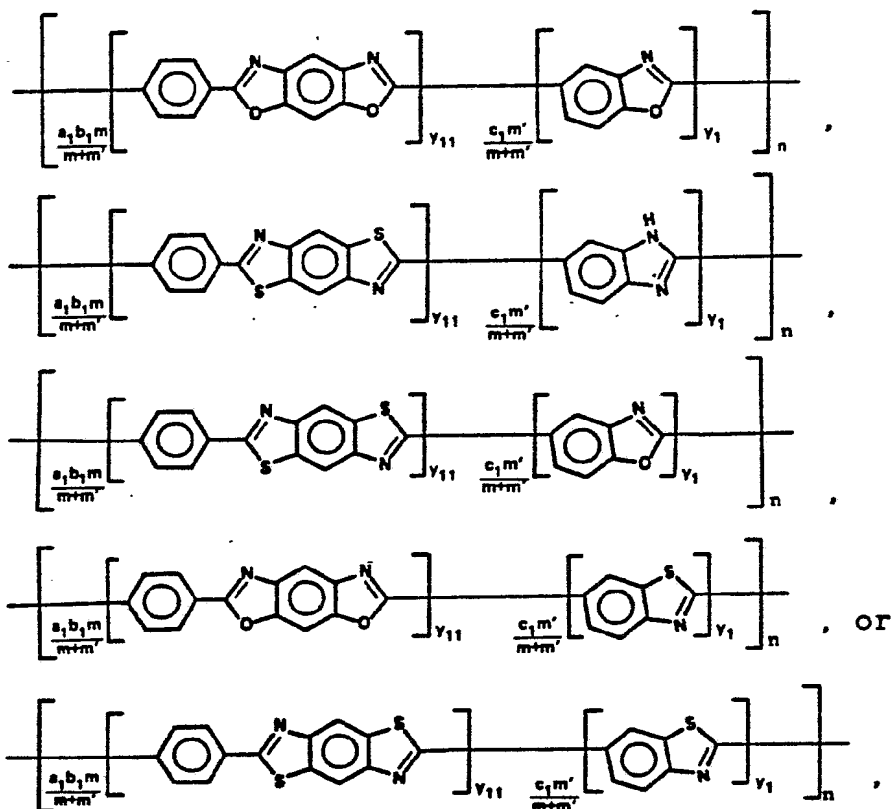
(e) causing polymerization of the first oligomer-monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first block-polymeric product.



General formula X block polymers may be derived from a first homo-oligomer of class 1 and a second homo-oligomer of type (3,2). The block polymers of Type X are prepared by a procedure analogous to the procedure described for Type IX block polymers, except that the second homo-oligomer is prepared from a single monomer.

The polymers



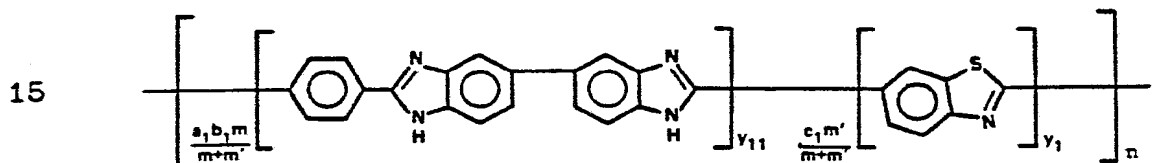
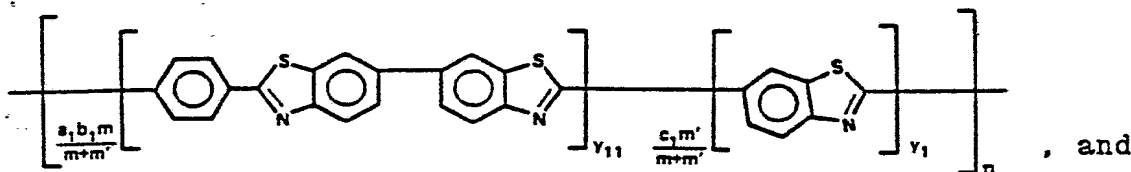
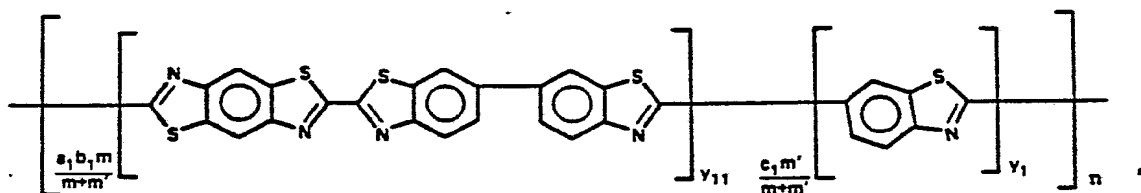


have preferred molar proportion of the first  
 recurring unit,  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  of from about zero to  
 about 0.5 when the concentration selected to be  
 above about 15 weight percent. When  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$   
 is selected to be above about 0.5 but less than  
 one then the operable concentration range is  
 extended to include concentrations of 7%, more  
 preferably 10 weight percent. At concentrations  
 above about 15 weight percent all selected values

of  $y_{11}$  and values of  $y_1$  greater than about 5 give liquid-crystalline products, but  $n$  must be greater than about 50, preferably above about 100 to give desirable mechanical properties.

- 5 The practice of the invention as it relates to the block polymers of this class is further illustrated in Examples 102-112 below

General formula X block polymer may be derived from a first homo-oligomer of class 2 and a  
10 second homo-oligomer of type (3,2). The block polymers





are prepared from two homo-oligomers of class 2 which dictates the selection of concentrations greater than about 15 weight percent. The molar proportions of the various recurring units are selected based on desired mechanical properties or the maintenance of solubility in two recurring units of different solubility characteristics. The preferred values of  $y_1$  are those from about 5-50, more preferably greater than 30. The practice of the invention as it relates to block polymers of this class is further illustrated in Examples 113-115 below.

The practice of the invention is illustrated for general formula XI for block polymers prepared from a single monomer of Type (3,2).

The general formula XI liquid crystalline block polymer compositions shown above are prepared according to the following may be prepared according to the following procedure:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(d) causing polymerization of the first monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

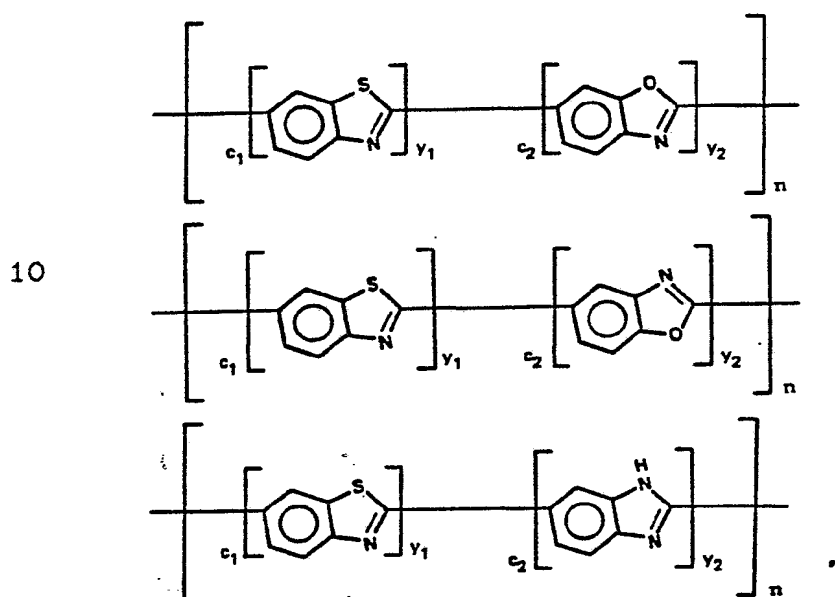
(e) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a), (b), (c), and (d) with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a)



which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

(f) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first block-polymeric product.

The block polymers



15 have preferred values of  $c_1$  between 0.5 and one, owing to the greater solubility and mesogenicity of the first recurring unit and preferred values of  $y_1$  greater than about 25 but less than about

100, owing to the higher mesogenicity. Concentrations greater than about 15%, more preferably greater than about 18%, and most preferably 20%, are selected. Examples 98-101 below further illustrate the method of the present invention.

The method of the invention also relates to the preparation of block polymers by the condensation of co-oligomeric reaction products, instead of the homo-oligomeric reaction products described in the above procedures.

#### Intrinsic Viscosity

Intrinsic viscosity is determined by extrapolation of  $\eta_{rel} - 1/c$  and  $\ln \eta_{rel}/c$  to zero concentration in methane sulfonic acid at 30°C.



### Anisotropic Character of the Compositions

The extended chain polymer compositions of this invention are optically anisotropic, i.e., microscopic regions of a given extended chain composition are birefringent; a bulk extended chain composition sample depolarizes plane-polarized light because the light transmission properties of the microscopic areas of the extended chain composition vary with direction. This characteristic is associated with the existence of at least part of the extended chain polymer compositions in the liquid crystalline or mesomorphic state.

The extended chain polymer compositions of this invention that exhibit optical anisotropy do so while the extended chain polymer compositions are in the relaxed state. This is in contrast to conventional polymer solutions which may be caused to depolarize plane-polarized light when subjected to appreciable shear.

The extended chain polymer concentration of the compositions of the instant invention is



above the "critical concentration point." The  
"critical concentration point" is routinely  
determined using conventional concentration and  
viscosity measuring techniques (see Kwolek U.S.  
5 3,671,542).

Another qualitative determination of the  
liquid crystalline character of these extended  
chain polymer compositions may be made with the  
naked eye. These extended chain polymer  
10 compositions may appear turbid or hazy and yet  
contain no, or practically no undissolved solid.  
When the extended chain polymer compositions,  
seen under reflected ordinary light, is disturbed  
by shaking or rolling the vessel containing the  
15 extended chain polymer compositions or by only  
slow stirring, there is produced a  
characteristic, readily observed, satin-like  
sheen or glow which is observed even after the  
disturbance ceases, and which decreases in  
20 intensity thereafter. This may be described as  
being a pearly or opalescent quality of the  
extended chain polymer compositions of this  
invention. Compositions which are disturbed as  
described above often give the appearance of  
25 having striations and or graininess in the  
surface. These visual effects are observed in  
the liquid crystalline extended chain polymer



compositions of this invention. This may commonly be referred to as "stir opalescence." Further details on qualitative and quantitative determinations of optical anisotropy are presented in Kwolek U.S. 3,671,542.

### Fiber Preparation

The liquid crystalline compositions may be formed into fibers of high quality by spinning them into suitable baths such as by wet and "air gap" spinning techniques, using spinnerets and other apparatus constructed of materials resistant to the strong acids used. In "air-gap" spinning the spinneret is usually located in air or in an inert gaseous medium a short distance (e.g., 1 to 24 cm) above the surface of a coagulating bath.

However, air-gaps suitable for use in the present invention may range from less than about 1 cm to about 150 cm or longer, preferably from about 2 cm to about 300 cm, more preferably from about 10 cm to about 200 cm, and most preferably from about 10 cm to about 100 cm.



In the present invention, the initial draw ratio is approximately from about 1:1 to about 50:1 and higher. Preferably, the initial draw ratio is from about 20:1 to about 80:1, especially  
5 preferably, from about 60:1 to about 200:1, and, most preferably, from about 100:1 to about 150:1.

The term "draw ratio", as is well known, is a measure of the degree of stretching during the orientation of the fibrous material. In the  
10 present invention, the initial draw ratio is a measure of the degree of stretching of the filaments which occurs between the extrusion orifices and the exit from the coagulation bath. The initial draw ratio is defined as exit  
15 velocity divided by jet speed.

The jet speed is the speed at which the extruded polymer exits an extrusion orifice. It is conveniently determined by dividing the total polymer extrusion velocity by the total surface  
20 area of the extrusion orifices.

The exit velocity is the speed at which the filaments leave the coagulation bath. Although any means of measurement may be used, the exit velocity is conveniently determined by the  
25 surface speed of the rolls which take up the





filaments after their exit from the bath. Thus, the speed of the wash rolls is preferably measured for this purpose.

5        Spinning of polybenzimidazole fibers by one  
working of this general technique is described  
in, e.g., Tan U.S. 4,263,245. A variety of baths  
may be used to coagulate the extruded dope into  
fibers. The baths may be, e.g., water or  
10        methanol and the like, or a dilute solution of a  
mineral acid (for example, phosphoric acid or  
sulfuric acid and the like). Preferably, the  
temperature of a coagulation bath is room  
temperature or below.

15        It is desirable to completely remove the  
spinning solvent from fiber samples prepared from  
the liquid crystalline compositions of this  
invention. Water alone or aqueous alkaline  
solutions may be used for removal of the residual  
acid. A convenient method is to spray the  
20        threadline as it leaves the coagulating bath with  
an aqueous alkaline solution (e.g., saturated  
sodium bicarbonate), remove the surface liquid  
from the threadline with a wiping device (e.g., a  
sponge) or a jet, wash with water and/or aqueous  
25        alkaline solutions to reduce the acid content,  
and wind up the fibers on bobbins. The fibers



may be soaked in water for a period sufficient to remove the acid. The thoroughly washed fibers may be dried on the bobbin in the area of temperatures of up to about 110°C. They can also  
5 be conveniently dried on heated rolls.

The liquid crystalline compositions are especially suitable for extruding. This and other methods of article fabrication are fully described in J. S. Robinson, "Spinning,  
10 Extruding, and Processing of Fibers"; Chemical Technology Review No. 159, Noyes Data Corp., 1980. The above cited patents and/or publications are incorporated herein by reference.

15 The fibers prepared from the polymers of this invention exhibit high values of tensile properties, especially in the as-extruded state, i.e., without subsequent hot drawing or annealing. The tensile properties of these as-  
20 extruded fibers can be enhanced by subjecting the undrawn fibers to a heat treatment.



## Fiber tensile properties

- Filament properties are measured on fibers that are conditioned at 21 degrees C. and 65% relative humidity (R.H.) for at least 16 hours unless otherwise specified. Yarn properties are measured on yarn that are conditioned at 24 degrees C and 55% R.H. for at least 16 hours. All measurements are made in the fiber conditioning environment.
- 10 Tenacity (breaking tenacity) (T), elongation (breaking elongation) (E), and initial modulus (Mi) are obtained from breaking a single filament or a multifilament yarn on an Instron tester (Instron Engineering Corp., Canton, Mass.).
- 15 Single filaments are broken with a gage length (distance between jaws) of 1.0 inch (2.54 cm.). The results on 3 filaments are averaged. Yarns are given 3 turns per inch (2.54 cm.) twist (under 0.1 g.p.d. tension) and broken with a 10
- 20 inch (25.4 cm.) gage length. All samples are elongated at a constant rate of extension (10% elongation/ minute for fibers having an E of under 8%, and 60% elongation/minute for fibers with E of 8 to 100%) until the sample breaks.
- 25 The denier of a single filament (d.p.f.) is calculated from its functional resonant

frequency, determined by vibrating a 7 to 9 cm. length of fiber under tension with changing frequency (ASTM D1577-1973). This filament is then used for 1 break.

- 5     The denier of yarn is determined by weighing a known length (at 0.1 g.p.d. tension); 90 cm. length is convenient.

- 10     The tenacity (grams/denier), elongation (percent) and initial modulus (gram/denier) as defined in ASTM 3379-75e are obtained from the load-elongation curve and the measured denier. In actual practice, the measured denier of the sample, test conditions and sample identification maybe fed to a computer before the start of a
- 15     test; the computer record the load-elongation curve of the fiber as it is broken and then calculates the fiber properties.

- 20     It should be noted that different values maybe obtained from single filaments (filament properties) and from multifilament strands (yarn properties) of the same sample. Unless specified otherwise all properties given herein are filament properties.



## Additives

It will be understood that the usual additives such as dyes, fillers, antioxidants, and the like can be incorporated into the compositions of the present invention for the purpose intended, before preparation of the shaped article.

Mineral acids that are solvents for the extended chain polymers of the instant compositions such as polyphosphoric acid, methane sulfonic acid, 100% sulfuric acid, chlorosulfonic acid, and the like, may be added to the compositions of the invention in minor amounts (without departing from the scope of the invention) for purposes of modifying conditions for processing into shaped articles. The strong acid additives may contain one or more of the acid-soluble polymers described in Helmimiak, et al., U.S. 4,207,407 and P. D. Sybert, "Rigid-Rod Polyquinolines: Synthesis, Structure-Property Relationships and High-Strength Fibers", Colorado State University, Ph.D. Thesis, 1980. The above cited patent and thesis are incorporated herein by reference.



#### 4. Industrial Applicability

The liquid crystalline extended chain polymer compositions are extremely suitable for spinning into highly ordered and high strength fibers.

5 Such fibers are useful as reinforcement substitutes for other inorganic or organic products. Various examples include glass fibers, asbestos, boron fibers, carbon and graphite fibers, whiskers, quartz and silica fibers, ceramic fibers, metal fibers,  
10 natural organic fibers, and synthetic organic fibers. A reinforcement may be defined simply as the material that is added to a resinous matrix to improve the strength and other physical and chemical properties of the material.

15 Furthermore, the polymers of the instant compositions can be employed in any use typically performed by engineering thermoplastic materials, such as metal replacements and those areas where high performance is necessary. Extended chain  
20 polymer compositions may be employed for use in forming high strength films suitable in the production of composites, belts, tires, i.e., as tire cords, and the like. The films are suitable as construction materials for rocket nose cones  
25 and various other parts of space craft.

Depending on the extended chain polymer fiber or films selected (i.e., homopolymer, copolymer,



block polymer, or mixture thereof) the properties of the article formed may be controlled to suit the desired use. The control of polymer properties is an advantage, since, in the various areas of utility for such polymers, e.g. as laminates, structural materials, adhesives and ablative materials, the needs vary considerably.

By way of comparison, Examples 1-5 below are illustrative of low molecular weight (i.e., low intrinsic viscosity) and/or low polymer concentration compositions.

## EXAMPLE 1

In a 6-L resin flask were placed 386.78g (1.5774 mol) of 2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol dihydrochloride (1a) and 2.98kg of freshly prepared PPA. The PPA was prepared as described in Wolfe and Arnold, Macromolecules, Vol 14, 909 (1981). The mixture was stirred at room temperature under a flow of argon for 24h and heated at 60-70°C for 34h. The resulting solution was clear with no evidence of bubbles. Terephthalic acid (262.35g, 1.5792 mol) was then added and incorporated into the solution by rapid stirring at 110°C. Additional PPA (4.1kg) was then added. The yellow mixture was heated as follows: 110-165°C in 5h, 165°C for 12h, 180°C for 12h, and 195°C for 12h. The mixture became stir-opalescent after 6h at polymerization temperatures. Reduced pressure was applied during the first 6h of reaction but was alternated with an argon stream such that the mixture did not foam above a predetermined flask wall level. The hazy green product exhibiting yellow-green opalescence was removed from the flask and precipitated into a large volume of water. The copper-colored polymer was washed until the water was no longer acidic and then dried at 80-100°C under reduced pressure for 48h. A portion of the reaction product was bottled for





use in fiber-spinning studies: intrinsic viscosity  $[\eta] = 30.3$  dL/g (MSA). Anal. Calcd for  $C_{14}H_6N_2S_2$ ; C, 63.13; H, 2.27; N, 10.51; S, 24.08. Found: C, 62.75; H, 2.346; N, 10.24; S, 23.22.

- 5 The foregoing procedure provided a 5.6wt% of polymer  $\{AI\}_n$  in PPA. Polymerization mixtures of higher polymer concentration (up to 10%) were prepared. These runs required higher monomer 1a concentration during dehydrochlorination. Inter-
- 10 mittent cooling was cycled with argon pressure as required to control foaming at the desired level in the reaction vessel. Similarly, polymer  $\{AI\}_n$  in PPA of lower concentration were prepared and these required less time for complete dehydro-
- 15 chlorination than that described.

## EXAMPLE 2

- In a 6-L resin flask were placed 919.94g (3.7519 mol) of 1a and approximately 2.7kg of 115% PPA; the %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for this Example is illustrated in
- 20 Figure 8.

- The 115% PPA was obtained from FMC Corporation and heated to  $150^\circ\text{C}$  under an argon atmosphere, heated at  $150^\circ\text{C}$  under reduced pressure for 18h, and cooled to room temperature immediately before
- 25 use. The viscous mixture was stirred and an ice bath was applied for 24h to prevent vigorous foaming. Five additional days of stirring at



room temperature were required to remove enough hydrogen chloride to allow heating above room temperature. A clear, viscous solution was obtained after heating for 18h at 80°C. Finely powdered 2a (622.90g, 3.7454 mol) and an additional 2,773g of the above 115% PPA were then added. The mixture was then stirred and heated to 140°C for 3h and then heated at 150-160°C for 16h. The mixture gradually darkened, became optically isotropic, and never became noticeably more viscous. Samples that were removed and precipitated in water gave a dark green non-fibrous material. Additional heating failed to increase the viscosity to an extent to yield a fibrous material. The theoretical polymer concentration {AI} for this experiment was 14.8% in a PPA with an intermediate P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content of 83.8% and a final of 79.8%.

### EXAMPLE 3

To a 100 mL flask containing 15.8g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.4% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>) that had been cooled in an ice bath was added 24.2g of phosphorus pentoxide and the mixture heated at 150°C for 6h under an argon atmosphere. The % P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content profile for this Example is illustrated in Figure 9. After cooling the PPA (84.9% P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>) to room



temperature, 6.0g (0.029 mol) of 4-amino-3-mercaptobenzoic acid hydrochloride (3a) (prepared by the method of Wolfe, AFOSR Final Technical Report, Dec. 15, 1980) was added and the viscous  
5 mixture stirred at 40°C for 24h. The mixture was then placed under reduced pressure and the temperature slowly raised to 70°C. The orange-yellow mixture was then heated to 150°C over a 2h period. The resulting dark red solution was  
10 optically isotropic. The solution was then stirred at 150°C for an additional 24h. The polymer was isolated from the resulting optically isotropic solution containing 8.8% of the polymer by precipitation with water to give brittle  
15 films. The intrinsic viscosity of the isolated polymer  $[\eta]_n$  was 3.0 dL/g in methanesulfonic acid at 30°C.

## EXAMPLE 4

To a 50 mL round bottom flask containing 48.15g  
20 of PPA that was prepared as described in Wolfe and Arnold, Macromolecules, Vol. 14, 909 (1981) was added 7.436g (0.03616 mol) of 4-amino-3-mercaptobenzoic acid hydrochloride (3a) that was prepared as described in Wolfe, AFOSR Final  
25 Technical Report, Dec. 15, 1980. The mixture was

stirred at room temperature under an argon flow for 18h. After stirring for 2h under reduced pressure between 50 and 80°C the solution was a clear orange color. The solution was then heated under reduced pressure as follows: 90°C for 0.5h; 100°C for 0.5h; 110°C for 0.5h; 130°C for 0.5h; 140°C for 0.5h; 180°C for 8h; 150°C for 5h; 190°C for 16h; 160°C for 16h; 160°C for 16h; 200°C for 200h and 170°C for 7h. The resulting isotropic solution having a concentration of polymer  $[\eta]_n$  of 9.4% by weight gave only brittle amorphous films when precipitated in water. The intrinsic viscosity of the isolated polymer was 3.80 dL/g in methanesulfonic acid at 30.0°C.

15

## EXAMPLE 5

To 38g of PPA that was prepared as described in Wolfe and Arnold, Macromolecules, Vol. 14, 909 (1981) was added 1.421g (8.41 mmol) of 4-amino-3-mercaptobenzoic acid (3b) that was prepared by neutralization of an aqueous suspension of 4-amino-3-mercaptobenzoic acid hydrochloride (3a) (prepared according to Wolfe, AFOSR Final Technical Report, Dec. 15, 1980) followed by extraction with ethyl acetate, evaporation of the ethyl acetate, and recrystallization of the pale



yellow residue from methylene chloride. The viscous mixture was heated to 140°C under an argon flow in a 0.5h period. The temperature was raised to 160°C over a 0.5h period and then maintained at 160°C for 18h under reduced pressure. The optically isotropic, red solution was then heated under reduced pressure for 8h at 200°C. The isolated polymer  $\{T\}_n$  had an intrinsic viscosity of 4.57 dL/g in MSA at 30.0°C.

The compositions of this invention, their production and their advantages and uses are further illustrated in the following examples. These are intended only to demonstrate the invention and are not to be construed as limiting its scope, which scope is instead defined by the appended claims.

All polyphosphoric acid (PPA) hereinafter referred to as 115% was obtained from FMC Corporation and used as received. Terephthalic acid (2a) was obtained from Amoco Chemicals Company, reduced to an average particle size of 95% <10 um by an air-impact method, and dried before use. All monomers and  $P_2O_5$  that were added to PPA were deaerated by placing them in a desiccator, applying reduced pressure, filling



with an inert gas, and repeating the procedure at least once.

#### EXAMPLE 6

A mixture of 88.2g of concentrated  
5 orthophosphoric acid (85.4%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ) and 205.2g of  
115% PPA was stirred at  $100^\circ\text{C}$  for 2h under  
reduced pressure. After allowing the PPA  
solution to cool to approximately  $50^\circ\text{C}$  a portion  
of this solution (282.1g) was added to a 500 mL  
10 resin kettle containing 53.01013g (0.21620 mol)  
of 1a. After stirring to incorporate the solid  
monomer into the PPA, the mixture was stirred at  
room temperature for 2h under argon and then  
under reduced pressure at:  $25\text{--}30^\circ\text{C}$  for 24h;  $50^\circ\text{C}$   
15 for 3h; and  $70^\circ\text{C}$  for 16h. Monomer 2a (35.91734g,  
0.216196 mol) was then added to the resulting  
clear light green solution in four portions.  
After the addition of each portion, the reaction  
kettle was placed under reduced pressure before  
20 the 2a was incorporated by stirring. The mixture  
was allowed to cool to approximately  $50^\circ\text{C}$  before  
118.3g of  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  was added to increase the  
effective  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  content to 83.9%. The viscous  
slurry was then heated as follows:  $100\text{--}170^\circ\text{C}$  in  
25 3h;  $170^\circ\text{C}$  for 17h;  $185^\circ\text{C}$  for 5h; and  $200^\circ\text{C}$  for  
19h. The intrinsic viscosities (in dL/g) of the



polymer  $\{Al\}_n$  were determined from samples of the polymer solution withdrawn at the polymerization times indicated: 9.2 (8.5h), 12.8 (25.5h), 15.8 (44.0h). Heating this reaction solution at 200°C for an additional 76h only increased the intrinsic viscosity of the  $\{Al\}_n$  component to 16.4 dL/g. The reaction product is characterized as having a final  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 80.8% with the  $\{Al\}_n$  polymer concentration being approximately 12.6wt%.

## EXAMPLE 7

A mixture of 57.3g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.4%  $H_3PO_4$ ) and 133.7g of 115% PPA was stirred at 100°C for 4h under reduced pressure. After allowing the PPA solution to cool to room temperature, a portion of this solution (185.0g) was added to a 500 mL resin kettle containing 53.61422g (0.21866 mol) of 1a. (Monomer 1a of small crystal size was prepared without a final recrystallization according to the method of Wolfe, Loo, and Arnold, Macromolecules Vol. 14, 915 (1981) using the final isolation procedure involving the transfer of the dipotassium salt of 1a as an aqueous solution into 6N hydrochloric acid.)

After stirring to incorporate the monomer into the PPA, the mixture was stirred at 55-85°C for 5.5h under reduced pressure, at 25°C for 15.5h under an argon flow, and at 65-72°C for 4h under reduced pressure. Monomer 2a (36.3268g, 0.21866 mol) was added to the resin kettle containing the dehydrochlorinated solution of monomer 1a in PPA. After the addition of each of the six portions, the incorporation of the solid into the solution was aided by placing the kettle under reduced pressure before stirring was initiated. Powdered phosphorus pentoxide (114.4g) was then added to increase the effective  $P_2O_5$  content to 86.4% and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 27h. The polymerization mixture was then heated as follows: 100-170°C in 1h; 170°C for 21.5h; and 200°C for 71.5h. The intrinsic viscosities (in dL/g) of the polymer  $\{Al\}_n$  were determined from samples withdrawn at the polymerization times indicated: 23.1 (22.5h), 24.8 (29.0h), 27.0 (94h). The reaction product is characterized as having a final effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% and a polymer  $\{Al\}_n$  concentration being approximately 15.2 wt%.

25

## EXAMPLE 8





182.7g of a PPA solution with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2% (prepared by mixing 30 wt% of  $H_3PO_4$  and 70 wt% of 115% PPA) was added to a 500 mL resin kettle containing 52.62853g (0.21460 mol) of 1a. (Monomer 1a of large crystal size was prepared with a final recrystallization according to the method of Wolfe, Loo, and Arnold, Macromolecules, 14, 915 (1981) using the final isolation procedure involving a transfer of the dipotassium salt of monomer 1a as solid into 6N hydrochloric acid.) After stirring to incorporate the solid monomer into the PPA, the mixture was substantially dehydrochlorinated by heating the mixture at 55-70°C under reduced pressure for approximately 31h. Monomer 2a (35.6522g, 0.21460 mol) was added to the resin kettle and incorporated as described in the previous Example. Powdered  $P_2O_5$  (123.35g) was then added to increase the effective  $P_2O_5$  content to approximately 88.4% and resulting mixture was stirred at 100°C for 17h under an argon flow. The polymerization mixture was then heated with stirring as follows: 100-170°C in 1h, 170°C for 23h, and 200°C for 24h. The intrinsic viscosities (in dL/g) were determined for the  $\{AI\}_n$  polymer from samples withdrawn at the indicated times: 17.2 (7h), 22.8 (24h), and 35.4

(48h). Heating without stirring for an additional 24h did not increase the intrinsic viscosity of the  $\{AI\}_n$  polymer. The green reaction product exhibits stir-opalescence and is characterized as having a final effective  $P_2O_5$  content of 82.2% with  $\{AI\}_n$  polymer concentration being approximately 15.1wt%.

## EXAMPLE 9

A mixture of 4,925g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.4%  $H_3PO_4$ ) and 11,491g of 115% PPA was stirred in a 22 L flask for 5h at 100°C under reduced pressure. After allowing the PPA solution to cool to 50°C under a flow of argon, a portion of this solution (11,321g) was added to a 40-L glass resin kettle (equipped with a mechanical stirrer consisting of a 3/4hp variable speed drive and stirring blades made of Hastelloy C-276) containing 2,380.55g (9.7088 mol) of 1a prepared as described in Example 7. The mixture was then stirred at: 65°C for 17h under a flow of argon; 65°C for 2h at 700-400 mm Hg; and 65°C for 2h at 40 mm Hg. An additional 2,552.77g (10.4112 mol) of monomer 1a that had been prepared and deaerated as described in Example 8 was then added under a flow of argon.

An additional 4,874g of the above-mentioned PPA was added and the mixture stirred at: 65°C for 1h at 700-300 mm Hg; 65-70°C for 3.25h at 40 mm Hg; 70°C for 2.5h at less than 5 mm Hg; 700°C for 7.5h under a flow of argon; and 80°C for 26h at less than 5 mm Hg. Monomer 2a (3,342.62g, 20.1205 mol) was then added. The resulting slurry was then cooled to 40°C and 8,512.1g of powdered P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> was added over a 4.5 period. The resulting viscous mixture was stirred at 80°C for 17h under an argon flow. The mixture was then heated to 100°C and an additional 4,655.4g of P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> was added to increase the effective P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content to 86.5%. After stirring for an additional 48h at 100-108°C, the polymerization mixture was heated as follows: 100-170°C in 3h; 170°C for 20h; and 200°C for 1.5h. The intrinsic viscosities (in dL/g) were determined from samples withdrawn at the indicated reaction times: 17.9 (14h), 18.5 (16.5h), 19.0 (23h), 24.34 (24.5h). Additional heating at 200°C only increased the intrinsic viscosity to 24.6 dL/g. The reaction product exhibited stir-opalescence and is characterized as having a final effective P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content of 82.2% with the [Al]<sub>n</sub> polymer concentration being approximately 15.6% by weight.

## EXAMPLE 10

To a 500 mL resin kettle containing a deaerated mixture of 12.06155g (0.0594092 mol) of terephthaloyl chloride (2b) and 14.5665g (0.0594081 mol) of 1a was added approximately 140g of 115% PPA that had been stirred at 100°C under reduced pressure for 1-2h, and had cooled to room temperature. The mixture was then stirred under an argon flow at: 40°C for 23h; 50°C for 3h; 60°C for 2h; 70°C for 19h; and 80°C for 3h. The solution was then stirred at 80°C under reduced pressure for 1h. An additional 140g of deaerated 115% PPA was then incorporated into the solution. The polymerization was stirred under argon at: 100°C for 30 min; 110°C for 30 min; 120°C for 30 min; 130°C for 30 min; 140°C for 30 min; 150°C for 30 min; 160°C for 45 min; 170°C for 11h; 185°C for 5h; and 200°C for 46.5h. Precipitation in water of a small amount of the anisotropic product provided polymer  $\{Al\}_n$  which possessed an intrinsic viscosity of 17.7 (dL/g) in MSA at 30°C.

## EXAMPLE 11



A mixture of 74.52g of 85.7% orthophosphoric acid and 173.88g of 115% PPA (83.8%  $P_2O_5$  content) is stirred under reduced pressure for 2h at 100°C. After cooling to room temperature, 55.23561g  
5 (0.225273 mol) of 1a (prepared as described in Example 8) and 45.73607g (0.225273 mol) of 2b (freshly sublimed) are added in eight portions. After the addition of each portion of monomer stirring is initiated to incorporate the monomer.  
10 The mixture is then stirred while the temperature is slowly increased and the pressure is slowly decreased until dehydrochlorination is complete. Deaerated phosphorus pentoxide (87.54g) is then added to the dehydrochlorination mixture at 50°C.  
15 The mixture is then stirred at 100°C for several hours. The polymerization is then stirred under an argon atmosphere at 170°C for approximately 20h, at 180°C for approximately 8h, and at 200°C for 3h. The resulting product contains 15 wt% of  
20  $[Al]_n$  in PPA (82.2%  $P_2O_5$ ).

## EXAMPLE 12

86.17g of a PPA solution with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of 74.9% (prepared by mixing 40 wt% of 85%  $H_3PO_4$  and 60 wt% of 115% PPA) was added to a  
25 500 mL resin kettle containing 27.62485g

(0.112665 mol) of 1a. The monomer was incorporated into the PPA solution by stirring and the resulting mixture was then substantially dehydrochlorinated by heating the mixture at 55-  
5 80°C under reduced pressure for approximately 21 hours. The %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for this Example is illustrated in Figure 10. Monomer 2a (18.7208g, 0.112686 mol) was then added to the resin kettle. Powdered  $P_2O_5$   
10 (83.17g) was then added to increase the effective  $P_2O_5$  content to approximately 87.2%. The resulting yellow slurry was stirred at 100°C for 15h under an argon flow. This slurry, which had not noticeably increased in bulk viscosity, was  
15 then stirred vigorously and heated by increasing the oil bath temperature from 100°C to 178°C within 40 minutes, and to 185°C within 1h. Polymerization times indicated below begin with time above 100°C. The 185°C temperature was then  
20 maintained for 76.5h. Intrinsic viscosities in MSA at 30°C (in dL/g) were determined for the  $AlI_n$  polymer from samples withdrawn at the indicated polymerization times: 16.6 (1.5h), 21.7 (2.25h), 24.2 (3.25h), 35.7 (7.7h), and 42.1  
25 (76.5h). The intrinsic viscosity of 42.1 corresponds to an average n value of polymerization of about 140. The polymerization product was stir-opalescent after a polymerization time of 0.75h and was found to be



highly drawable after 1.25h. Fibers prepared by directly drawing this product and precipitating the strands into water were amber, translucent, birefringent (crossed polars), showed extinction of transmitted light when a single polaroid sheet was placed perpendicular to the fiber direction, and could be fibrillated into microfibrils. Fibers prepared after 1.5h by the same method were noticeably stronger than the sample at 1.25h. The bulk viscosity of the product and the relaxation time of opalescence had noticeably increased after 2.25h. The  $P_2O_5$  content of the PPA component of the product was approximately 83.2% and the concentration of the  $\{Al\}_n$  polymer was 14.5% by weight based on the total weight of the resulting reaction product.

## EXAMPLE 13

A mixture of 17.7g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.7%  $H_3PO_4$ ) and 26.6g of 115% PPA was stirred under reduced pressure at 100°C for 2 hours. The %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for this Example is illustrated in Figure 11. The resulting solution was then poured at approximately 100°C under a stream of argon into a 200 mL resin kettle containing 11.41145g (0.054028 mol) of 4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydrochloride (1b) that was

prepared according to the method of Wolfe and Arnold, Macromolecules, Vol. 14, 909 (1981), recrystallized from aqueous hydrochloric acid containing 3 wt% stannous chloride, and dried for 5 20h at 63°C under reduced pressure immediately before use. The mixture was stirred at 53°C for 15h and 62°C for 4h under reduced pressure. Upon heating to 70°C, the monomer precipitated. Addition of 16.6g of  $P_2O_5$  resulted in 10 redissolution of the monomer. The solution was then heated at 100°C for 3h under reduced pressure to complete the dehydrochlorination. Monomer 2a (8.9761g, 0.05403 mol) was then added under an argon flow. Additional  $P_2O_5$  (19.0g) was 15 then added. The solution was then heated as follows: 100°C for 48h; 150°C for 2.5h; 160°C for 10h (the dark green solution became stir-opalescent during this period); and 180°C for 25h. The resulting reaction product was deep 20 purple with a metallic luster, exhibited stir-opalescence, depolarized plane-polarized light as evidenced by strong birefringence when viewed between crossed polars, and is further characterized as having a final effective  $P_2O_5$  25 content of 82% with the  $\{BI\}_n$  polymer concentration being 13.3% by weight. The intrinsic viscosity of the polymer  $\{BI\}_n$  isolated





from the reaction product was 23.9 dL/g in MSA at 30°C, which corresponds to an average number of recurring units,  $n$ , of approximately 110.



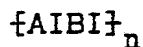
## EXAMPLE 14

5     The reaction product from Example 13 was drawn  
many times its length to give highly fibrillar  
fibers. A portion of the solution was removed  
from the reaction flask and placed in a KBr press  
equipped with a die with a circular orifice of  
10    0.13 mm in diameter. The solution was extruded  
into the air and stretched by pulling manually  
and then the fiber was dipped in water. The  
fiber thus produced was washed with water and  
then dried under tension in an air oven overnight  
15    at 110°C. The fiber produced was measured to be  
between 0.0093 mm and 0.012 mm in diameter. High  
orientation was evident from fibrils which split  
from the surface of the fiber and by the complete  
extinction of light transmitted through the fiber  
20    when a single polaroid was placed in a  
perpendicular direction only between the source  
and the fiber.

## EXAMPLE 15



The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 48.9831g (0.19978 mol) of monomer 1a is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 5 269.68g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2% (prepared by mixing 80.9g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 188.8g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 79.9805g (0.19978 mol) of monomer 2s is added followed by the gradual 10 addition of 142.23g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction 15 mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 85.07% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product 20 obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 19%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following 25 structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 20 dL/g in MSA at 30°C which corresponds to an  $n$  value of average polymerization of about 50.

## EXAMPLE 16

5 The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 64.4470g (0.26284 mol) of monomer 1a is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 341.97g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2%  
10 (prepared by mixing 102.6g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 239.4g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 63.6826g (0.26284 mol) of monomer 2j is added followed by the gradual addition of 137.3g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then  
15 stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
20 approximately 83.7% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further  
25 characterized as having a polymer concentration of 17%; fibers are readily formed by direct



spinning, or drawing from the reaction product.  
The polymer obtained is of the following  
structure:



- 5 characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 15  
dL/g in MSA at 30°C which corresponds to an  $n$   
value of average polymerization of about 100.

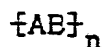
#### EXAMPLE 17

- 10 The procedure of Example 8 is essentially  
repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a,  
61.1619g (0.28706 mol) of monomer 1b is  
dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of  
338.4g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2%  
(prepared by mixing 101.5g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with  
15 236.8g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is  
substantially complete, 69.5488g (0.28706 mol) of  
monomer 2j is added followed by the gradual  
addition of 140.1g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then  
stirred and heated essentially according to  
20 Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as  
determined in accord with the aforementioned  
formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction  
mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
approximately 83.8% prior to the start of



polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 17%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:

10



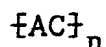
characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 16 dL/g in MSA at 30°C which corresponds to an  $n$  value of average polymerization of about 60.

## EXAMPLE 18

15 The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 81.9923g (0.28869 mol) of monomer 1c is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 366.8g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2%  
20 (prepared by mixing 110g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 256.8g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 69.9438g (0.28869 mol) of monomer 2j is added followed by the gradual addition of 148.4g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then



stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 83.8% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 16%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 16 dL/g in MSA at 30°C which corresponds to an n value of average polymerization of about 60.



## EXAMPLE 19

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 93.8232g (0.29202 mol) of monomer 1i is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 263.5g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2% (prepared by mixing 79.1g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 184.4g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 48.5129g (0.29202 mol) of monomer 2a is added followed by the gradual addition of 171g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 86.2% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantially complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 18%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 15 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.





## EXAMPLE 20

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 93.1836g (0.32225 mol) of monomer 1j is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 254.0g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2% (prepared by mixing 76.2g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 177.8g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 53.5357g (0.32225 mol) of monomer 2a is added, followed by the gradual addition of 178.4g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 86.6% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantially complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 18%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 14 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

## EXAMPLE 21

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 93.1836g (0.32225 mol) of monomer 1k is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 254.0g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2% (prepared by mixing 76.2g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 177.8g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 53.5357g (0.32225 mol) of monomer 2a is added, followed by the gradual addition of 178.4g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 86.6% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantially complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 18%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 14 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.



## EXAMPLE 22

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 128.474g (0.32431 mol) of monomer 11 is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 223.5g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 79.4% (prepared by mixing 44.7g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 178.8g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 53.8778g (0.32431 mol) of monomer 2a is added, followed by the gradual addition of 197.0g of  $P_2O_5$ . Inorganic salts, such as lithium salts (e.g., LiCl, LiF, Lithium phosphate, and the like) can be added at this point, if required, to promote polymer solubility. The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 89.1% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantially complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 18%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 12 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.



222

## EXAMPLE 23

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 70.3707g (0.21902 mol) of monomer 1i is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 323.1g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2% (prepared by mixing 96.9g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 226.2g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 53.0654g (0.21902 mol) of monomer 2j is added followed by the gradual addition of 125.0g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is pre-selected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 83.6% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantially complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 18%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 17 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.



223

## EXAMPLE 24

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 68.1280g (0.23560 mol) of monomer 1j is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 320.7g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2% (prepared by mixing 96.2g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 224.5g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 57.824g (0.23560 mol) of monomer 2j is added followed by the gradual addition of 126.9g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is pre-selected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 83.7% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantially complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 18%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 15 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.



## EXAMPLE 25

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 68.1280g (0.23560 mol) of monomer 1k is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 320.64g PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2% (prepared by mixing 96.19g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 184.4g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 57.0824g (0.23560 mol) of monomer 2j is added followed by the gradual addition of 126.88g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective P2O5 content of approximately 83.7% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective P2O5 content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantially complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 18%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 14 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.



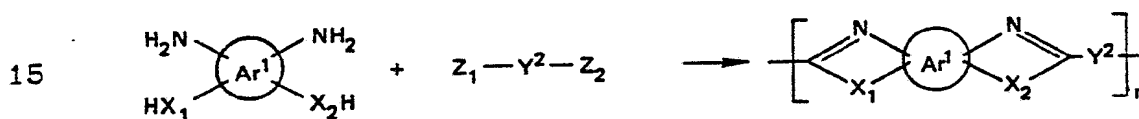
Analogous to the foregoing Examples 6-25, other Type I extended chain polymers may be synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline compositions having varying proportions of polymer concentration, P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content and polymer intrinsic viscosity in accordance with the present invention.

The synthesis is illustrated by the reaction systems in Tables 16a, 16b, 17a, 17b, and 17c. The m----->, e----->, and p-----> denote most preferred, especially preferred, and preferred selected monomer reactions respectively.

TABLE 16a

## Polymers of Type I, Class 1

## Polymerization Reactions:



Monomer (1,1) + Monomer (2,1) -----> Polymer I(1)



	1a	+	2i	e----->	{AK} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2k	e----->	{AB} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2l	e----->	{AC} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2m	e----->	{AD} <sub>n</sub>
5	1a	+	2n	e----->	{AE} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2o	e----->	{AF} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2p	e----->	{AG} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2q	e----->	{AH} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2t	e----->	{AICI} <sub>n</sub>
10	1a	+	2u	e----->	{AIDI} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2v	e----->	{AIEI} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2w	e----->	{AIFI} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2x	e----->	{AIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2y	e----->	{AIHI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1b	+	2e	e----->	{BJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2i	e----->	{BK} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2k	e----->	{B} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2l	e----->	{BC} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2m	e----->	{BD} <sub>n</sub>
20	1b	+	2n	e----->	{BE} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2o	e----->	{BF} <sub>n</sub>



	1b	+	2p	e----->	{BG}_n
	1b	+	2q	e----->	{BH}_n
	1b	+	2t	e----->	{BICI}_n
	1b	+	2u	e----->	{BIDI}_n
5	1b	+	2v	e----->	{BIEI}_n
	1b	+	2w	e----->	{BIFI}_n
	1b	+	2x	e----->	{BIGI}_n
	1b	+	2y	e----->	{BIHI}_n
	1c	+	2a	e----->	{CI}_n
10	1c	+	2e	e----->	{CJ}_n
	1c	+	2i	e----->	{CK}_n
	1c	+	2k	e----->	{BC}_n
	1c	+	2l	e----->	{C}_n
	1c	+	2m	e----->	{CD}_n
15	1c	+	2n	e----->	{CE}_n
	1c	+	2o	e----->	{CF}_n
	1c	+	2p	e----->	{CG}_n
	1c	+	2q	e----->	{CH}_n
	1c	+	2u	e----->	{CIDI}_n
20	1c	+	2v	e----->	{CIEI}_n
	1c	+	2w	e----->	{CIFI}_n

	1c	+	2x	e----->	{CIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2y	e----->	{CIHI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2a	e----->	{DI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2e	e----->	{DJ} <sub>n</sub>
5	1d	+	2i	e----->	{DK} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2m	e----->	{D} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2n	e----->	{DE} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2o	e----->	{DF} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2p	e----->	{DG} <sub>n</sub>
10	1d	+	2q	e----->	{DH} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2v	e----->	{DIEI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2w	e----->	{DIFI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2x	e----->	{DIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2y	e----->	{DIHI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1e	+	2a	e----->	{EI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2e	e----->	{EJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2i	e----->	{EK} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2n	e----->	{E} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2o	e----->	{EF} <sub>n</sub>
20	1e	+	2p	e----->	{EG} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2q	e----->	{EH} <sub>n</sub>

	1e	+	2w	e----->	{EIFI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2x	e----->	{EIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2y	e----->	{EIHl} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2a	e----->	{FI} <sub>n</sub>
5	1f	+	2e	e----->	{FJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2i	e----->	{FK} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2o	e----->	{F} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2p	e----->	{FG} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2q	e----->	{FH} <sub>n</sub>
10	1f	+	2x	e----->	{FIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2y	e----->	{FIHl} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2g	e----->	{GI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2e	e----->	{GJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2i	e----->	{GK} <sub>n</sub>
15	1g	+	2p	e----->	{G} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2q	e----->	{GH} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2y	e----->	{GIHl} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2a	e----->	{HI} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2e	e----->	{HJ} <sub>n</sub>

230

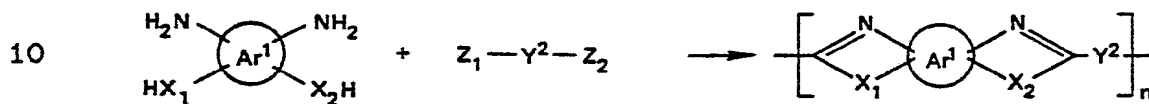


TABLE 16b

5

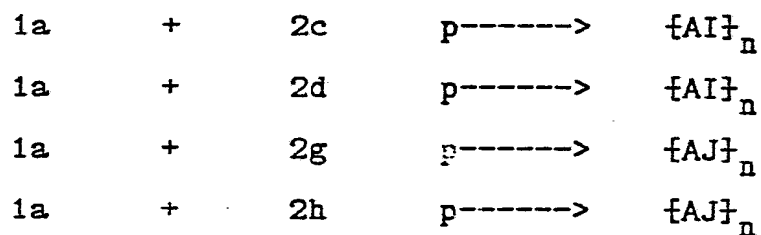
## Polymers of Type I, Class 1

Polymerization Reactions:



Monomer (1,1) + Monomer (2,1) -----> Polymer I(1)

15



	1a	+	2r	p----->	{AI} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2z	p----->	{A} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2b	p----->	{BI} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2c	p----->	{BI} <sub>n</sub>
5	1b	+	2d	p----->	{BI} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2f	p----->	{BJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2g	p----->	{BJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2h	p----->	{BJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2r	p----->	{AIBI} <sub>n</sub>
10	1b	+	2s	p----->	{BI} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2z	p----->	{B} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2b	p----->	{CI} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2c	p----->	{CI} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2d	p----->	{CI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1c	+	2f	p----->	{CJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2g	p----->	{CJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2h	p----->	{CJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2r	p----->	{AICI} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2s	p----->	{BICI} <sub>n</sub>
20	1c	+	2t	p----->	{CI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2b	p----->	{DI} <sub>n</sub>

	1d	+	2c	p----->	{DI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2d	p----->	{DI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2f	p----->	{DJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2g	p----->	{DJ} <sub>n</sub>
5	1d	+	2h	p----->	{DJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2j	p----->	{AD} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2k	p----->	{BD} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2l	p----->	{CD} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2r	p----->	{AIDI} <sub>n</sub>
10	1d	+	2s	p----->	{BIDI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2t	p----->	{CIDI} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2u	p----->	{DI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2b	p----->	{EI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2c	p----->	{EI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1e	+	2d	p----->	{EI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2f	p----->	{EJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2g	p----->	{EJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2h	p----->	{EJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2j	p----->	{AE} <sub>n</sub>
20	1e	+	2k	p----->	{BE} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2l	p----->	{CE} <sub>n</sub>

	1e	+	2m	p----->	{DEI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2r	p----->	{AIEI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2s	p----->	{BIEI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2t	p----->	{CIEI} <sub>n</sub>
5	1e	+	2u	p----->	{DIEI} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2v	p----->	{EI} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2b	p----->	{FI} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2c	p----->	{FI} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2d	p----->	{FI} <sub>n</sub>
10	1f	+	2f	p----->	{FJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2g	p----->	{FJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2h	p----->	{FJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2j	p----->	{AF} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2k	p----->	{BF} <sub>n</sub>
15	1f	+	2l	p----->	{CF} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2m	p----->	{DF} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2n	p----->	{EF} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2r	p----->	{AIFI} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2s	p----->	{BIFI} <sub>n</sub>
20	1f	+	2t	p----->	{CIFI} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2u	p----->	{DIFI} <sub>n</sub>

	1f	+	2v	p----->	{EIFI} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2w	p----->	{FI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2b	p----->	{GI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2c	p----->	{GI} <sub>n</sub>
5	1g	+	2d	p----->	{GI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2f	p----->	{GJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2g	p----->	{GJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2h	p----->	{GJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2j	p----->	{AG} <sub>n</sub>
10	1g	+	2k	p----->	{BG} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2l	p----->	{CG} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2m	p----->	{DG} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2n	p----->	{EG} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2o	p----->	{FG} <sub>n</sub>
15	1g	+	2r	p----->	{AIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2s	p----->	{BIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2t	p----->	{CIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2u	p----->	{DIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2v	p----->	{EIGI} <sub>n</sub>
20	1g	+	2w	p----->	{FIGI} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2x	p----->	{GI} <sub>n</sub>



	1h	+	2b	p----->	{HI} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2c	p----->	{HI} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2d	p----->	{HI} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2f	p----->	{HJ} <sub>n</sub>
5	1h	+	2g	p----->	{HJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2h	p----->	{HJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2j	p----->	{AH} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2k	p----->	{BH} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2l	p----->	{CH} <sub>n</sub>
10	1h	+	2m	p----->	{DH} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2n	p----->	{EH} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2o	p----->	{FH} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2p	p----->	{GH} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2r	p----->	{AIHI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1h	+	2s	p----->	{BIHI} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2t	p----->	{CIHI} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2u	p----->	{DIHI} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2v	p----->	{EIHI} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2w	p----->	{FIHI} <sub>n</sub>

236

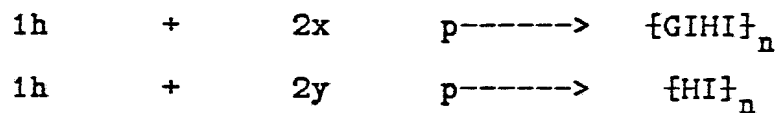
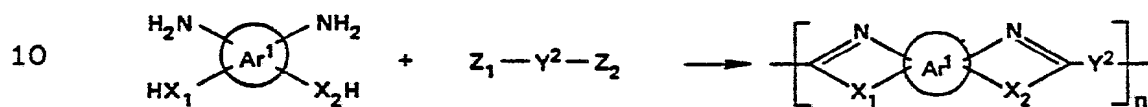


TABLE 17a

5

## Polymers of Type I, Class 2

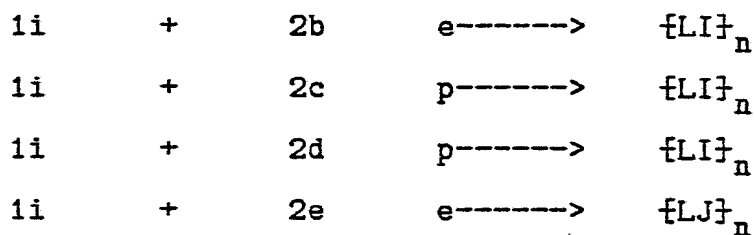
Polymerization Reactions:



Monomer (1,2) + Monomer (2,1) -----> Polymer I(2)

---

15



	1i	+	2f	p----->	{LJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2g	p----->	{LJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2h	p----->	{LJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2i	e----->	{LK} <sub>n</sub>
5	1i	+	2k	e----->	{BL} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2l	e----->	{CL} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2m	e----->	{DL} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2n	e----->	{EL} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2o	e----->	{FL} <sub>n</sub>
10	1i	+	2p	e----->	{GL} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2q	p----->	{HL} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2r	m----->	{AILI} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2s	m----->	{BILI} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2t	e----->	{CILI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1i	+	2u	e----->	{DILI} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2v	e----->	{EILI} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2w	e----->	{FILI} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2x	e----->	{GILI} <sub>n</sub>
	1i	+	2y	p----->	{HILI} <sub>n</sub>
20	1i	+	2z	e----->	{L} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2b	e----->	{MI} <sub>n</sub>

	1j	+	2c	p----->	{MI} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2d	p----->	{MI} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2e	e----->	{MJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2f	p----->	{MJ} <sub>n</sub>
5	1j	+	2g	p----->	{MJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2h	p----->	{MJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2i	e----->	{MK} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2k	e----->	{BM} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2l	e----->	{CM} <sub>n</sub>
10	1j	+	2m	e----->	{DM} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2n	e----->	{EM} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2o	e----->	{FM} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2p	e----->	{GM} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2q	e----->	{HM} <sub>n</sub>
15	1j	+	2r	e----->	{AIMI} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2s	e----->	{BIMI} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2t	e----->	{CIMI} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2u	e----->	{DIMI} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2v	e----->	{EIMI} <sub>n</sub>
20	1j	+	2w	e----->	{FIMI} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2x	e----->	{GIMI} <sub>n</sub>

	1j	+	2y	p----->	{HIMI} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2z	e----->	{M} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2b	e----->	{NI} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2c	p----->	{NI} <sub>n</sub>
5	1k	+	2d	p----->	{NI} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2e	e----->	{NJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2f	p----->	{NJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2g	p----->	{NJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2h	p----->	{NJ} <sub>n</sub>
10	1k	+	2i	e----->	{NK} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2k	e----->	{BN} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2l	e----->	{CN} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2m	e----->	{DN} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2n	e----->	{EN} <sub>n</sub>
15	1k	+	2o	e----->	{FN} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2p	e----->	{GN} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2q	p----->	{HN} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2r	e----->	{AINI} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2s	e----->	{BINI} <sub>n</sub>
20	1k	+	2t	e----->	{CINI} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2u	e----->	{DINI} <sub>n</sub>

240

	1k	+	2v	e----->	{EINI} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2w	e----->	{FINI} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2x	e----->	{GINI} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2y	p----->	{HINI} <sub>n</sub>
5	1k	+	2z	e----->	{N} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2b	e----->	{OI} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2c	p----->	{OI} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2d	p----->	{OI} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2e	e----->	{OJ} <sub>n</sub>
10	1l	+	2f	p----->	{OJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2g	p----->	{OJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2h	p----->	{OJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2i	e----->	{OK} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2j	e----->	{AO} <sub>n</sub>
15	1l	+	2k	e----->	{BO} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2l	e----->	{CO} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2m	e----->	{DO} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2n	e----->	{EO} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2o	e----->	{FO} <sub>n</sub>
20	1l	+	2p	e----->	{GO} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2q	p----->	{HO} <sub>n</sub>



	11	+	2r	e----->	{AIOI} <sub>n</sub>
	11	+	2s	e----->	{BIOI} <sub>n</sub>
	11	+	2t	e----->	{CIOI} <sub>n</sub>
	11	+	2u	e----->	{DIOI} <sub>n</sub>
5	11	+	2v	e----->	{EIOI} <sub>n</sub>
	11	+	2w	e----->	{FIOI} <sub>n</sub>
	11	+	2x	e----->	{GIOI} <sub>n</sub>
	11	+	2y	p----->	{HIOI} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2a	p----->	{PI} <sub>n</sub>
10	1m	+	2b	p----->	{PI} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2c	p----->	{PI} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2d	p----->	{PI} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2e	p----->	{PJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2f	p----->	{PJ} <sub>n</sub>
15	1m	+	2g	p----->	{PJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2h	p----->	{PJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2i	p----->	{PK} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2j	p----->	{AP} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2k	p----->	{BP} <sub>n</sub>
20	1m	+	2l	p----->	{CP} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2m	p----->	{DP} <sub>n</sub>

	1m	+	2n	p----->	{EP} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2o	p----->	{FP} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2p	p----->	{GP} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2q	p----->	{HP} <sub>n</sub>
5	1m	+	2r	p----->	{AIPi} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2s	p----->	{BIPi} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2t	p----->	{CIPi} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2u	p----->	{DIPi} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2v	p----->	{EIPi} <sub>n</sub>
10	1m	+	2w	p----->	{FIPi} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2x	p----->	{GIPi} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2y	p----->	{HIPi} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2a	e----->	{QI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2b	p----->	{QI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1n	+	2c	p----->	{QI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2d	p----->	{QI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2e	e----->	{QJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2f	p----->	{QJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2g	p----->	{QJ} <sub>n</sub>
20	1n	+	2h	p----->	{QJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2i	e----->	{QK} <sub>n</sub>





	1n	+	2j	e----->	{AQ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2k	e----->	{BQ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2l	e----->	{CQ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2m	e----->	{DQ} <sub>n</sub>
5	1n	+	2n	e----->	{EQ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2o	e----->	{FQ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2p	e----->	{GQ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2q	p----->	{HQ} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2r	e----->	{AIQI} <sub>n</sub>
10	1n	+	2s	e----->	{BIQI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2t	e----->	{CIQI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2u	e----->	{DIQI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2v	e----->	{EIQI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2w	e----->	{FIQI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1n	+	2x	e----->	{GIQI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2y	p----->	{HIQI} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2z	e----->	{Q} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2a	e----->	{RI} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2b	p----->	{RI} <sub>n</sub>
20	1o	+	2c	p----->	{RI} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2d	p----->	{RI} <sub>n</sub>

244

	1o	+	2e	e----->	{RJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2f	p----->	{RJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2g	p----->	{RJ} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2h	p----->	{RJ} <sub>n</sub>
5	1o	+	2i	e----->	{RK} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2j	e----->	{AR} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2k	e----->	{BR} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2l	e----->	{CR} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2m	e----->	{DR} <sub>n</sub>
10	1o	+	2n	e----->	{ER} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2o	e----->	{FR} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2p	e----->	{GR} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2q	p----->	{HR} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2r	e----->	{AIRI} <sub>n</sub>
15	1o	+	2s	e----->	{BIRI} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2t	e----->	{CIRI} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2u	e----->	{DIRI} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2v	e----->	{EIRI} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2w	e----->	{FIRI} <sub>n</sub>
20	1o	+	2x	e----->	{GIRI} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2y	p----->	{HIRI} <sub>n</sub>



	1o	+	2z	e----->	{R}_n
	1p	+	2a	e----->	{SI}_n
	1p	+	2b	p----->	{SI}_n
	1p	+	2c	p----->	{SI}_n
5	1p	+	2d	p----->	{SI}_n
	1p	+	2e	e----->	{SJ}_n
	1p	+	2f	p----->	{SJ}_n
	1p	+	2g	p----->	{SJ}_n
	1p	+	2h	p----->	{SJ}_n
10	1p	+	2i	e----->	{SK}_n
	1p	+	2j	e----->	{AS}_n
	1p	+	2k	e----->	{BS}_n
	1p	+	2l	e----->	{CS}_n
	1p	+	2m	e----->	{DS}_n
15	1p	+	2n	e----->	{ES}_n
	1p	+	2o	e----->	{FS}_n
	1p	+	2p	e----->	{GS}_n
	1p	+	2q	p----->	{HS}_n
	1p	+	2r	p----->	{AIS}_n
20	1p	+	2s	p----->	{BIS}_n
	1p	+	2t	p----->	{CIS}_n

246

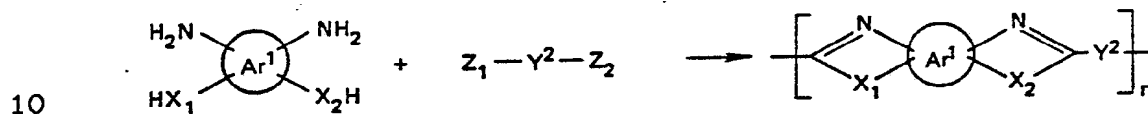
	1p	+	2u	p----->	{DISI} <sub>n</sub>
	1p	+	2v	p----->	{EISI} <sub>n</sub>
	1p	+	2w	p----->	{FISI} <sub>n</sub>
	1p	+	2x	p----->	{GISI} <sub>n</sub>
5	1p	+	2y	p----->	{HISI} <sub>n</sub>

---

TABLE 17b

## Polymers of Type I, Class 2

## Polymerization Reactions:



Monomer (1,1) + Monomer (2,2) -----> Polymer I(2)

15	1a	+	2hh	e----->	{AVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2ii	e----->	{ATIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1a	+	2jj	e----->	{ATKT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2hh	e----->	{BVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
20	1b	+	2ii	e----->	{BTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1b	+	2jj	e----->	{BTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2hh	e----->	{CVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1c	+	2ii	e----->	{CTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
25	1c	+	2jj	e----->	{CTKT'} <sub>n</sub>

248

	1d	+	2hh	e----->	{DVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2ii	e----->	{DTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1d	+	2jj	e----->	{DTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
5					
	1e	+	2hh	e----->	{EVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2ii	e----->	{ETIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1e	+	2jj	e----->	{ETKT'} <sub>n</sub>
10					
	1f	+	2hh	e----->	{FVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2ii	e----->	{FTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1f	+	2jj	e----->	{FTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
15					
	1g	+	2hh	e----->	{GVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2ii	e----->	{GTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1g	+	2jj	e----->	{GTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2hh	e----->	{HVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1h	+	2ii	e----->	{HTIT'} <sub>n</sub>



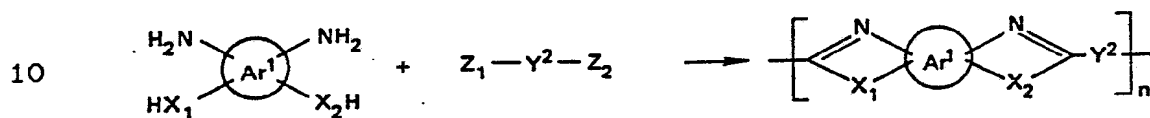


TABLE 17c

5

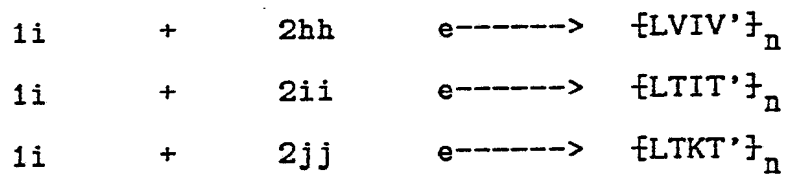
## Polymers of Type I, Class 2

Polymerization Reactions:



Monomer (1,2) + Monomer (2,2) -----> Polymer I(2)

15



250

	1j	+	2hh	e----->	{MVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2ii	e----->	{MTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1j	+	2jj	e----->	{MTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
5	1k	+	2hh	e----->	{NVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2ii	e----->	{NTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1k	+	2jj	e----->	{NTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2hh	e----->	{OVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
10	1l	+	2ii	e----->	{OTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1l	+	2jj	e----->	{OTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2hh	e----->	{PVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	2ii	e----->	{PTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
15	1m	+	2jj	e----->	{PTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2hh	e----->	{QVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2ii	e----->	{QTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1n	+	2jj	e----->	{QTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
20	1o	+	2hh	e----->	{RVIV'} <sub>n</sub>





	1o	+	2ii	e----->	{RTIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	2jj	e----->	{RTKT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1p	+	2hh	e----->	{SVIV'} <sub>n</sub>
5	1p	+	2ii	e----->	{STIT'} <sub>n</sub>
	1p	+	2jj	e----->	{STKT'} <sub>n</sub>

---

## EXAMPLE 26

- 10 A solution consisting of 63.34g concentrated phosphoric acid and 147.59g of 115% PPA was stirred at 100°C under reduced pressure for 3h in a 300 ml 3-necked flask. To a 500 mL resin kettle was added 63.49g (0.3087 mol) of 4-amino-
- 15 3-mercaptopbenzoic acid hydrochloride (3a) (prepared by the method of Wolfe, AFOSR Final Technical Report, Dec. 15, 1980). A portion of the above-prepared PPA having a P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> of 77.3% (207.57g) was poured into the resin kettle
- 20 containing the monomer while under argon flow. After the monomer had been incorporated, a second

portion of monomer (30.71g, 0.1493 mol) was added. The mixture was heated to 55°C and the pressure was gradually decreased over 1.5h. An additional 5.35g of monomer was added to the kettle under argon flow bringing the total monomer added to 99.65g (0.4845 mol). The mixture was then stirred under reduced pressure at 50°C overnight. The temperature was then raised to 70°C for 8h. Phosphorus pentoxide (138.62g) was then added in one portion to increase the effective  $P_2O_5$  content to 86.4%. After heating at 100°C with stirring overnight the reaction product was stir-opalescent. After placing the mixture, which still contained undissolved monomer, under reduced pressure for 3h, a sample was removed and was placed between a microscope slide and a cover glass. The unprecipitated product depolarized plane-polarized light. The reaction mixture was then heated under argon as follows: an additional 2.5h at 100°C; 2h at 120°C; 16h at 130°C; 31h at 170°C; 43.5h at 200°C. A sample of the green, opalescent polymer reaction product yielded gold-orange fibers upon precipitation in water. The sample was extracted in water for 24h and dried under vacuum at 140°C for 24h. The intrinsic viscosity was determined to be 8.2 dL/g

in MSA at 30.1°C. The reaction product is characterized as having a final effective  $P_2O_5$  content of 82.2% with the polymer  $\{T\}_n$  having a concentration of 15.1% by weight.

5

## EXAMPLE 27

A mixture of 125.8g of 115% PPA and 53.9g of concentrated phosphoric acid (85.7%  $H_3PO_4$ ) was heated to 100°C for 4h under reduced pressure in a 500 mL 3-necked flask. The %  $P_2O_5$  content profile for this Example is illustrated in Figure 12. To a 500 mL resin kettle was added 91.85g (0.4466 mol) of 3a. The kettle containing the monomer was deaerated. 108.17g of the PPA prepared above (having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.2%) was then added. The kettle was then heated with an oil bath at 50°C under a thin stream of argon overnight. The kettle was then placed under reduced pressure again and heated to 70°C for 23h.  $P_2O_5$  (108.32g) was then added in three portions to increase the effective  $P_2O_5$  content to 88.5%. Reduced pressure was applied to degas the  $P_2O_5$  and to cause foaming that aided in mixing. After 3h of stirring the temperature was raised to 100°C and maintained at that temperature under reduced pressure for 21h. The mixture was stir-opalescent and depolarized plane-polarized light. The mixture was then

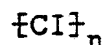


heated as follows: 115°C under argon for 3h;  
130°C under reduced pressure for 2h; 170°C for  
0.5h; 190°C for 17h. A sample of the green,  
opalescent reaction product was removed and gave  
5 a fibrillar, golden-colored fiber upon drawing  
followed by precipitation in water. After  
extracting with water in a Soxhlet apparatus for  
24h the sample was dried for 24h at 110°C under  
reduced pressure. The intrinsic viscosity of  
10 this sample was 15.8 dL/g in MSA at 30.0°C. An  
additional 7.5h of heating gave a sample with an  
intrinsic viscosity of 16.7 dL/g. The reaction  
product thus obtained was 20.3% by weight of  
polymer  $\{T\}_n$  in PPA with a final  $P_2O_5$  content of  
15 82.4%.

## EXAMPLE 28

The procedure of Example 27 is essentially  
repeated. Instead of monomer 3a, 146.9123g  
(0.4305753 mol) of monomer 3k is  
20 dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of  
265.9g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3%  
(prepared by mixing 78.6g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with  
187.4g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is  
substantially complete, an additional 144.85g of  
25  $P_2O_5$  is gradually added to the mixture and

dissolved by stirring and heating essentially according to the schedule given in Example 27. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 85.3% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 19%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 15 dL/g in MSA at 30°C which corresponds to an average n value of polymerization of about 70.

#### EXAMPLE 29

The procedure of Example 27 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomer 3a, 161.90g



(0.85391 mol) of monomer 3c is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 198.8g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 58.7g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 140.0g of 115% PPA). When  
5 dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, an additional 196.8g of  $P_2O_5$  is gradually added to the mixture and dissolved by stirring and heating essentially according to Example 27. The amount  
10 of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 88.6% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2%  
15 subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 19%; fibers are readily formed by direct  
20 spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



25 characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 12 L1/g in MSA at 30°C.



## EXAMPLE 30

The procedure of Example 27 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomer 3a, 161.90g (0.85391 mol) of monomer 3d is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 221.7g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 65.50g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 156.2g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, an additional 203.1g of  $P_2O_5$  is gradually added to the mixture and dissolved by stirring and heating essentially according to Example 27. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 88.2% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 18%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



258

 $\{V\}_n$ 

characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 12 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

5 Analogous to the foregoing Examples 26-30, other  
Type II extended chain polymers may be  
synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline  
compositions having varying proportions of  
polymer concentration, P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content and polymer  
intrinsic viscosity in accordance with the  
10 present invention.

The synthesis is illustrated by the reaction  
systems in Table 19. The e-----> denotes  
especially preferred selected monomer reactions.





TABLE 19

## Polymers of Type II, Class 2

Polymerization Reactions:

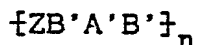


Monomer (3,2)		Polymer II(2)
3f	e----->	{X}_n
3g	e----->	{Y}_n
3h	e----->	{TI}_n
3i	e----->	{UI}_n

## EXAMPLE 31

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 99.923g

(0.35182 mol) of monomer 1c is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 802.0g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 177.9g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 424.1g of 115% PPA).  
5 When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 76.740g (0.35182 mol) of monomer 4a is added followed by the gradual addition of 272.7g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  
10  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 84.4% prior to the start of polymerization and an  
15 effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.0% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration  
20 of 10%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



25 characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 10 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.



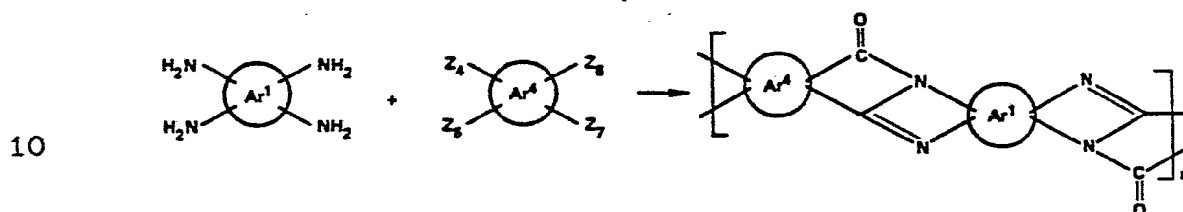
5 Analogous to the foregoing Example 31, other Type III extended chain polymers may be synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline compositions having varying proportions of polymer concentration,  $P_2O_5$  content and polymer intrinsic viscosity in accordance with the present invention.

The synthesis is illustrated by the reaction systems in Table 20. The e-----> denotes especially preferred selected monomer reactions.

TABLE 20

## Polymers of Type III, Class 1

Polymerization Reactions:



Monomer (1,1)+Monomer (4,1) -----> Polymer III(1)

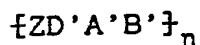
15

1c	+	4b	e----->	{B'A'F'Z'} <sub>n</sub>
1e	+	4a	e----->	{C'A'B'Z'} <sub>n</sub>
1e	+	4b	e----->	{C'A'F'Z'} <sub>n</sub>

## EXAMPLE 32

20 The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 109.94g (0.27752 mol) of monomer 1l is dehydrochlorinated

in an "initial" solution of 317.2g of PPA having  
a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 93.7g  
of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 223.5g of 115% PPA). When  
dehydrochlorination is substantially complete,  
5 60.533g (0.27752 mol) of monomer 4a is added  
followed by the gradual addition of 219.5g of  
 $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated  
essentially according to Example 8. The amount of  
10  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in  
accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and  
b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an  
effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 86.6%  
prior to the start of polymerization and an  
effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.0%  
15 subsequent to substantial complete  
polymerization. The reaction product obtained  
exhibits stir-opalescence and is further  
characterized as having a polymer concentration  
of 15%; fibers are readily formed by direct  
20 spinning, or drawing from the reaction product.  
The polymer obtained is of the following  
structure:



25 characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7dL/g  
in MSA at 30°C.

Analogous to the foregoing Example 32, other Type III extended chain polymers may be synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline compositions having varying proportions of polymer concentration, P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content and polymer intrinsic viscosity in accordance with the present invention.

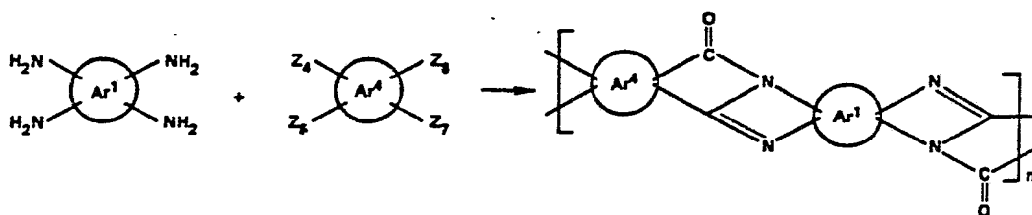
The synthesis is illustrated by the reactions in Table 21. The e-----> denotes especially preferred selected monomer reactions.



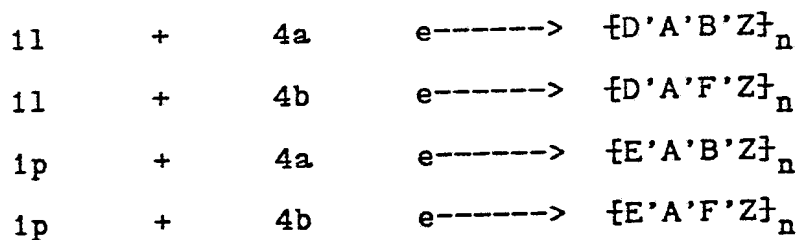
TABLE 21

## Polymers of Type III, Class 2

Polymerization Reactions:



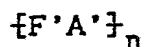
Monomer (1,2)+Monomer (4,1) -----> Polymer III(2)



## EXAMPLE 33

The procedure of Example 27 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomer 3a, 117.5156g (0.5149463 mol) of monomer 5a is dissolved in an

"initial" solution of 623.7g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.0% (prepared by mixing 192.8g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 430.9g of 115% PPA). When dissolution is substantially complete, an additional 257.8g of  $P_2O_5$  is gradually added to the mixture and dissolved by stirring and heating essentially according to Example 27. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 83.7% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.0% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 10%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



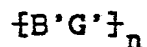
characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 10 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.



## EXAMPLE 34

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 70.784g (0.28869 mol) of monomer 1a is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 242.6g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 71.7g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 171.0g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 71.070g (0.28869 mol) of monomer 6a is added followed by the gradual addition of 162.9g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 86.4% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 19%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:

268



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

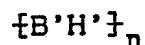
## EXAMPLE 35

5 The procedure of Example 13 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1b and 2a, 67.798g (0.31820 mol) of monomer 1b is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" mixture of 343.3g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 101.4g  
10 of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 241.9g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 78.336g (0.31820 mol) of monomer 6a is added followed by the gradual addition of 200.4g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated  
15 according to a schedule similar to Example 13. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
20 approximately 85.7% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further  
25 characterized as having a polymer concentration



of 15%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:

5

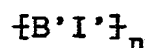


characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

### EXAMPLE 36

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 90.945g (0.32021 mol) of monomer 1c is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 402.5g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 192.1g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 210.4g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 78.830g (0.32021 mol) of monomer 6a is added followed by the gradual addition of 307.8g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 84.9% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of

approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 12%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

Analogous to the foregoing Examples 34-36, other Type V extended chain polymers may be synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline compositions having varying proportions of polymer concentration, P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content and polymer intrinsic viscosity in accordance with the present invention.

The synthesis is illustrated by the reaction systems in Table 23. The e-----> denotes especially preferred selected monomer reactions.

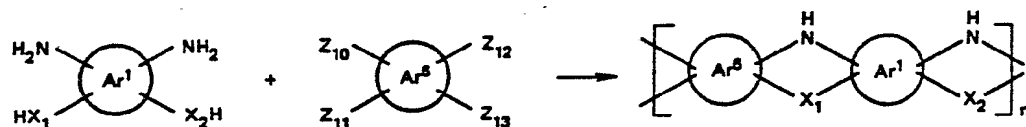


TABLE 23

## Polymers of Type V, Class 1

## Polymerization Reactions:

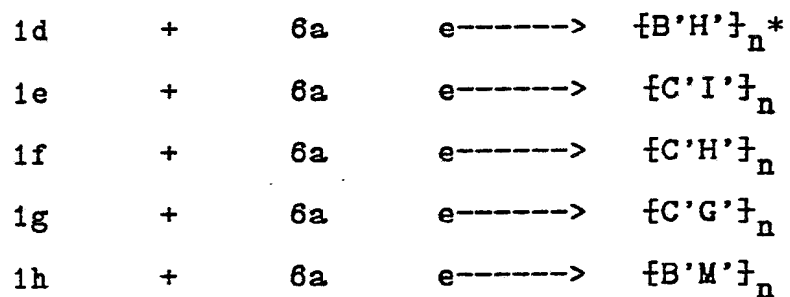
5



10

Monomer (1,1) + Monomer (6,1) -----> Polymer V(1)

15

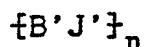


20

\*Note: Oxygens always para on B'

## EXAMPLE 37

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 58.035g (0.23669 mol) of monomer 1a is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 307.7g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 90.9g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 216.8g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 76.281g (0.23669 mol) of monomer 8b is added followed by the gradual addition of 163.5g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 85.2% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 17%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

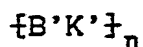
## EXAMPLE 38

5 The procedure of Example 13 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1b and 2a, 54.581g (0.25617 mol) of monomer 1b is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 330.4g of PPA having  
10 a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 97.6g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 232.7g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 82.559g (0.25617 mol) of monomer 6b is added followed by the gradual addition of 176.2g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated  
15 according to a schedule similar to Example 13. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
20 approximately 85.2% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further  
25 characterized as having a polymer concentration

274

of 16%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:

5



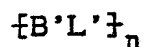
characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

## EXAMPLE 39

10 The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 73.126g (0.25747 mol) of monomer 1c is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 362.6g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 107.1g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 255.5g of 115% PPA).  
15 When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 82.978g (0.25747 mol) of monomer 6b is added followed by the gradual addition of 185.5g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8.  
20 The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 85.0% prior to the start of  
25 polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of



approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 15%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 6 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

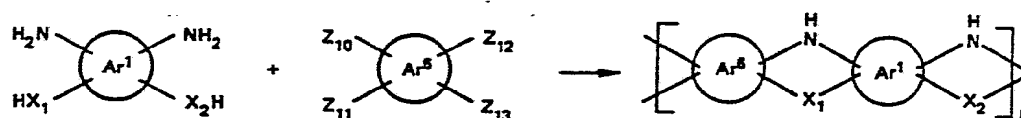
Analogous to the foregoing Examples 37-39, other Type V extended chain polymers may be synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline compositions having varying proportions of polymer concentration, P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content and polymer intrinsic viscosity in accordance with the present invention.

The synthesis is illustrated by the reaction systems in Table 24a. The e-----> denotes especially preferred selected monomer reactions.

TABLE 24a

## Polymers of Type V, Class 2

## Polymerization Reactions:



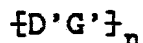
10 Monomer (1,1) + Monomer (6,2) -----> Polymer V(2)

1d	+	6b	e----->	{B'K'} <sub>n</sub> *
1e	+	6b	e----->	{C'L'} <sub>n</sub>
1f	+	6b	e----->	{C'K'} <sub>n</sub>
1g	+	6b	e----->	{C'J'} <sub>n</sub>
1h	+	6b	e----->	{B'N'} <sub>n</sub>

20 \*Note: Oxygens always para on B'

## EXAMPLE 40

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 76.047g (0.23369 mol) of monomer 1i is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 389.2g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 109.1g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 260.1g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 58.289g (0.23369 mol) of monomer 6a is added followed by the gradual addition of 180.4g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 84.8% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 15%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 10 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

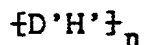
#### EXAMPLE 41

- 5 The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 74.075g (0.25617 mol) of monomer 1j is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 493.7g of PPA having  
10 a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 145.9g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 347.8g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 63.065g (0.25617 mol) of monomer 6a is added followed by the gradual addition of 221.2g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated  
15 according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
20 approximately 84.3% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further  
25 characterized as having a polymer concentration



of 12%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:

5



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 6 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

#### EXAMPLE 42

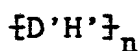
10 The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 74.075g (0.25617 mol) of monomer 1k is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 493.7g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 145.9g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 347.8g of 115% PPA).

15 When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 63.065g (0.25617 mol) of monomer 6a is added followed by the gradual addition of 221.2g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8.

20 The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 84.3% prior to the start of

25 polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of

approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 12%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



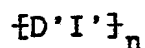
characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 6 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

#### EXAMPLE 43

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 101.996g (0.25747 mol) of monomer 1l is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 493.3g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 145.7g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 347.6g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 63.385g (0.25747 mol) of monomer 6a is added followed by the gradual addition of 221.5g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the



aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 84.3% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 12%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

Analogous to the foregoing Examples 40-43, other Type V extended chain polymers may be synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline compositions having varying proportions of polymer concentration,  $P_2O_5$  content and polymer intrinsic viscosity in accordance with the present invention.

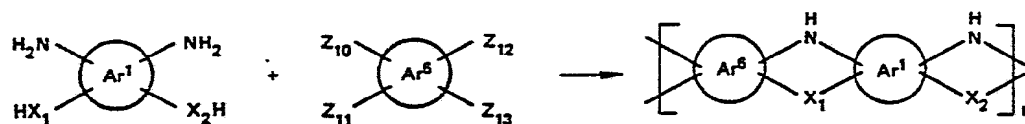
The synthesis is illustrated by the reaction systems in Tables 24b and 24c. The e-----> and p-----> denote especially preferred and preferred selected monomer reactions respectively.

TABLE 24b

## Polymers of Type V, Class 2

## Polymerization Reactions:

5



10

Monomer (1,2) + Monomer (6,1) -----> Polymer V(2)

15

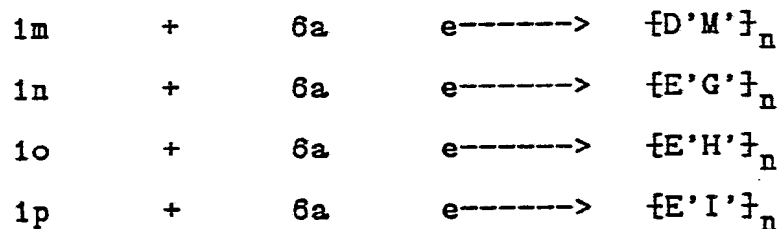


TABLE 24c

20

Monomer (1,2) + Monomer (6,2) -----> Polymer V(2)





---

	1j	+	6b	p----->	{D'K'} <sub>n</sub> *
	1k	+	6b	p----->	{D'K'} <sub>n</sub> **
	1l	+	6b	p----->	{D'L'} <sub>n</sub>
	1m	+	6b	p----->	{D'N'} <sub>n</sub>
5	1n	+	6b	p----->	{E'J'} <sub>n</sub>
	1o	+	6b	p----->	{E'K'} <sub>n</sub>
	1p	+	6b	p----->	{E'L'} <sub>n</sub>

---

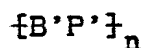
\*Note: Oxygen always in 3,3'-positions on D'

10 \*\*Note: Oxygens always in 4,4'-positions on D'

#### EXAMPLE 44

The procedure of Example 27 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomer 3a, 123.074g (0.64042 mol) of monomer 9a is dissolved in an "initial" solution of 423.1g of PPA having a P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 125.0g of 85.4% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> with 298.1g of 115% PPA). When dissolution is substantially complete, an additional 223.0g of P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> is gradually added to the mixture and dissolved by stirring and heating

essentially according to Example 27. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 85.1% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 13%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 10 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

#### EXAMPLE 45

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 86.502g (0.30457 mol) of monomer 1c is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 478.4g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 141.3g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 337.0g of 115% PPA).



When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 79.864g (0.30457 mol) of monomer 7a is added followed by the gradual addition of 233.0g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 84.7% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 12%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 10 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

Analogous to the foregoing Example 45, other Type VII extended chain polymers may be synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline compositions having

varying proportions of polymer concentration,  
 $P_2O_5$  content and polymer intrinsic viscosity in  
 accordance with the present invention.

The synthesis is illustrated by the reaction  
 5 systems in Tables 26 and 27. The e----->  
 denotes especially preferred selected monomer  
 reactions.

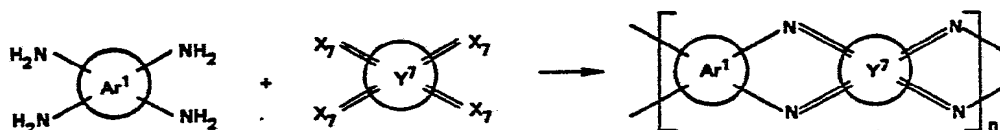
TABLE 26

10

## Polymers of Type VII, Class 1

Polymerization Reactions:

15



20

Monomer (1,1)+Monomer (7,1) -----> Polymer VII(1)

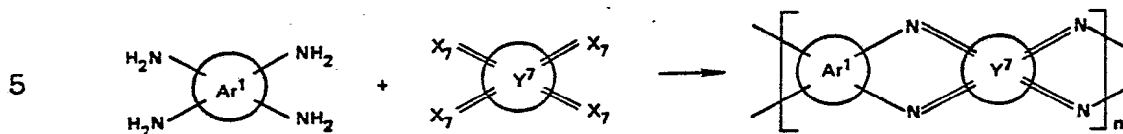


TABLE 27

---

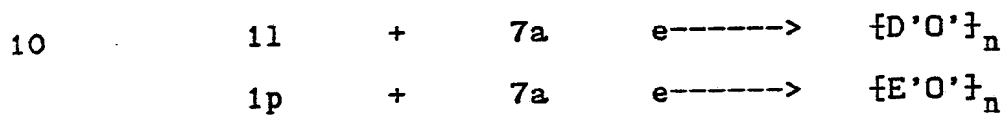
 Polymers of Type VII, Class 2

Polymerization Reactions:



Monomer (1,2)+Monomer (7,1) -----> Polymer VII(2)

---

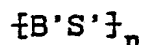


## EXAMPLE 46

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 102.35g (0.48036 mol) of monomer 1b is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 329.2g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 97.3g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 231.9g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 67.296g (0.48036 mol) of monomer 8a is added followed by the gradual addition of 250.5g of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction



5 mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
approximately 87.1% prior to the start of  
polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial  
complete polymerization. The reaction product  
obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further  
characterized as having a polymer concentration  
of 14%; fibers are readily formed by direct  
spinning, or drawing from the reaction product.  
10 The polymer obtained is of the following  
structure:



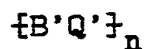
characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7 dL/g  
in MSA at 30°C.

15

## EXAMPLE 47

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially  
repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 137.73g  
(0.48494 mol) of monomer 1c is dehydrochlorinated  
in an "initial" solution of 370.8g of PPA having  
20 a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing  
109.6g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 261.3g of 115% PPA).  
When dehydrochlorination is substantially  
complete, 67.939g (0.48494 mol) of monomer 8a is  
added followed by the gradual addition of 263.5g  
25 of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated

according to a schedule similar to Example 8.  
The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as  
determined in accord with the aforementioned  
formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction  
5 mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
approximately 88.7% prior to the start of  
polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of  
approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial  
complete polymerization. The reaction product  
10 obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further  
characterized as having a polymer concentration  
of 13%; fibers are readily formed by direct  
spinning, or drawing from the reaction product.  
The polymer obtained is of the following  
15 structure:



characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 7 dL/g  
in MSA at 30°C.

Analogous to the foregoing Examples 46 and 47,  
20 other Type VIII extended chain polymers may be  
synthesized to yield liquid-crystalline  
compositions having varying proportions of  
polymer concentration,  $P_2O_5$  content and polymer  
intrinsic viscosity in accordance with the  
25 present invention.





The synthesis is illustrated by the reaction systems in Table 28. The e-----> and p-----> denote especially preferred and preferred selected monomer reactions respectively.

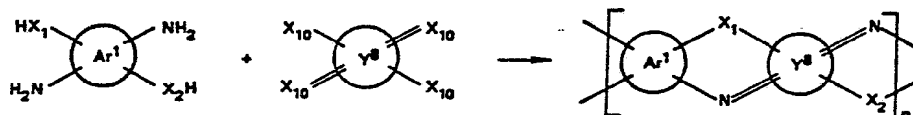
5

TABLE 28

## Polymers of Type VIII, Class 1

## Polymerization Reactions:

10



Monomer (1,1)+Monomer (8,1) -----> Polymer VIII(1)

15

1a	+	8a	p----->	{B'R'} <sub>n</sub>
1d	+	8a	p----->	{B'S'} <sub>n</sub>
1e	+	8a	e----->	{C'Q'} <sub>n</sub>
1f	+	8a	e----->	{C'S'} <sub>n</sub>
1g	+	8a	p----->	{C'R'} <sub>n</sub>
1h	+	8a	p----->	{B'U'} <sub>n</sub>

## EXAMPLE 48

The procedure of Example 8 is essentially repeated. Instead of monomers 1a and 2a, 140.33 (0.35423 mol) of monomer 11 is dehydrochlorinated in an "initial" solution of 313.01g of PPA having a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.3% (prepared by mixing 92.5g of 85.4%  $H_3PO_4$  with 220.5g of 115% PPA). When dehydrochlorination is substantially complete, 49.627g (0.35423 mol) of monomer 8a is added followed by the gradual addition of 263.0 of  $P_2O_5$ . The mixture is then stirred and heated according to a schedule similar to Example 8. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added is preselected (as determined in accord with the aforementioned formulae a\* and b\*) to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 85.8% prior to the start of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 82.2% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The reaction product obtained exhibits stir-opalescence and is further characterized as having a polymer concentration of 14%; fibers are readily formed by direct spinning, or drawing from the reaction product. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:

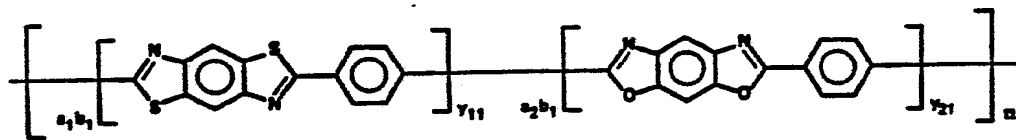
$$\{D'Q'\}_n$$


characterized by an intrinsic viscosity of 8 dL/g in MSA at 30°C.

## EXAMPLE 49

5 A mixture of 123.38g of 115% PPA and 52.63g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.7%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ) was stirred at 100°C for 2h under reduced pressure. After allowing the solution to cool to 50°C under a flow of argon, a portion (168.18g) of the PPA (77.3%  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ ) was added under a flow of  
10 argon to a resin kettle containing 57.61082g (0.23496 mol,  $a_1=0.95$ ) of 1a that had been prepared as described in Example 8 and 2.6358g (0.012371 mol,  $a_2=0.05$ ) of 1b that had been prepared by the method of Wolfe and Arnold,  
15 Macromolecules, Vol. 14, 909 (1981) and recrystallized from hydrochloric acid containing 3 wt% of stannous chloride. The mixture was then stirred at 50°C for 33h under reduced pressure and 90°C for 4h under reduced pressure. Monomer  
20 2a (41.0899g, 0.24733 mol=m,  $b_1=1$ ) was then added. The mixture was cooled to approximately 40°C and 139.18g of  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  was added to increase the effective  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  content before polymerization to 87.6%. The mixture was then stirred at the  
25 specified temperatures for the specified times under a flow of argon: 100°C for 24h; 150°C for

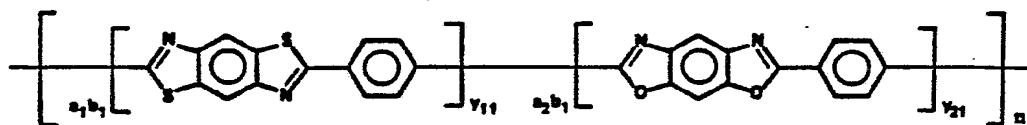
1h; 160°C for 1h; 170°C for 5.5h; and 200°C for 64h. The final concentration of the resulting random copolymer was 16.8% in a PPA with an approximate  $P_2O_5$  content of 82.5%. Fibers of the copolymer were isolated by drawing the resulting green, opalescent product and precipitating into water. The intrinsic viscosity of the copolymer isolated after heating at 200°C for 1.5h was shown to be 25.4 dL/g and actually decreased to 24.4 dL/g after completing the above heating schedule. The copolymer obtained apparently is of the following structure:



where the mole fraction of AI units ( $a_1b_1$ ) is believed to be 0.95, the mole fraction of BI units ( $a_2b_1$ ) is believed to be 0.05, the average block lengths  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{21}$  are believed to be 20 and 1, respectively, and the average total number of recurring units of both types ( $n$ ) is believed to be approximately 100.

## EXAMPLE 50

To a deaerated mixture of 16.09147g. (0.0656275 mol,  $a_1=0.75$ ) of 1a and 4.66149g (0.0218778 mol,  $a_2=0.25$ ) of 1b was added 220g of freshly prepared and deaerated PPA (The PPA was prepared from 173.81g of 86.8% orthophosphoric acid and 267.64g of phosphorus pentoxide, equilibrated, and deaerated). The mixture was stirred under an argon flow at: room temperature overnight; 50°C for 3.5h; and 72°C for 21h. The mixture was stirred under reduced pressure at 72°C overnight to substantially complete dehydrochlorination. Terephthalic acid (2a) (14.53762g, 0.0875059 mol) was added to the solution and the mixture was deaerated before stirring was initiated. The PPA prepared above was then added to this mixture to give a total of 394.5g of PPA. The slurry was then stirred under reduced pressure for 0.5h at 110°C and under an argon atmosphere at: 120°C for 1h; 130°C for 0.5h; 140°C for 0.5h; 150°C for 0.5h; 160°C for 1.0h; 170°C for 15.5h; 185°C for 6.5h; and 200°C for 19h. The optically anisotropic product contained 5.3 wt% polymer in PPA (84.0%  $P_2O_5$  content). Precipitation of a small amount of the polymeric product provided the random copolymer, believed to have the structure:



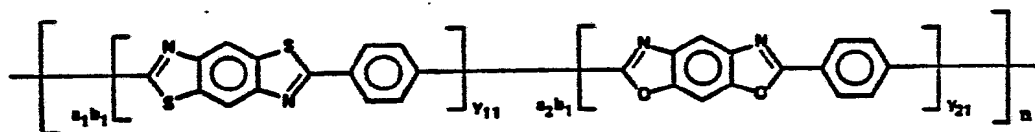
where  $a_1 b_1 = 0.75$ ,  $y_{11} = 4$ ,  $a_2 b_1 = 0.25$ , and  $y_{21} = 1.33$ , with an intrinsic viscosity of 26.59 dL/g in MSA at 30°C, which corresponds to an  $n$  value of approximately 110.

5

## EXAMPLE 51

To a deaerated mixture of 22.36319g (0.0912061 mol,  $a_1=0.9$ ) of 1a and 2.15918g (0.0101340 mol,  $a_2=0.10$ ) of 1b was added approximately 230g of freshly prepared deaerated PPA. (The PPA was prepared by stirring a mixture of 135.97g of 85.4% orthophosphoric acid and 207.36g of phosphorus pentoxide at 150°C overnight under an argon atmosphere, followed by deaeration by stirring under reduced pressure at 150°C for 5.5h. The solution was allowed to cool to room temperature under argon before use). The mixture was stirred under an argon flow at: room temperature overnight; 50°C for 3h; and at 70°C overnight. The solution was then stirred under reduced pressure for 2.5h at 70°C. Terephthalic acid (2a) (16.83595g, 0.101340 mol); was added to the solution and, after placing the kettle under reduced pressure, stirring was initiated. The remaining above-mentioned PPA was then added to the mixture (total PPA added = 317.6g) under an argon atmosphere. The polymerization mixture was then stirred under an argon atmosphere at 110°C for 30 min; 120°C for 30 min; 130°C for 30 min; 140°C for 30 min; 150°C for 30 min; 160°C for 30 min; and 170°C for 14.5h. The polymerization mixture was heated under an argon atmosphere

without stirring at 185°C for 5h and at 193-200°C for 28h. The final polymer concentration was 7.6 wt% in PPA (83.0% P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>). Precipitation of a small amount of the anisotropic polymer product provided the random copolymer of Type IX, Class 1 with the structure:



where  $a_1b_1 = 0.9$ ,  $a_2b_1 = 0.10$ , and the average block lengths  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{21}$  are believed to be 10 and 1.11, respectively. The isolated copolymer possessed an intrinsic viscosity of 26.36 dL/g in MSA at 30°C, which corresponds to an  $n$  value of approximately 110.

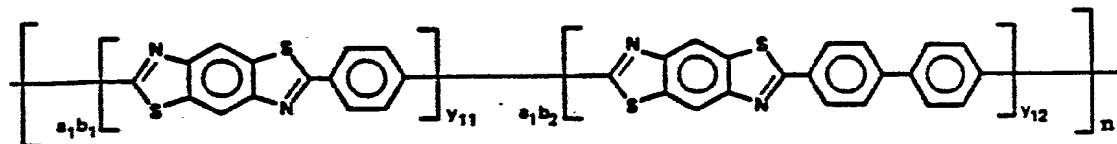


## EXAMPLE 52

A solution of 135.51g of 115% PPA and 59.10g of 85.7%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  was stirred at  $100^\circ\text{C}$  for 2h under reduced pressure. The solution was allowed to cool to room temperature under reduced pressure, and 180.16g of the mixture was added to 30.20054g of 1a under an argon atmosphere. After a homogeneous mixture was obtained 28.29941g (58.49995g total, 0.23859 mol total=m,  $a_1=1$ ) of deaerated 1a was added. The mixture was stirred under reduced pressure at:  $50^\circ\text{C}$  for 18.5h;  $70^\circ\text{C}$  for 10 min;  $80^\circ\text{C}$  for 25 min; and  $90^\circ\text{C}$  for 5.5h. Deaerated 2a (35.6892g, 0.21482 mol,  $b_1=0.9$ ) and 5.79905g (0.02394 mol,  $b_2=0.10$ ) of deaerated 4,4'-biphenyldicarboxylic acid (2aa) were added under an inert atmosphere. After the monomers were incorporated into the mixture, the reaction mixture was cooled to  $40^\circ\text{C}$  and 136.11g of deaerated  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  was added to give an effective  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  content before polymerization of 87.01%. After stirring at  $100^\circ\text{C}$  for 63h, the polymerization was stirred at:  $160^\circ\text{C}$  for 2.5h;  $170^\circ\text{C}$  for 5.5h, and  $200^\circ\text{C}$  for 64h. The concentration of the resulting copolymer was 15.9% in PPA with a  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  content of approximately 82.5%. The reaction product was stir-opalescent and was drawn into oriented fibers. The

300

copolymer possessed an intrinsic viscosity of 7.9 dL/g in MSA at 30°C. The structure of the resulting polymer is believed to be:

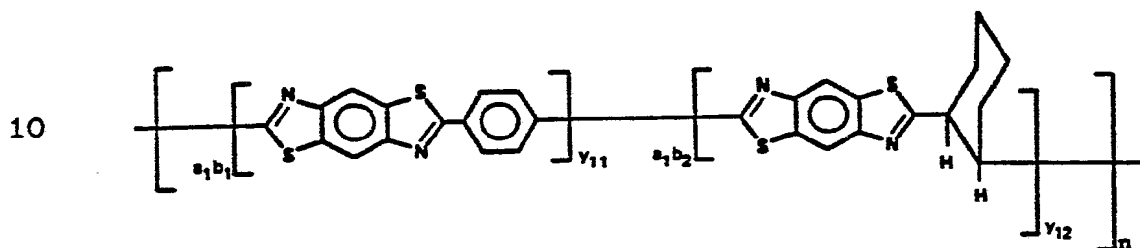


5 where  $a_1 b_1$  is 0.9,  $a_1 b_2$  is 0.1,  $y_{11}$  is 10,  $y_{12}$  is 1.1, and  $n$  is approximately 40.

## EXAMPLE 53

A mixture of 20.10g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.7%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ) and 48.74g of 115% PPA was stirred at  $100^\circ\text{C}$  for 2h under reduced pressure in a 100 mL 3-necked flask. After allowing this PPA solution, having a  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  content of 77.3%, to cool to  $50^\circ\text{C}$  under reduced pressure, a portion (62.45g) was added under a flow of argon to a 200 mL resin kettle containing 20.2783g (0.082703 mol= $m$ ,  $a_1=1$ ) of 1a that had been prepared and deaerated as described in Example 7. The mixture was then stirred at the specified temperatures for the specified times under either reduced pressure (vac) or argon flow (Ar):  $50^\circ\text{C}$ , 4h, vac;  $50^\circ\text{C}$ , 15h, Ar;  $60^\circ\text{C}$ , 3h, vac;  $80^\circ\text{C}$ , 1h, vac;  $90^\circ\text{C}$ , 3h, vac;  $60^\circ\text{C}$ , 15h, Ar;  $80^\circ\text{C}$ , 7h, vac. Trans-1,2-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid (2gg) (0.6781g, 0.004132 mol,  $b_2=0.05$ ) that was obtained from Aldrich Chemical Company and was recrystallized from methanol before use was added to the kettle and then terephthalic acid (2a) (13.05455g, 0.078579 mol,  $b_1=0.95$ ) was added. Powdered  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  (45.00g) was then added to the mixture that had been cooled to  $50^\circ\text{C}$  to increase the effective  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  content before polymerization to 86.8%. The mixture was then stirred for 17h at  $100^\circ\text{C}$  under an argon flow.

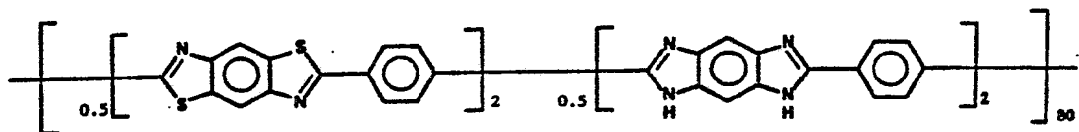
The yellow mixture was then heated with stirring under argon as follows: 120°C for 1h; 130-140°C for 1h; 150°C for 2h; 160°C for 0.5h; 170°C for 4h (stir-opalescence was apparent during this time); 185°C for 15.5h; and 200°C for 75h. The final concentration of the resulting random copolymer was 16.4% in PPA, with a P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> content of approximately of 82.2%. The polymer obtained apparently is of the following structure:



characterized as having an intrinsic viscosity in methanesulfonic acid at 30°C of 10.0 dL/g, which corresponds to an average  $n$  value of about 50, a mole fraction of  $\{AI\}_n$  units ( $a_1b_1$ ) of 0.95, and a mole fraction of  $\{AA^*\}_n$  units ( $a_1b_2$ ) of 0.05. The average block lengths,  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$ , are believed to be 20 and 1, respectively.

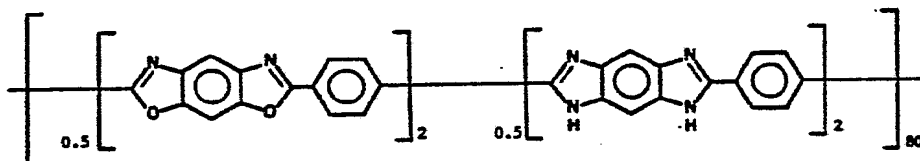
## EXAMPLE 54

The procedure of Example 49 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 95 mol% of monomer 1a, 5 mol% of monomer 1b, and 100 mol% of monomer 2a, a mixture of 50 mol% of monomer 1a and 50 mol% of monomer 1c is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of a stoichiometric amount of monomer 2a and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



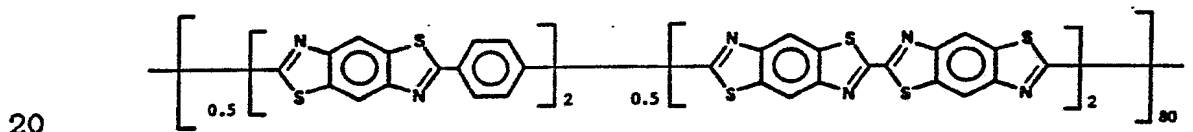
## EXAMPLE 55

The procedure of Example 49 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 95 mol% of monomer 1a, 5 mol% of monomer 1b, and 100 mol% of monomer 2a, a mixture of 50 mol% of monomer 1b and 50 mol% of monomer 1c is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of a stoichiometric amount of monomer 2a and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



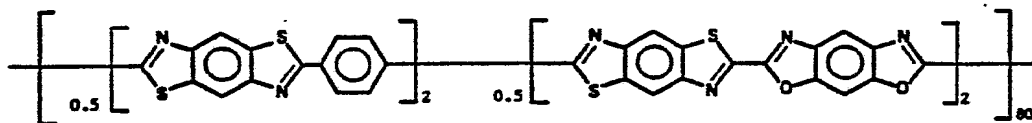
## EXAMPLE 56

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1a is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 50 mol% of monomer 2a and 50 mol% of monomer 2j and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 57

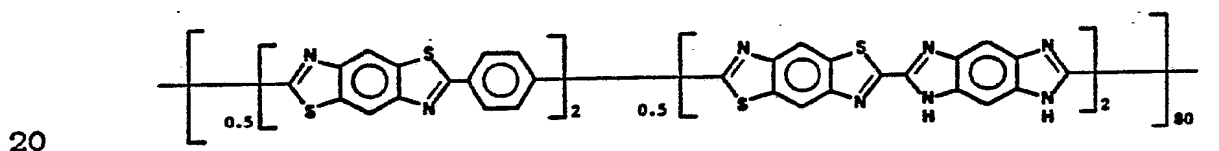
The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1a is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 50 mol% of monomer 2a and 50 mol% of monomer 2k and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:





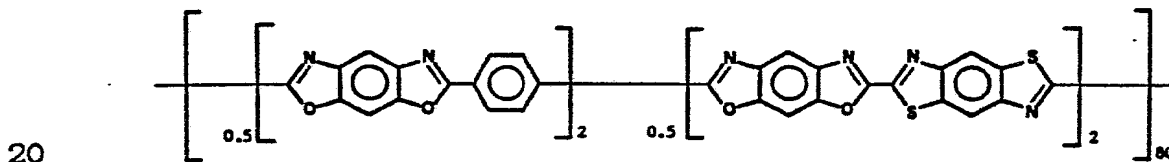
## EXAMPLE 58

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1a is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 50 mol% of monomer 2a and 50 mol% of monomer 2l and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



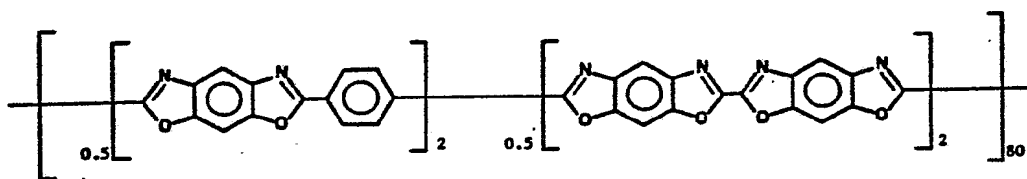
## EXAMPLE 59

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1b is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 50 mol% of monomer 2a and 50 mol% of monomer 2j and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



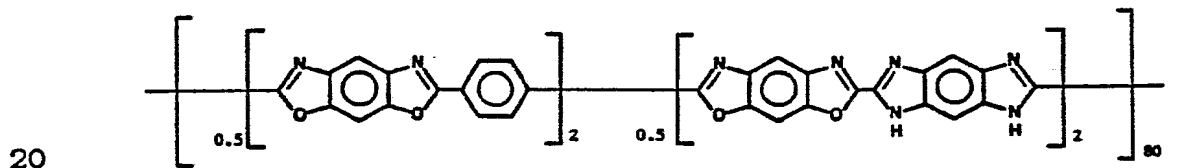
## EXAMPLE 60

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1b is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 50 mol% of monomer 2a and 50 mol% of monomer 2k and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



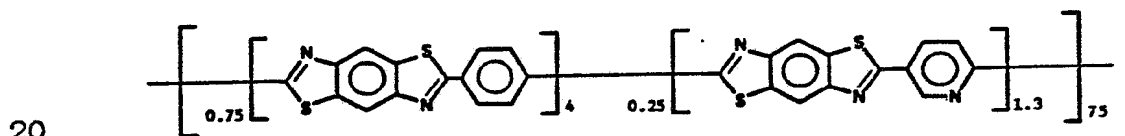
## EXAMPLE 61

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1b is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 50 mol% of monomer 2a and 50 mol% of monomer 2l and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



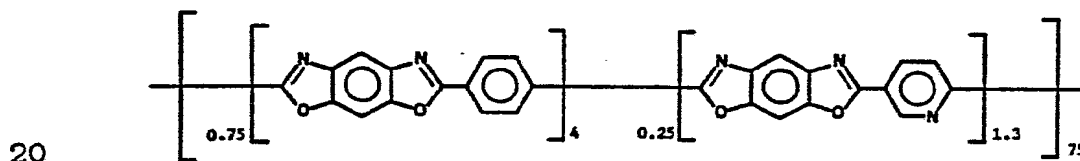
## EXAMPLE 62

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1a is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 75 mol% of monomer 2a and 25 mol% of monomer 2i and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



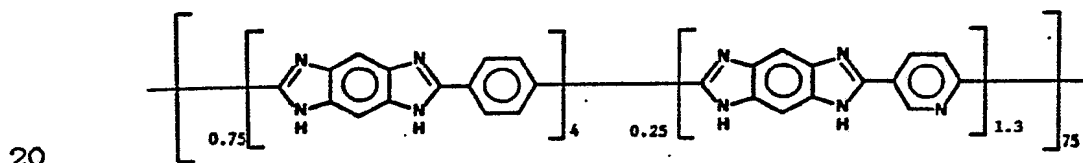
## EXAMPLE 63

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1b is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 75 mol% of monomer 2a and 25 mol% of monomer 2i and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



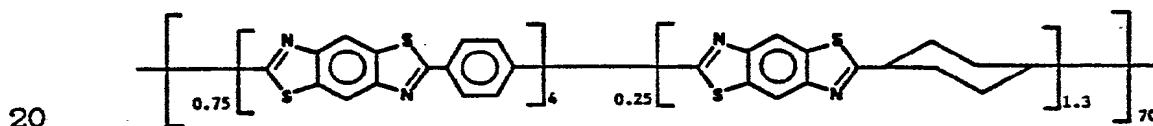
## EXAMPLE 64

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1c is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 75 mol% of monomer 2a and 25 mol% of monomer 2i and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 65

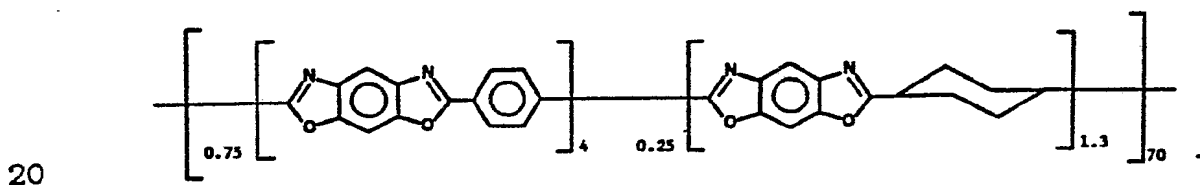
The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1a is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 75 mol% of monomer 2a and 25 mol% of monomer 2e and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:





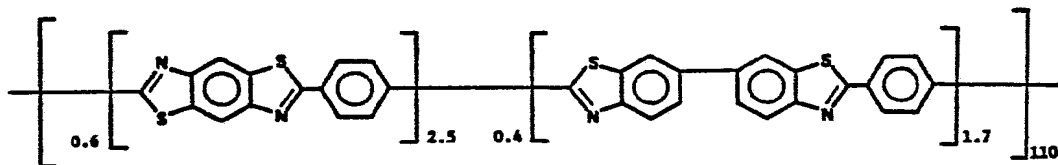
## EXAMPLE 66

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1b is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 75 mol% of monomer 2a and 25 mol% of monomer 2e and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 67

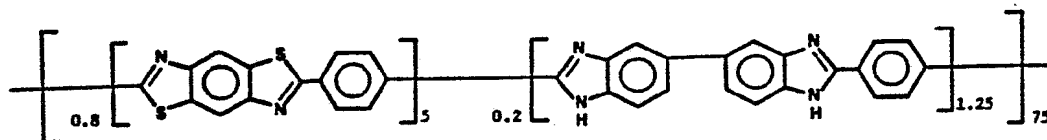
The procedure of Example 49 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 95 mol% of monomer 1a, 5 mol% of monomer 1b, and 100 mol% of monomer 2a, a mixture of 60 mol% of monomer 1a and 40 mol% of monomer 1i is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of a stoichiometric amount of monomer 2a and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 68

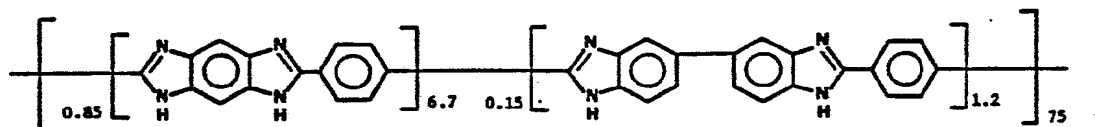
The procedure of Example 49 was essentially repeated. Instead of using 95 mol% of monomer 1a, 5 mol% of monomer 1b, and 100 mol% of monomer 2a, a mixture of 80 mol% of monomer 1a and 20 mol% of monomer 1l was substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of a stoichiometric amount of monomer 2a and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture was then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed was anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibited stir-opalescence) and was formed into ordered fibers by simple drawing. The copolymer obtained is believed to be of the following structure:

20



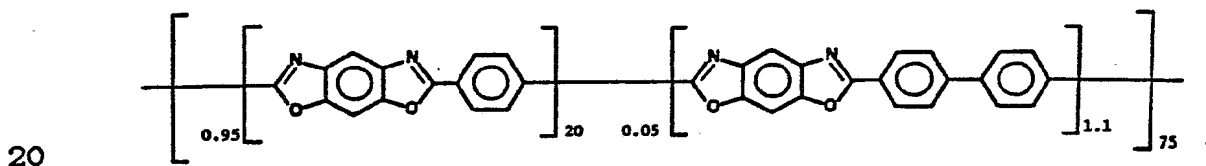
## EXAMPLE 69

The procedure of Example 49 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 95 mol% of monomer 1a, 5 mol% of monomer 1b, and 100 mol% of monomer 2a, a mixture of 85 mol% of monomer 1c and 15 mol% of monomer 1l is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of a stoichiometric amount of monomer 2a and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



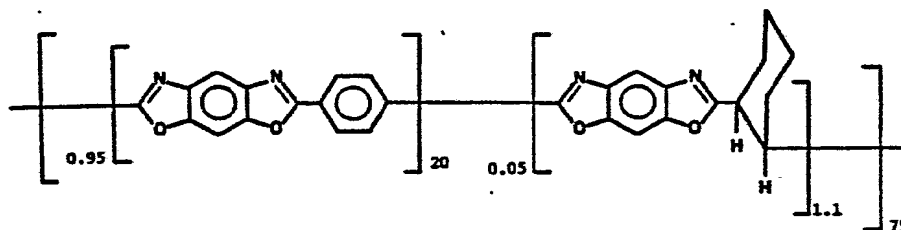
## EXAMPLE 70

The procedure of Example 52 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 90 mol% of monomer 2a, and 10 mol% of monomer 2aa, 100 mol% of monomer 1b is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 95 mol% of monomer 2a and 5 mol% of monomer 2aa and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



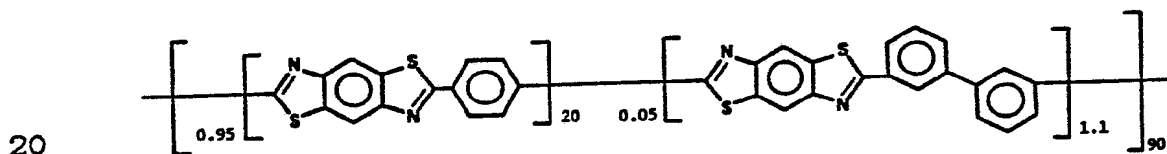
## EXAMPLE 71

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1b is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 95 mol% of monomer 2a and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



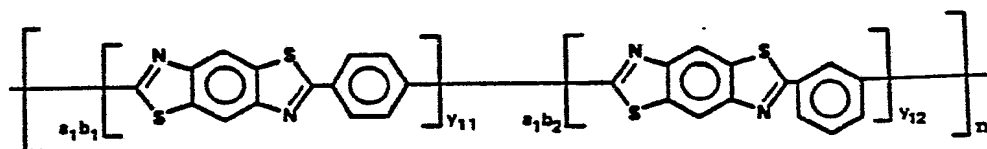
## EXAMPLE 72

The procedure of Example 53 is essentially repeated. Instead of using 100 mol% of monomer 1a, 95 mol% of monomer 2a, and 5 mol% of monomer 2gg, 100 mol% of monomer 1a is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of 95 mol% of monomer 2a and 5 mol% of monomer 2ff and an appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 12 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 73

Two polymerizations (Step A and Step B) were conducted simultaneously in separate resin kettles and combined at a later stage (Step C) to give a product of a block copolymer believed to have the following structure:



where  $a_1b_1$  is 0.793 and  $a_1b_2$  is 0.207 and  $y_{11}$  is greater than about 30.

Step A: Preparation of  $\{Al\}_n$ . A mixture of 92.06g of 115% PPA and 39.45g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.7%  $H_3PO_4$ ) was stirred at  $100^\circ C$  for 2h under reduced pressure. A portion (128.63g) of the hot PPA (77.3%  $P_2O_5$ ) was added under a flow of argon to a resin kettle containing 41.42682g (0.16896 mol) of 1a. The mixture was stirred at  $50^\circ C$  under argon flow for 15h, then under reduced pressure at  $60^\circ C$  for 23.5h,  $70^\circ C$  for 6h, and  $80^\circ C$  for 8.5h to effect dehydrochlorination. Terephthalic acid (2a) (28.0688g, 0.16895 mol) was then added in four



portions. The mixture was cooled to approximately 40°C and 92.22g of P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> was added. The mixture was stirred at the following temperatures for the specified times under a flow of argon: 100°C for 42.5h; 120°C to 160°C in increments of 10°C per 0.5h; 170°C for 2.5h. At this time the mixture became stir-opalescent and a sample of the dope exhibited birefringence under plane-polarized light. After an additional 3h at 170°C the polymer from Step B was added (See Step C). The intrinsic viscosity of Polymer {AI}<sub>n</sub> isolated from the reaction mixture immediately before Step C was 2.3 dL/g which corresponds to an n value (average number of recurring units) of 30 and a p value (extent of reaction) of 0.983.

Step B: Preparation of {AG\*}<sub>n</sub>. A mixture of 30.72g of 115% PPA and 13.13g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.7% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>) was stirred at 100°C for 2h under reduced pressure. The PPA (41.66g; 77.3% P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>) was added without cooling under a flow of argon to a resin kettle containing 13.80877g (0.05632 mol) of 1a. The mixture was stirred at 50°C under argon flow for 15h, then under reduced pressure at 60°C for 23.5h, 70°C for 6h, and 80°C for 35.5h. Isophthalic acid (2ss) (9.3569g, 0.05632 mol)

that had been obtained from Aldrich Chemical Company in 99% purity was twice recrystallized from 90% aqueous ethanol and dried at 110°C for 24h and was then added in two portions

5 incorporating the solid after each addition. The mixture was cooled to approximately 40°C and then 31.59g of  $P_2O_5$  was added. The mixture was then heated simultaneously and at the same heating schedule as the solution in Step A.

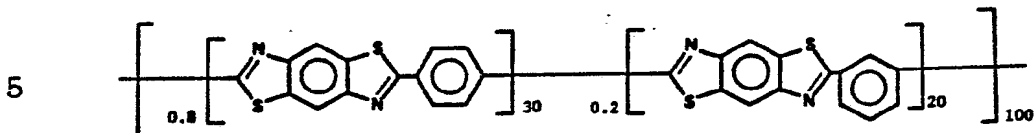
10 Step C: Block Copolymerization. After 5.5h at 170°C, 72g of the viscous, red, optically isotropic product from Step B was added to the kettle from Step A under an argon atmosphere at the time indicated in Step A. Both kettles were

15 heated under an argon flow as follows: 170°C for 12.8h; 190°C for 2h; 200°C for 26h. The resulting mixture remained stir-opalescent and continued to polymerize as indicated by intrinsic viscosities of samples removed at various times.

20 Upon precipitation in  $H_2O$ , the final sample of the resulting copolymer had an intrinsic viscosity of 17.5 dL/g in MSA at 30°C. The final precipitated sample of the portion of the product from Step B that had not been added to the

25 product from Step A (but had been heated according to the same schedule as the mixture) had an intrinsic viscosity of 1.8 dL/g in MSA at

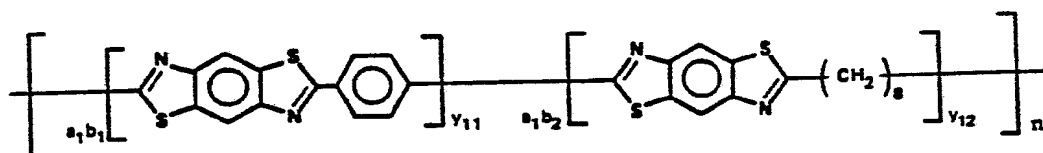
30°C. The weight percent of polymer {AI}<sub>n</sub> in the product from Step A was 18.2; the weight percent of polymer {AG\*}<sub>n</sub> in the product from Step B was 18.3. The weight percent of block copolymer



10 was therefore calculated to be 18.2; the weight percents of the individual {AI}<sub>n</sub> and {AG\*}<sub>n</sub> segments of the block copolymer in the final product were 12.9 and 3.4, respectively, as calculated from the weights of the constituent polymers added and the total weight of the resulting product. The mol percent of mesogenic {AI}<sub>n</sub> and flexible {AG\*}<sub>n</sub> units were 79.3 and 20.7, respectively, as calculated from the weights of the constituent polymers added.

## EXAMPLE 74

Two polymerizations were conducted simultaneously in separate resin kettles (Steps A and B), and combined at a later stage (Step C) to give a block polymer product believed to have the following structure:



where  $a_1b_1$  is 0.587 and  $a_1b_2$  is 0.413 and  $Y_{11}$  is greater than about 40.

Step A: Preparation of  $\{Al\}_n$ . A mixture of 36.73g of 115% PPA and 24.43g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.0%  $H_3PO_4$ ) was stirred at  $100^\circ C$  for 4.5h under reduced pressure. A portion (58.69%) of the hot PPA (74.9%  $P_2O_5$ ) was added under a flow of argon to a resin kettle containing 20.71434g (0.08448 mol) of 1a. The mixture was stirred under reduced pressure at  $50^\circ C$  for 1h,  $70^\circ C$  for 1.3h, and  $80^\circ C$  for 23h. To dissolve monomer, 6.02g of  $P_2O_5$  was added, and the kettle was heated at  $80^\circ C$  for an additional 26h. Terephthalic acid (2a) (14.0351g, 0.08448

mol) was then added in three portions. The acid monomer was incorporated by stirring after each addition. The kettle was cooled to 50°C and an additional 46.24g deaerated  $P_2O_5$  was added. The mixture was stirred under argon flow at the following temperatures for the specified times: 100°C for 18h; 150°C for 2h; 170°C for 5h. (After 1h at 170°C the mixture exhibited stir-opalescence). At this time the polymer from Step B was added. (See Step C).

Step B: Preparation of  $\{AN^*\}_n$  A mixture of 63.88g of 115% PPA and 42.51g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.0%  $H_3PO_4$ ) was stirred at 100°C for 4.5h under reduced pressure. A portion (104.41g) of the PPA (74.9%  $P_2O_5$ ) was added without cooling under a flow of argon to a resin kettle containing 20.26865g (0.08266 mol) of 1a. The mixture was stirred under reduced pressure at 50°C for 0.8h, 60°C for 7.5h, and 80°C for 9.5h. Sebacic acid, (monomer 2zz, purified by crystallization of the disodium salt, then repeated recrystallization of the free acid in  $H_2O$  and dried in vacuo at 80°C for 24h) (16.7190g, 0.08266 mol), was then added in three portions to the resin kettle, incorporating after each addition. The mixture was cooled to 50°C and 70.91g of  $P_2O_5$  was added slowly. The

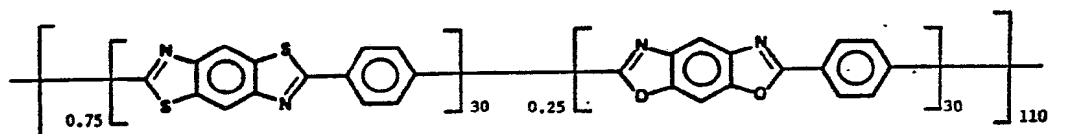
polymerization proceeded rapidly, and the gel-like solid was heated without stirring at 100°C for 16.5h and at 130°C for 7.8h. At this time the polymer was removed in an inert atmosphere, leaving a portion in the kettle which was reassembled and heated according to the same schedule as the block copolymer.

Step C: Block Copolymerization. A portion of the polymer from Step B (153.13g) was added under an argon atmosphere to the kettle from Step A. The mixture was then stirred under argon flow at 170°C for 16h and at 200°C for 28h. The mixture remained stir-opalescent and continued to polymerize as shown by an increase in the bulk viscosity. The weight percent of polymer  $\{AI\}_n$  in the product from Step A was 16.1; the weight percent of polymer  $\{AN^*\}_n$  in the product from Step B was 12.1. The weight percent of block copolymer was calculated to be 12.1; the weight percents of  $\{AI\}_n$  and  $\{AN^*\}_n$  segments of the block copolymer in solution were 8.8 and 5.6 respectively. The mole percent of mesogenic  $\{AI\}_n$  and  $\{AN^*\}_n$  units were 58.7 and 41.3 respectively, as calculated from the weights of the constituent polymers added. The resulting polymer isolated was not completely soluble in methane sulfonic acid thus precluding intrinsic

viscosity measurements.

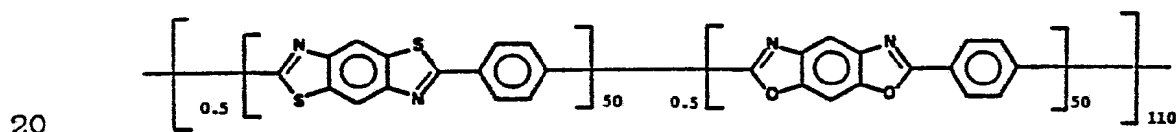
# EXAMPLE 75

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of  
 5 polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and  
 10 13 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 3:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The  
 15 product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following  
 20 structure:



## EXAMPLE 76

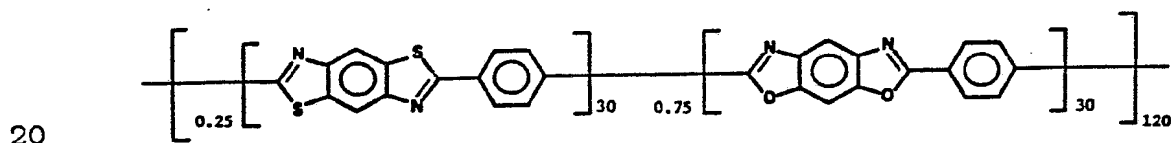
The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 13 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:





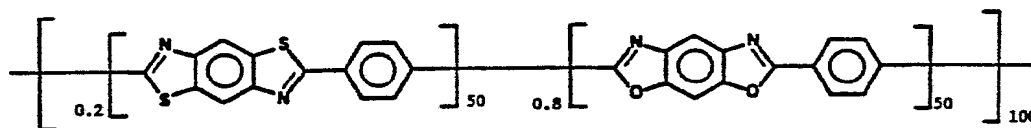
## EXAMPLE 77

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 13 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:3. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



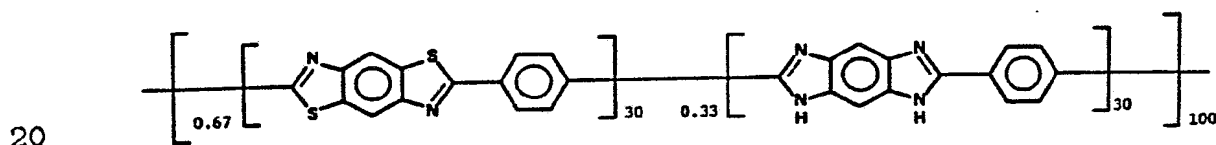
## EXAMPLE 78

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 13 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:4. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



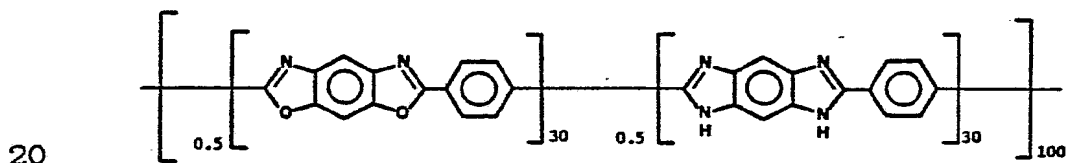
## EXAMPLE 79

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 28 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



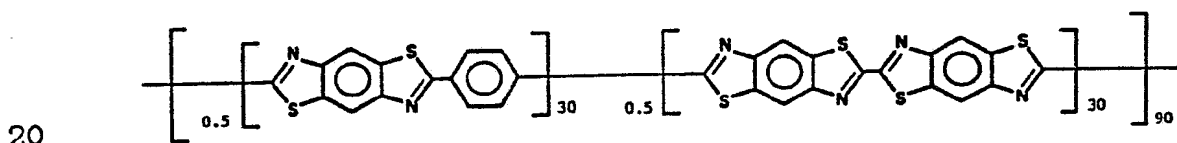
## EXAMPLE 80

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 13 and 28 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



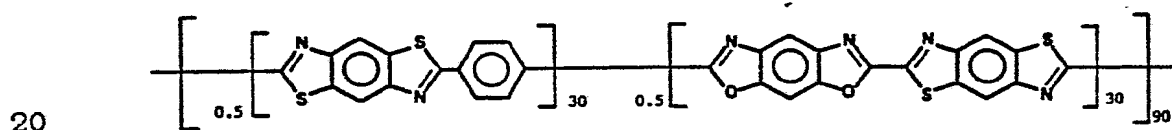
### EXAMPLE 81

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 16 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



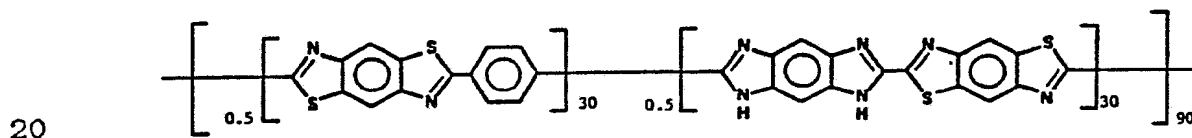
## EXAMPLE 82

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 17 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



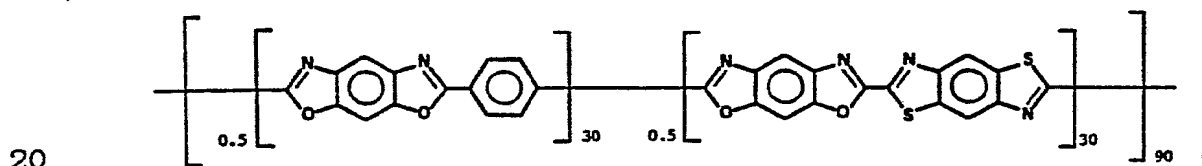
## EXAMPLE 83

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 18 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 84

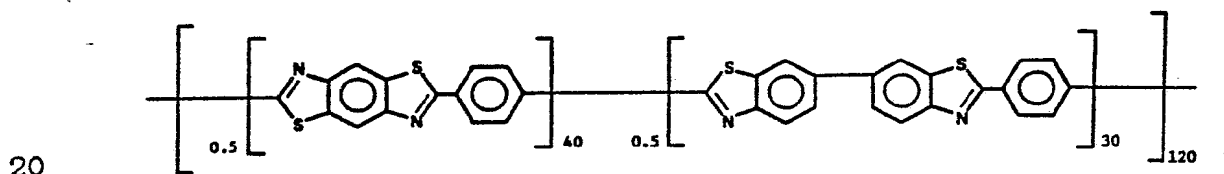
The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 13 and 17 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:





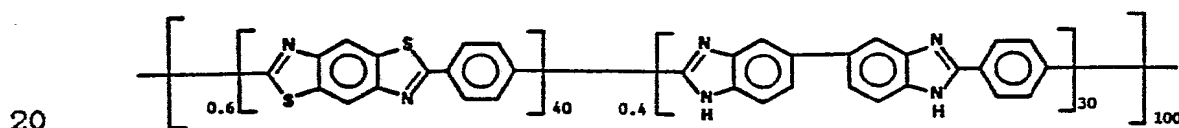
### EXAMPLE 85

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 19 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



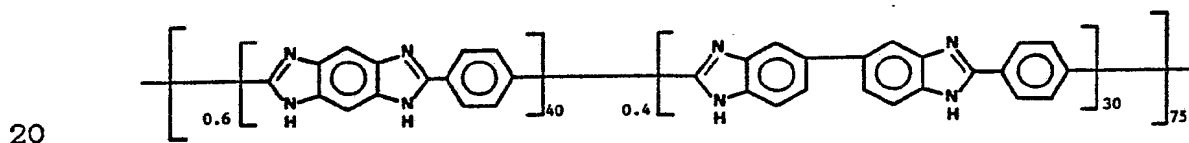
## EXAMPLE 86

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 22 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



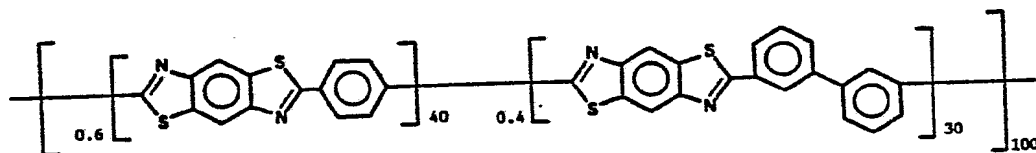
## EXAMPLE 87

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 28 and 22 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



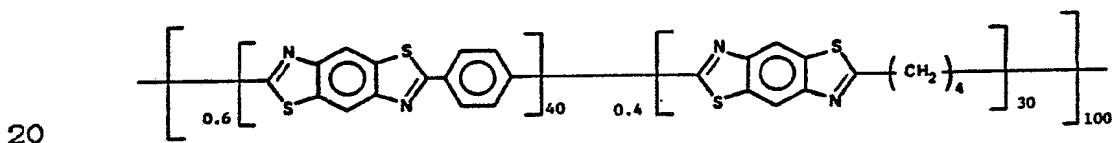
## EXAMPLE 88

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomers 1a and 2ss in Step B, equimolar quantities of monomers 1a and 2ff are polymerized at a comparable concentration and to a comparable extent of reaction. The (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) from Steps A and B are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



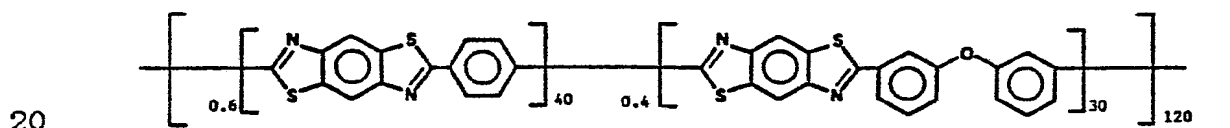
## EXAMPLE 89

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomers 1a and 2ss in Step B, equimolar quantities of monomers 1a and 2xx are polymerized at a comparable concentration and to a comparable extent of reaction. The (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) from Steps A and B are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



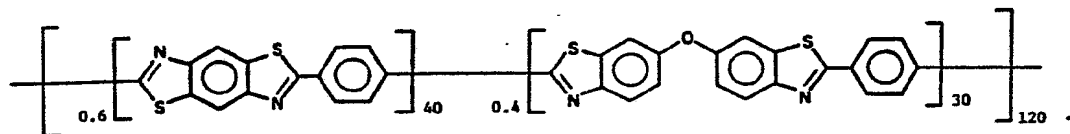
## EXAMPLE 90

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomers 1a and 2ss in Step B, equimolar quantities of monomers 1a and 2uu are polymerized at a comparable concentration and to a comparable extent of reaction. The (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) from Steps A and B are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



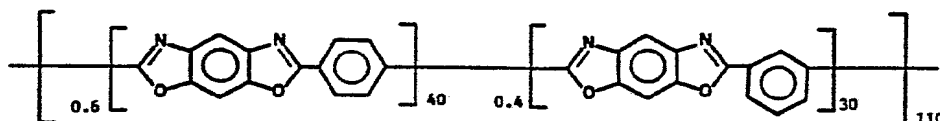
## EXAMPLE 91

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomers 1a and 2ss in Step B, equimolar quantities of monomers 1q and 2a are polymerized at a comparable concentration and to a comparable extent of reaction. The (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) from Steps A and B are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 92

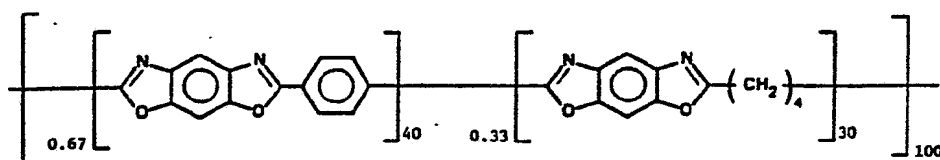
The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomer 1a in Step A, an equimolar quantity of 1b is used. Instead of using monomers 1a and 2ss in Step B, equimolar quantities of monomers 1b and 2ss are polymerized at a comparable concentration and to a comparable extent of reaction. The (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) from Steps A and B are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:





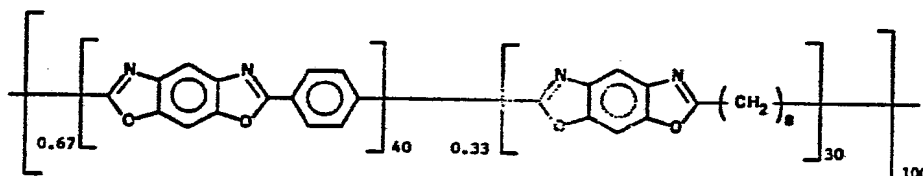
## EXAMPLE 93

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomer 1a in Step A, an equimolar quantity of 1b is used. Instead of using monomers 1a and 2ss in Step B, equimolar quantities of monomers 1b and 2xx are polymerized at a comparable concentration and to a comparable extent of reaction. The (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) from Steps A and B are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



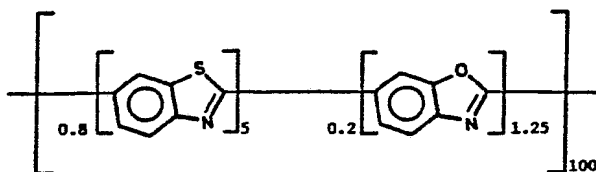
## EXAMPLE 94

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomer 1a in Step A, an equimolar quantity of 1b is used. Instead of using monomers 1a and 2ss in Step B, equimolar quantities of monomers 1b and 2zz are polymerized at a comparable concentration and to a comparable extent of reaction. The (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) from Steps A and B are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



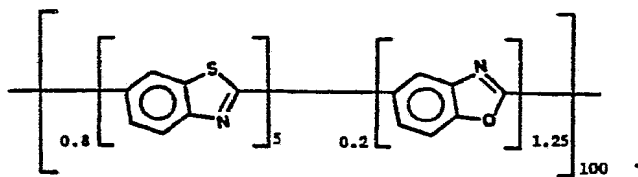
## EXAMPLE 95

The procedure of Example 27 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomer 3a, a mixture of 80 mol% of monomer 3a and 20 mol% of monomer 3c is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 27 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



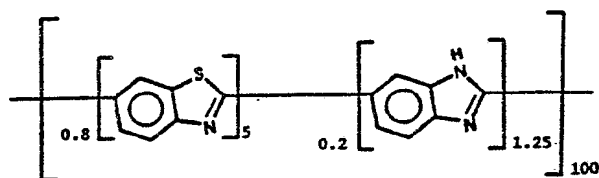
## EXAMPLE 98

The procedure of Example 27 is essentially repeated. Instead of using monomer 3a, a mixture of 80 mol% of monomer 3a and 20 mol% of monomer 3d is substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture is then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 27 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is of the following structure:



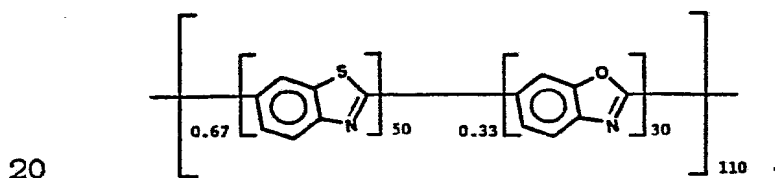
## EXAMPLE 97

The procedure of Example 27 was essentially repeated. Instead of using monomer 3a, a mixture of 80 mol% of monomer 3a and 20 mol% of monomer 3e was substantially dehydrochlorinated in a comparable weight percent of PPA with essentially similar  $P_2O_5$  content. After the addition of appropriate amount of  $P_2O_5$  (thereby raising the final  $P_2O_5$  content to substantially above about 82%), the resultant mixture was then heated in essentially the same manner in accordance with Example 27 to provide a copolymerization product. The product so formed was anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence), highly drawable, and could be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning, or drawing. The copolymer obtained is believed to be of the following structure:



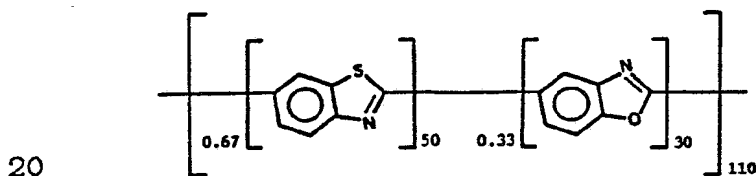
## EXAMPLE 98

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 27 and 29 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 99

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 27 and 30 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 100

3,4-diaminobenzoic acid (3e) (Aldrich, 97%) was recrystallized from hot warer with 3-4g of carbon black and 0.5g of sodium dithionite added for every 30g of 3e. The recovered light orange crystals were dried at room temperature under reduced pressure for 24h. An acid mixture prepared from 183.4g of 115% PPA and 78.6g of 85.7%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  (J.T. Baker Analyzed Reagent) was deaerated by heating in a 3-necked flask at 100°C for 2h under reduced pressure and then at 50°C under reduced pressure for 17h. To a 500 mL resin kettle was added 20.24g of 3e. The kettle was then deaerated by applying reduced pressure and then filling with nitrogen three times. 51.11g of the above-mentioned PPA was added to the kettle and the contents stirred until well mixed. 38.77g of  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  (J.T. Baker Analyzed Reagent, 99.1%) was added. The temperature of the kettle was raised to 100°C and the  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  incorporated into the mixture. The following heating schedule was used with color changes as noted: 100°C for 20 min; 110°C for 20 min; 120°C for 20 min; 130°C for 20 min; color changed from tan to green; 140°C for 20 min; the green color became darker. Reduced pressure was briefly applied which caused considerable foaming; 105°C

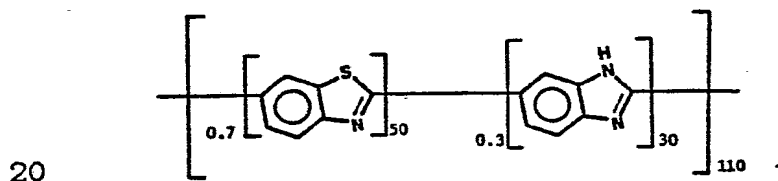




for 20 min; 160°C for 20 min. A sample was removed and precipitated in water to give a red polymeric substance with an intrinsic viscosity in MSA at 30.0°C of 4.25 dL/g. Heating at 160°C was continued for another 30h. The intrinsic viscosity in MSA at 30°C of polymer component of a sample removed at this time was measured to be 4.5 dL/g. The reaction was heated at 175°C an additional 35h. The resultant red-brown polymeric material isolated from this solution had an intrinsic viscosity of 4.5 dL/g in methanesulfonic acid at 30.0°C. Final reaction product contained 16.8% of polymer  $[\eta]_n$  in PPA. Initial  $P_2O_5$  content was 77.3%, final  $P_2O_5$  content was 82.2%.

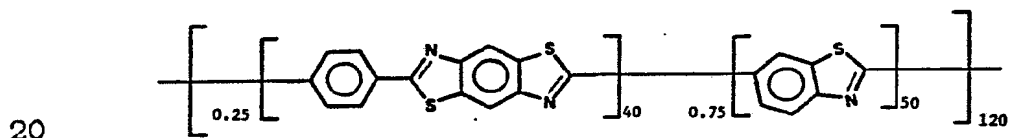
## EXAMPLE 101

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 27 and 100 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



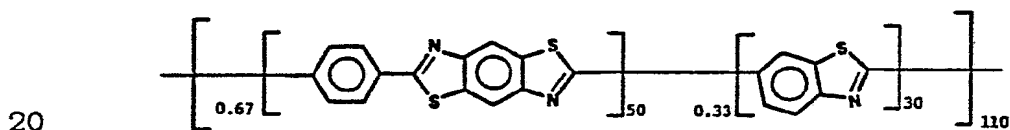
## EXAMPLE 102

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 27 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:3. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



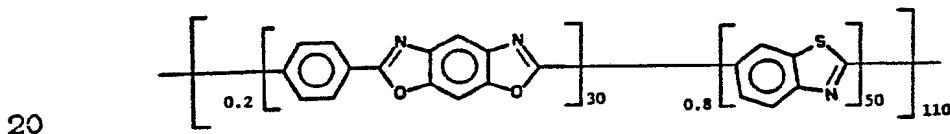
## EXAMPLE 103

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 26 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



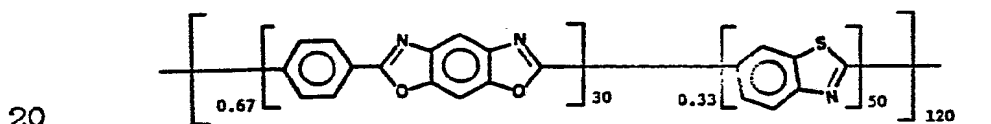
## EXAMPLE 104

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 13 and 27 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:4. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



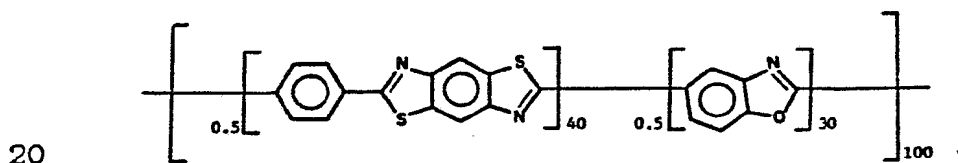
## EXAMPLE 105

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 13 and 26 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



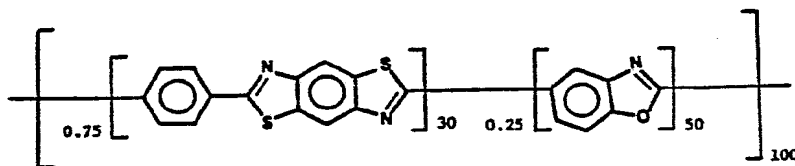
## EXAMPLE 106

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 30 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 107

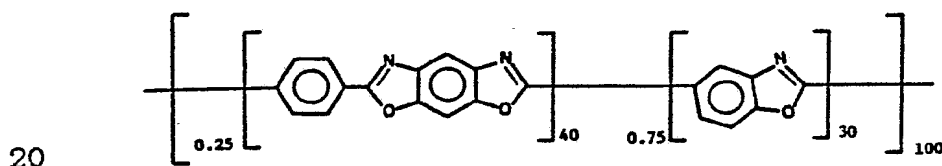
The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 30 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 3:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:





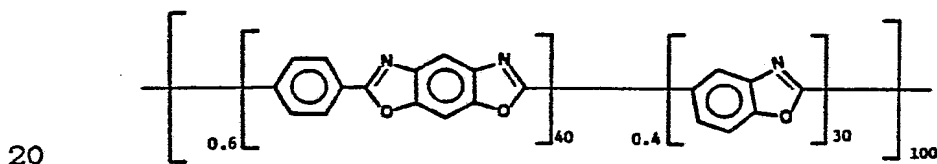
## EXAMPLE 108

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 13 and 30 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:3. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



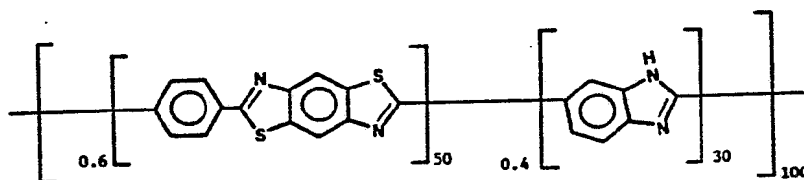
## EXAMPLE 109

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 13 and 30 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



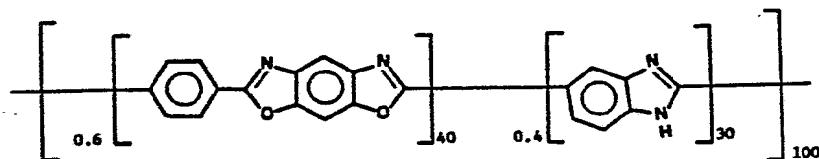
## EXAMPLE 110

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 8 and 100 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



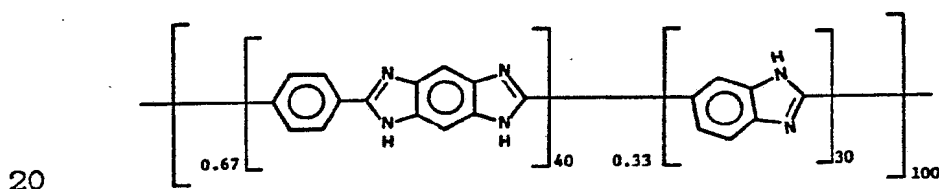
## EXAMPLE 111

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 13 and 100 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1.5:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



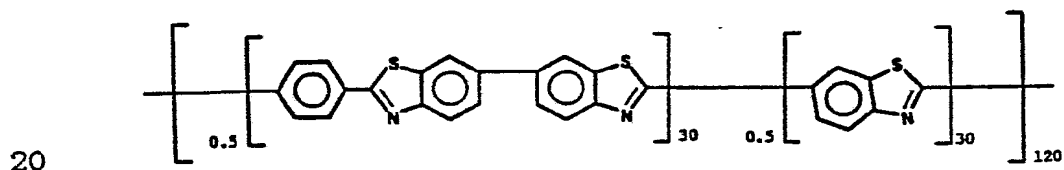
## EXAMPLE 112

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 28 and 100 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 2:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



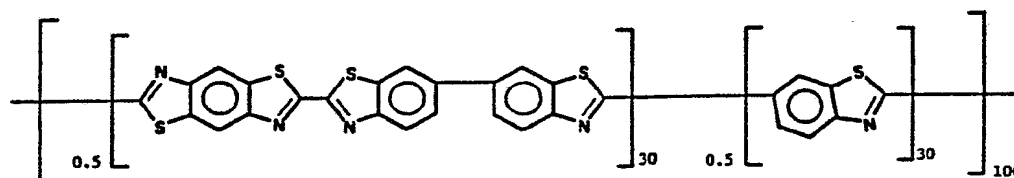
## EXAMPLE 113

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 19 and 27 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



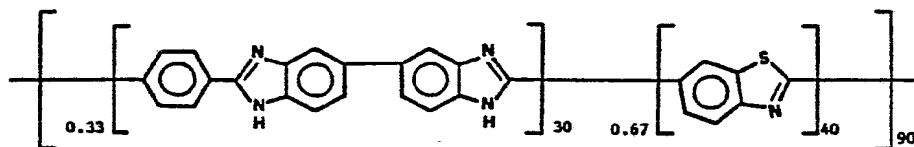
## EXAMPLE 114

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 23 and 27 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:1. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:



## EXAMPLE 115

The procedure of Example 73 is essentially repeated. Subsequent to the start of polymerization and at a preselected range of intrinsic viscosities or after a predetermined selected temperature and rate of reaction, the (partially completed) separate polymerization products (i.e., homo-oligomers) of Examples 22 and 27 are diverted into a common agitated reaction vessel in amounts to give a ratio of 1:2. The polymerization of the resultant mixture is allowed to continue to form a substantially polymerized blockpolymerization product. The product so formed is anisotropic-liquid crystalline (exhibits stir-opalescence) and can be directly utilized for forming into articles by spinning or drawing and the like. The blockpolymer obtained is of the following structure:





## Example 116

A mixture of 42.13 g of PPA (83.8%  $P_2O_5$ ) and 18.06 g of  $H_3PO_4$  (85.9%) was stirred and heated to 100°C in a 100 ml 3-necked flask. The flask was placed under reduced pressure overnight. 21.34 g of 3,4-diaminobenzoic acid $\cdot$ 2HCl was added to a 100 ml resin kettle. The resin kettle was deaerated and flushed with Ar and 42.81 g of the above prepared PPA solvent with a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.32% was then added to the kettle. The flask was heated with an oil bath at 55°C with slow stirring under a water aspirator (reduced pressure) for 0.33 hours. The flask was then placed under vacuum for an additional 45.87 hours. During the initial 5 hours of dehydrochlorination, the temperature was increased from 55°C to 70°C. Near the end of the dehydrochlorination, the mixture changed from a very pale pink to a blue-green color that was almost transparent. 26.56 g of deaerated  $P_2O_5$  was added as a powder under Ar flow. The  $P_2O_5$  was incorporated using a combination of stirring and vacuum at about 70°C. The mixture was allowed to equilibrate at 100°C with stirring under Ar flow for 17.33 hours. The amount of  $P_2O_5$  added was calculated to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 86% prior to the beginning of polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 81.97% subsequent to substantial complete polymerization. The mixture was

372

heated to a final temperature of 200°C following the heating schedule outlined below.

	Temperature (°C)	Time (Hours)	Observations
5	110	0.33	Dark mint green; creamy.
	120	0.67	Less viscous.
	130	0.38	
	140	0.70	More viscous (mixture full of bubbles).
	150	0.63	Darker green; shiny glass-like appearance.
10	160	0.48	Mixture riding on stir blades.
	170	0.55	Unable to stir fast; darker green.
	185	2.43	Mixture more transparent
	200	19.15	

15 The reaction product obtained is optically isotropic characterized as having a polymer concentration of 13.14% and an intrinsic viscosity of 6.57 dL/g in MSA at 30°C. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



## Example 117

The reaction product of Example 13 was placed in a constant displacement spinning apparatus and extruded at about 3.4 MPa (500 psi) through a 0.381 mm (0.015 in.) diameter orifice and passed through a 20.96 cm (8.25 in.) air gap at a selected take up rate to give a spin draw ratio of about 6.12:1. The extrusion temperature was about 63°C. The coagulation medium was water. The average tensile properties of seven single filaments (ASTM D 3379, 2.54 cm (1.0 in.) gage length) were 2.96 GPa ( $4.3 \times 10^5$  psi) tensile strength, 89.6 GPa ( $13 \times 10^6$  psi) modulus, and elongation at break range from 4.2 - 6%. The fiber diameters ranged from 33-37 micrometer (0.00129 to 0.00146 inches). Heat treated filaments (conditioned under tension at 500°C for 60 seconds in a nitrogen atmosphere) gave average values of tensile strength 3.45 GPa ( $5.0 \times 10^5$  psi), modulus 317 GPa ( $46 \times 10^6$  psi), and elongation at break 1.8 - 2.4%. The heat treated fiber diameters ranged from 29.7-33.3 micrometer (0.00117 to 0.00133 inches).

## Example 118

The procedure of Example 13 was essentially repeated using 21.0018 g (0.09857 mol) of 1b and 16.3768g (0.09858 mol) of 2a. The  $P_2O_5$  content during



374

dehydrochlorination was 75.16% for 8 hours and was increased to 81.37% by the addition of deaerated  $P_2O_5$  for an additional 24 hours. The concentration of monomer 1b during dehydrochlorination was initially 21.94%. After the addition of 2a,  $P_2O_5$  was added so as to raise the  $P_2O_5$  to 87.5% before polymerization and to give a  $P_2O_5$  content after substantial polymerization of 83.17%. The mixture was then heated at 185°C for 28 hours. The concentration of polymer  $\{BI\}_n$  was 13.8 weight percent. The isolated polymer  $\{BI\}_n$  had intrinsic viscosity of 24.4 dL/g.

## Example 119

The reaction product from Example 118 was dry-jet-wet spun as in Example 117 except that the extrusion temperature was 70°C, the jet diameter was 0.254 mm (0.010 in.), the air gap was 20.3 cm (8 in.) and the required extrusion pressure was 1.17 MPa (170 psi). The average tensile strength of nine single filaments was 3.12 GPa (453,000 psi) which ranged from about 2.82 to about 3.35 GPa (410,000 to 486,000 psi). The average tensile modulus was 303 GPa ( $43.9 \times 10^6$  psi). After treating this fiber at 450°C in air for 30 seconds with a 2% stretch the strength was unchanged and the modulus had increased to an average of 410 GPa ( $59.5 \times 10^6$  psi). Repeating these conditions with a 2.8% stretch gave identical strength and a modulus of 394 GPa ( $57.09 \times 10^6$  psi). After treating the as spun fiber



at 500°C in air for 30 seconds with a 2.5% stretch the tensile strength increased to an average of 3.58 GPa (519,000 psi) and the modulus increased to 394 GPa ( $67.8 \times 10^6$  psi).

5

## Example 120

A mixture of 13.35 g of 115% PPA and 8.89 g of 85.9%  $H_3PO_4$  was stirred under reduced pressure for 3.3 h at 100°C. To a 100-mL resin kettle was added 17.76096 g (0.09368 mol) of 3-amino-4-hydroxybenzoic acid hydrochloride (3d). The kettle was flushed with argon, and 20.45 g of the above PPA ( $P_2O_5$  content = 75.2%) was added. This mixture was stirred under reduced pressure; however, the mixture solidified overnight. 115% PPA (8.20 g,  $P_2O_5$  content = 83.8%) was added to obtain a stirrable mixture with a  $P_2O_5$  content of 77.6%. After 8 h, 10.17 g of  $P_2O_5$  was added as a powder, giving a  $P_2O_5$  content of 83.49%. Dehydrochlorination was substantially complete after stirring for an additional 15 h at 80°C. Additional  $P_2O_5$  (12.65 g) was then added at 100°C in accordance with equation b\* to give an f of 82.2% and an intermediate  $P_2O_5$  content of 87.55%. The kettle was placed under reduced pressure before incorporating the  $P_2O_5$  by stirring. The mixture was then stirred for 2.4 h at 100°C, and the temperature was increased to 140°C. After 1 h at this temperature, a clear amber solution

was obtained. The temperature was raised to 150°C for 1 h and then raised to 185°C. After 1 h at 185°C, the reaction mixture showed a tan pearlescence when stirred and was birefringent when viewed at rest under crossed  
5 polars. The reaction mixture was then heated at 185°C for an additional 40 h. Nearly colorless, high strength fibers were readily formed by drawing the reaction product. The concentration of polymer  $[V]_n$  in the product was calculated to be 16.67%. The intrinsic  
10 viscosity of polymer  $[V]_n$  isolated from the product was measured to be 13.84 dL/g in MSA at 30°C. The dried polymer had a TGA break in air at 10°C/min of 640°C. Anal. Calcd. for  $C_7H_3NO$ : C, 71.80; H, 2.58; N, 11.96. Found: C, 71.09; H, 2.64; N, 11.67; Residue, 0.8.

15

## Example 121

The reaction mixture of Example 120 was placed in a constant displacement spinning apparatus and extruded at about 3.4 MPa (500 psi) through a 0.381 mm (0.015 in.) diameter orifice into a 31.75 cm (12.5 in.) air  
20 gap with a take-up rate to supply a spin draw ratio of 6.6:1. The temperature of the spinning dope was 65°C. The as spun fiber was of poor quality and very non-uniform. The as-spun properties were  $(340 \times 10^3 \text{ psi})$  tensile strength, 41.3–96.5 GPa  $(6\text{--}14 \times 10^6 \text{ psi})$  modulus,  
25 with no measurable elongation. After heat treatment under tension at 500°C for 60 seconds in nitrogen, the

strength was essentially unchanged and the modulus had increased to an average value of 136 GPa ( $19.7 \times 10^6$  psi).

## Example 122

5 The procedure of Example 120 was essentially repeated using 80.95 g (0.4269 mol) of monomer 3d, 34.37 g of 85.9%  $H_3PO_4$ , 80.13 g of 115% PPA and 118.06g of  $P_2O_5$ . These amounts gave a  $M_o$  of 77.32%, an intermediate  $P_2O_5$  content of 88.83%, and (because of the loss of 10 1.54 g of water during polycondensation) an  $\alpha_f$  of 83.8%. The  $P_2O_5$  content profile for this example is graphically presented by the step-wise curve of Figure 13. The concentration of polymer  $\{V\}_n$  in the reaction product was calculated to be 16.87 weight %. The total 15 reaction time above  $100^\circ C$  was 43.5 hours. The stir-opalescent reaction product was birefringent at rest and gave colorless fibers after drawing and precipitating in water. The intrinsic viscosity of isolated polymer  $\{V\}_n$  was 12.0 dL/g.

## Example 123

20

The reaction product of Example 122 was placed in a constant displacement spinning apparatus and extruded at about 3.4 MPa (500 psi) through a 0.25 mm (0.010



378

in.) diameter orifice through an 20.3 cm (8 in.) air gap with a take up rate to supply a spin draw ratio of 145:1. The temperature of the spinning dope was 90°C. The tensile strength of fibers (average of nine breaks) spun from said dope was 3.57 GPa (518,000 psi). One of the fibers tested gave a break value of 5.01 GPa (727,000 psi). The average tensile modulus was 133 GPa ( $19.3 \times 10^6$  psi). This value does not take into account the machine compliance. The average strain at break was 3.3%. The fiber diameter was 16 micrometer ( $0.630 \times 10^{-3}$  in.).

## Example 124

The reaction product of Example 122 was placed in a constant displacement spinning apparatus and extruded at about 3.4 MPa (500 psi) through a 0.250 mm (0.010 in.) diameter orifice through an 20.3 cm (8.0 in.) air gap with a take up rate to supply a spin draw ratio of 125:1. The temperature of the spinning dope was 90°C. The tensile strength of fibers (average of ten breaks) spun from said dope was 2.57 GPa (373,000 psi). One of the fibers tested gave a break value of 3.38 GPa (491,000 psi). The average tensile modulus was 79 GPa ( $11.5 \times 10^6$  psi). This value does not take into account the machine compliance. The average strain at break was 4.5%. The fiber diameter was 19 micrometer ( $0.748 \times 10^{-3}$  in.).





## Example 125

The reaction product of Example 122 was placed in a constant displacement spinning apparatus and extruded at about 3.4 MPa (500 psi) through a 0.25 mm (0.010 in.) diameter orifice through an 20.3 cm (8.0 in.) air gap with a take up rate to supply a spin draw ratio of 100:1. The temperature of the spinning dope was 90°C. The tensile strength of fibers (average of seven breaks) spun from said dope was 2.83 GPa (410,000 psi). One of the fibers tested gave a break value of 3.29 GPa (491,000 psi). The average tensile modulus was 61 GPa ( $8.8 \times 10^6$  psi). This value does not take into account the machine compliance. The average strain at break was 4.8%. The fiber diameter was 21 micrometer ( $0.827 \times 10^{-3}$  in.).

## Example 126

The reaction product of Example 122 was placed in a constant displacement spinning apparatus and extruded at about 3.4 MPa (500 psi) through a 0.025 mm (0.010 in.) diameter orifice through an 20.3 cm (8.0 in.) air gap with a take up rate to supply a spin draw ratio of 17.2:1. The temperature of the spinning dope was 80°C. The tensile strength of fibers (average of seven breaks) spun from said dope was 2.76 GPa (400,000 psi). The average tensile modulus was 41 GPa ( $6.0 \times 10^6$  psi). This value does not take into account the machine

compliance. The fiber diameter was 45 micrometer ( $1.76 \times 10^{-3}$  in.).

## Example 127

## Poly-2,5-pyridinebenzobisoxazole

5 A mixture of 13.25 g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.9%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ) and 29.75 g of 115% PPA was stirred under reduced pressure at 100°C for 2.5 hours. The resulting solution was then poured under a stream of  
10 argon at 20°C into a 100 ml resin kettle containing 10.8621 g (0.050989 mol) of 4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydrochloride (1b) that was prepared according to the method of Wolfe, et al., Macromolecules, Vol. 14, 909 (1981), recrystallized from aqueous hydrochloric acid containing 3 wt% stannous chloride, and dried for 72  
15 hours at 20°C under reduced pressure immediately before use. The mixture was stirred at 55°C for 18 hours, at 76°C for 24 hours under reduced pressure.  
2,4-pyridinedicarboxylic acid (2i) (8.5720 g, 0.050984 mol) was then added under argon flow. Additional  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$   
20 (31.18 g) was then added. The solution was stirred, and heated as follows: 100°C for 1 hour; 120°C for 3 hours; 130°C for 0.5 hours; 140°C for 0.5 hours; 150°C for 0.5 hours; 185°C for 48 hours (the dark red solution became stir-opalescent during the first hour  
25 of this last period). The resulting product was deep red with a metallic luster, exhibited stir-opalescence, and is further characterized as having a final

effective  $P_2O_5$  content of 84% with the  $\{BK\}_n$  polymer concentration being 13.4% by weight. The intrinsic viscosity of the polymer  $\{BK\}_n$  isolated from the reaction product was 4.96 dL/g in MSA at 30°C, which corresponds to an average number of recurring units,  $n$ , of approximately 50.

## Example 128

The reaction products from Example 27 and 120 were precipitated in water and the polymers obtained (polymers  $\{T\}_n$  and  $\{V\}_n$ , respectively) were chopped in a Waring Blender and dried. The reaction product from Example 12 was dry-jet wet spun into fiber (polymer  $\{AI\}_n$ ) and dried. All of the precipitated polymers and spun fiber of Examples 12, 27, and 120 including as spun fiber (polymer  $\{BI\}_n$ ) produced in Example 117 were tested as follows: the precipitated polymers and spun fibers were placed in four of the ten positions in an isothermal aging apparatus developed by SRL Laboratories of Dayton, Ohio and heated at 371°C in circulating air for 200 hours. The apparatus has ten positions and the weight remaining in each of the positions is recorded at 20 minute intervals. Each of the polymer samples lost approximately 14% of their original weight initially indicating the presence of residual volatile species (e.g. water). The weight losses due to isothermal aging of the individual

polymers (after the initial weight loss) were as follows:

	Polymer	Wt% Loss
5	$\{V\}_n$	8.0
	$\{BI\}_n$	12.0
	$\{T\}_n$	23.0
	$\{AI\}_n$	27.0

The results are shown graphically in Figures 1 and 2.

#### Example 129

10 The samples described in Example 128 were analyzed in a Du Pont 990 Thermogravimetric Analyzer at a heating rate of 5°C/min. The weight retention in He and air atmospheres (flow rate = 60 ml/min) as a function of temperature is shown for the four polymers in Figures 15 3, 4 (in He) and 5, 6 (in air). The isothermal aging (see Figures 1 and 2) of all four polymers of Example 128 show a marked improvement especially for polymers  $\{V\}_n$ , and  $\{BI\}_n$ . Polymer  $\{BI\}_n$  can be compared directly with Wolfe and Loo U.S. Patent 4,225,700. The 20 improvement is presumed to be caused by the increase in molecular weight and/or the more highly ordered morphology of the resulting polymers/fibers formed from compositions of the invention. Thermogravimetric



analysis in air (at a heating rate of 10°C/min) was also performed on two block polymers of the instant invention; these block polymers were isolated and dried from the reaction products of Example 73 and 74. The results of the TGA are shown in Figure 2A.

### Example 130

A mixture of 173.59 g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.5%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ) and 414.71 g of 115% PPA was stirred under reduced pressure for 2 hours. The resulting solution was then poured at approximately 30°C under an argon stream into a 2L resin kettle containing 118.70422 g (0.55712679 mol) of 4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydrochloride (1b) that was prepared according to the method of Wolfe and Arnold, Macromolecules, vol. 14, 909 (1981), recrystallized from aqueous hydrochloric acid containing 3 wt % stannous chloride, and dried for 3.5 days at 20°C under reduced pressure immediately before use. The mixture was stirred at 60°C for 48 hours and 80°C for 6 hours under reduced pressure. Monomer 2a (92.55800 g, 0.5571252 mol) was then added under argon flow. Deaerated  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  (404.45 g) was added. The mixture was then heated at 100°C for 18 hours, and 185°C for 29

384

hours. The dark blue-black solution became stir-opalescent after 1.5 hours at 185°C. The reaction product was deep purple with a golden metallic luster, exhibited stir-opalescence, and was further

5 characterized as having a final effective  $P_2O_5$  content of 83.2%, with the  $\{BI\}_n$  polymer concentration being 11.3% by weight. The intrinsic viscosity of the polymer  $\{BI\}_n$  isolated from the reaction product was 20.4 dL/g in MSA at 30°C, which corresponds to an

10 average number of recurring units,  $n$ , of approximately 100.

## EXAMPLE 131

The reactor used for the preparation of polymer  $\{AI\}_n$  of this Example was constructed with all wetted parts

15 made of Hastelloy C-276. The working volume was 115 L (30 gal). Mixing was provided by four vertical, stationary baffles attached to the reactor lid and a rotating assembly with four vertical members. The rotating assembly was driven by a 5 hp-2.5 hp two-speed

20 motor and had a bearing and seal at top and bottom. The reactor was charged with 13.4888 kg (55.0129 mol) of monomer 1a and then with 49.1 kg of a PPA prepared from 19.64 kg of 85.8%  $H_3PO_4$  and 29.46 kg of 115% PPA. The reactor was then heated to 60°C within 1 hour and

25 placed under reduced pressure for 20 hours. The  $P_2O_5$  content was then raised to 78.5 % by the addition of 7.751 kg of  $P_2O_5$  over a 2-hour period, which caused the temperature to rise spontaneously to 92°C. After



cooling to 68°C, an additional 5.647 kg of  $P_2O_5$  was added in 30 minutes, causing the temperature to rise to 84°C. The mixture was stirred at 80°C under reduced pressure for an additional 17 hours, at which time all the HCl appeared to have been evolved. Monomer 2a (9.1396 kg, 55.015 mol) was then added in four portions. Each portion was added under reduced pressure by first adding the monomer to a 12 L addition bulb, placing both the reactor and bulb under reduced pressure, and then opening a ball valve between the two chambers. Additional  $P_2O_5$  (26.296 kg) was then added in two portions according to equation b\* to give an intermediate  $P_2O_5$  content of 86.26% and a final  $P_2O_5$  content of 82.57%. The reaction mixture was then stirred at slow speed overnight at 100-112°C under an argon atmosphere. Using the faster stirring speed, the mixture was then heated, and samples were removed for intrinsic viscosity determinations according to the following schedule:

386

Reaction Time		Reaction Temperature	$[\eta]$ , dL/g
minutes		°C	
	0-12	103-112	
5	20	127	
	27	140	
	42	159	
	60	172	
	73	180	
10	87	183	
	100	185	7.83
	120	185	15.33
	135	187	17.77
	149	186	20.18
15	165	184	21.80
	183	179	

20 The reaction mixture was then cooled to 110°C over a period of four hours, at which time the intrinsic viscosity was 24.6 dL/g. The green, opalescent product was then reheated to 130°C and removed from the reactor for spinning. A sample taken at the end of the removal was measured to have an intrinsic viscosity of 27.26 dL/g. A small sample was heated at 185°C for an additional 24 hours, and the intrinsic viscosity rose to 34.11 dL/g.



## Example 132

A mixture of 34.97 g of PPA (83.8%) and 15.00 g of  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  was stirred and heated to  $100^\circ\text{C}$  in a 100-ml 3-necked flask. The flask was placed under reduced pressure for 2.0 hours. To a 100-ml resin kettle was added 21.32 g of 3,4-diaminobenzoic acid $\cdot$ 2 HCl. The flask was deaerated and flushed with argon. 33.84 g of the above prepared PPA solvent (having a  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  content of 77.32%) was added to the kettle. The kettle was heated with an oil bath at  $50^\circ\text{C}$  with moderate stirring under water-aspirator reduced pressure for 1.0 hour. The flask was then placed under vacuum-pump reduced pressure for an additional 46.83 hours. The temperature remained at  $50^\circ\text{C}$  for 18.0 hours, at  $60^\circ\text{C}$  for 1.77 hours, at  $70^\circ\text{C}$  for 23.81 hours, and at  $80^\circ\text{C}$  for 4.25 hours. At the time the vacuum was removed, the mixture was riding on the stir blades. Near the end of dehydrochlorination, the mixture was still opaque and the color was mint green. The  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  was added as a powder in two additions. The first addition of  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  was in the amount of 6.93 g. The  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  was added under argon at  $80^\circ\text{C}$  with stirring. The  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  was incorporated under reduced pressure. Reduced pressure was maintained for 18.57 hours. The remaining 14.00 g of  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  were added and incorporated under reduced pressure with stirring at  $80^\circ\text{C}$ . (Total  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5 = 20.93$  g.) The amount of  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  added was calculated to provide the reaction mixture with an effective  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$  content of approximately 85.99% prior to the beginning of

388

polymerization and an effective  $P_2O_5$  content of approximately 80.94% subsequent to substantially complete polymerization. The mixture was heated to a final temperature of 200°C following the heating schedule outlined below.

	Temperature (°C)	Time (Hours)	Observations
	90	0.73	
10	110	0.63	Foamy; darker green; vacuum removed.
	120	0.72	Pea-soup green; more fluid; clearing.
	130	0.88	
	142	0.50	
15	152	0.17	Mixture clearer with small particles present.
	161	0.27	Mixture full of bubbles.
	169	0.45	
20	182	0.83	
	200	20.79	

A sample of the reaction product was stretchable, fibrous, and turned white as it was drawn. The fiber was precipitated in water. The fiber and a nonprecipitated sample were birefringent at rest at room temperature under crossed polars. The clear green dope appeared hazy as it was cooled. The intrinsic



viscosity of the reaction product was 6.58 dL/g in MSA at 30°C and the polymer concentration was 15.90%. The polymer obtained is of the following structure:



5

## Example 133

A mixture of 14.71 g of concentrated orthophosphoric acid (85.9%  $H_3PO_4$ ) and 22.64 g of 115% PPA was stirred under reduced pressure at 100°C for 2.5 hours. The resulting solution was then poured at approximately 25°C under a stream of Ar into a 100 ml resin kettle containing 11.04664 g (0.045053 mol) of 2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol dihydrochloride (1a). The mixture was stirred under reduced pressure at 50°C for 2 hours; 60°C for 16 hours, and 80°C for 12.5 hours to complete the dehydrochlorination. Monomers 2a (7.4863 g, 0.045001 mol) was then added under an Ar flow.  $P_2O_5$  (48.29 g) was then added. The mixture was heated at 100°C for 3 hours and at 185°C for 33 hours. The resulting reaction product was light green with an iridescent luster, exhibited stir-opalescence, and was further characterized as having a final effective  $P_2O_5$  content of 83.6% with the  $\{Al\}_n$  polymer concentration being 11.6 wt %. The intrinsic viscosity of the polymer  $\{Al\}_n$  isolated from the reaction product was 47.8 dL/g in MSA at 30°C, which corresponds to an average number of recurring units, n, of approximately 140.



390

The physical properties of as spun and heat treated fibers formed from compositions of Examples 117, 119, 121, 123, 124, 125, and 126 above are shown in Tables 29 and 30 below.



T A B L E 29

		EXAMPLES			
		PBO	PBO	ABPBO	ABPBO
CONDITION	Example No.:	117	119	121	123
5	Polymer dope				
	1. Intrinsic Viscosity (dL/g)	23.9	24.4	13.8	12.0
	2. P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> Content (%)	82.3	83.2	82.2	83.8
	3. Polymer Concentration (%)	13.3	13.8	16.7	16.9
	Spinning Conditions				
10	4. Spin Draw Ratio	6.1:1	53:1	6.6:1	145:1
	5. Spin Temperature (°C)	63	70	65	90
	6. Air Gap Distance (cm)	21	20.3	31.7	20.3
	7. Jet Diameter (mm)	0.381	0.25	0.381	0.25
	8. Dope pressure (MPa)	*2	1.17	*3.4	*3.4
15	As Spun Fiber Properties				
	9. Tensile (GPa)	2.96	3.12	2.34	3.57
	10. Single break Tensile (GPa)				
	-highest value	-	-	-	5.01
	11. Modulus (GPa)	89.6	303	41-96	133
20	12. Elongation %	4.2-6	-	-	3.3
	13. Fiber diameter (millimicron)	33	-	37-76	16

Heat Treatment Conditions

392

	14. Temperature (°C)	500	450	500	-
	15. Time (seconds)	60	30	60	-
	16. Stretch factor (%)	-	2	7.5	-
	17. Atmosphere condition	Nitrogen	Air	Nitrogen	-
5	Post Heat Treatment Fiber Properties				
	18. Tensile (GPa)	3.45	3.07	2.34	-
	19. Modulus (GPa)	317	410	136	-
	20. Elongation (%)	1.8-2.4	-	-	-
	21. Fiber Diameter (millimicron)	31.4	-	-	-
10	22. Visual	uniform	non-uniform	-	-

\* denotes approximate values

---



393

T A B L E 30

		EXAMPLES		
		ABPBO	ABPBO	ABPBO
CONDITIONS	Example No.:	124	125	126
5	Polymer dope			
	1. Intrinsic Viscosity (dL/g)	12.0	12.0	12.0
	2. P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> Content (%)	83.8	83.8	83.8
	3. Polymer Concentration (%)	16.9	16.9	16.9
	Spinning Conditions			
10	4. Spin Draw Ratio	125:1	100:1	17.2:1
	5. Spin Temperature (°C)	90	90	80
	6. Air Gap Distance (cm)	20.3	20.3	31.7
	7. Jet Diameter (mm)	0.25	0.25	0.25
	8. Dope pressure (MPa)	*3.4	*3.4	*3.4
15	As Spun Fiber Properties			
	9. Tensile (GPa)	2.57	2.83	2.76
	10. Single break Tensile (GPa)			
	-highest value	3.38	3.29	-
	11. Modulus (GPa)	79	61	41
20	12. Elongation (%)	4.6	4.8	-
	13. Fiber diameter (millimicron)	19	21	45

394

## Heat Treatment Conditions

	14. Temperature (°C)	450	400	500
	15. Time (seconds)	30	30	30
	16. Stretch factor (%)	4.37	4.37	1.28
5	17. Atmosphere condition	Nitrogen	Nitrogen	Nitrogen

## Post Heat Treatment Fiber Properties

	18. Tensile (GPa)	2.85	3.34	2.62
	19. Single break tensile (GPa)			
	-highest value	4.94	3.76	3.00
10	20. Modulus (GPa)	119	115	144
	21. Elongation (%)	2.5	3.6	2.2
	22. Fiber Diameter (millimicron)	19.15	-	42.7

\* denotes approximate values

---

15 As exemplified in the examples above, the compositions of the invention are prepared in batch fashion but continuous procedures may be employed.





Some process and product benefits as a result of better control of certain process parameters such as shear and temperature in a continuous process are: (1) a more homogeneous products of reaction as a result of a much higher order of magnitude of mixing; (2) higher throughputs; (3) and improved economics.

Another advantage of continuous processing is that the resulting reaction products can be blended in essentially all portions with other reaction products of different polymer type and/or reaction products at different stages of reaction.

In a continuous process, the aforementioned dehydrochlorination step of "Stage One" and monomer- $P_2O_5$  addition of "Stage Two" are conducted at a



temperature not to exceed about 100°C in a batch reactor preferably of the type described in Example 116. "Stage Three" of the invention can be conducted in a motionless (static) mixer. Such mixers for paste and very viscous materials are described in "Chemical Engineers' Handbook", R. H. Perry et al., McGraw-Hill Kogakusha, LTD., International Student Edition, pp. 19-24, (1973); "Fluid Mixing Technology", by James Y. Oldshue, McGraw-Hill Publishing Company, pp. 431-438, (1983); and Grout et al., U.S. Patent No.: 3,800,985. These publications and patent are incorporated herein by reference. The reaction mixture of "Stage Two" is fed from an outlet of the batch reactor through a constant displacement pump to a static mixer (tubular reactor) preferably of the type described in U.S. 3,800,985 where the first mixing element is heated at a temperature between about 140°C to about 185°C. The second and subsequent intermediate mixing elements are heated at temperatures between about 165°C and about 200°C. The last mixing elements are heated at temperatures between about 80°C and about 200°C depending on the desired temperature selected for spinning the particular extended chain polymer employed.

In order to avoid interruptions in the continuous process, two or more batch reactors (for conducting "Stage One" and "Stage Two") are connected to the static mixer (tubular reactor) in parallel array fashion so as to feed said tubular reactor in time-wise

sequence. Preferably, "Stages One and "Stage Two" can be conducted in an emptied batch reactor without the need for clean-up. The volume requirement of the tubular reactor is a function of the size and number of the batch reactor array, the desired (mixing elements) residence time, and the desired flow rate.

Such a continuous process is especially suitable for the preparation of block copolymers of the present invention. Block copolymers can be made by admixing a second reaction mixture after the first reaction mixture has passed through an intermediate number of mixing elements.

A very important aspect of the continuous process as well as for the batch process which must be emphasized is that "Stage One", "Stage Two", and "Stage Three" of the invention must be conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of Figure 14. This is unrealized by the art.

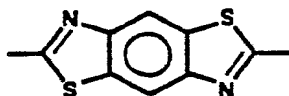


## A P P E N D I X

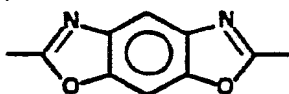
## General Structure Reference

5

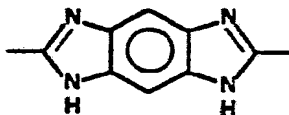
[A]



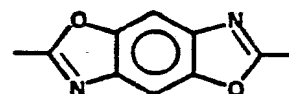
[B]



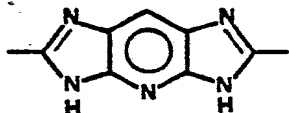
[C]



[D]

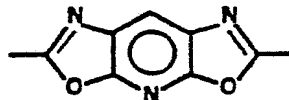


[E]

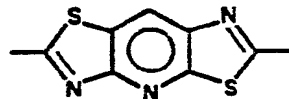


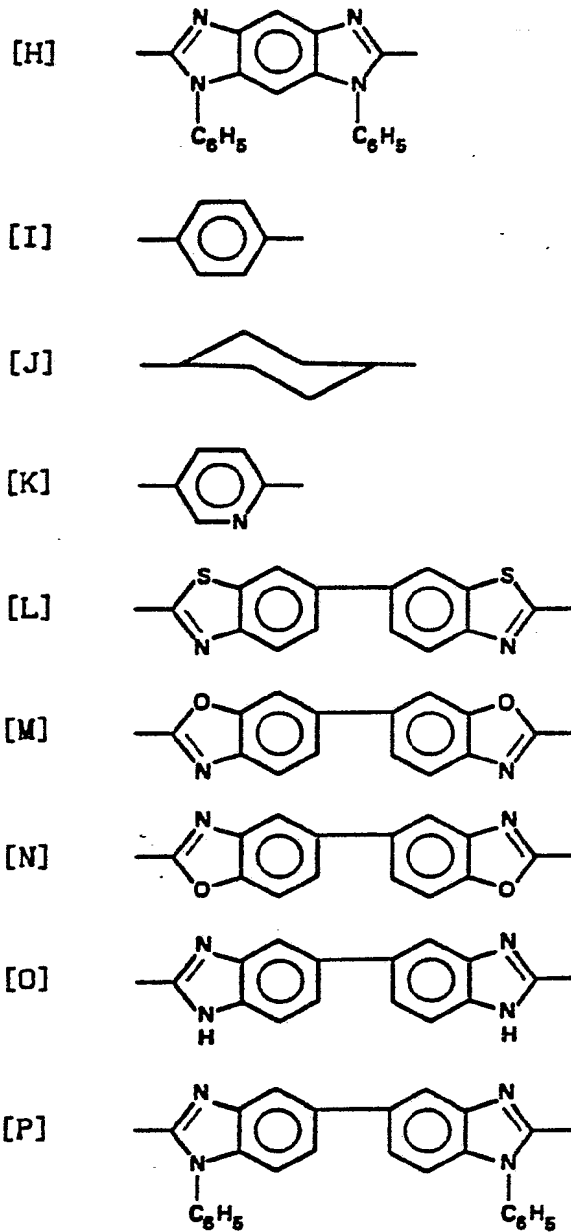
10

[F]

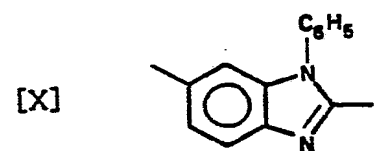
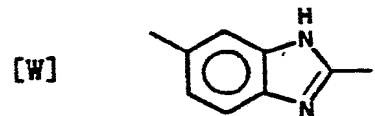
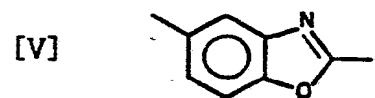
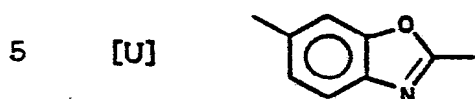
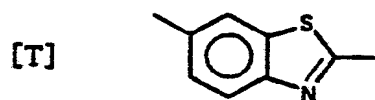
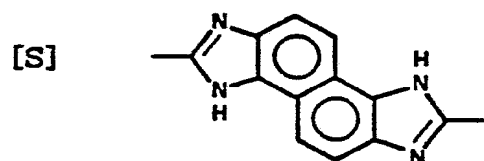
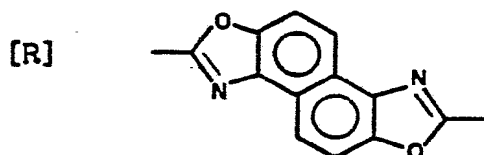
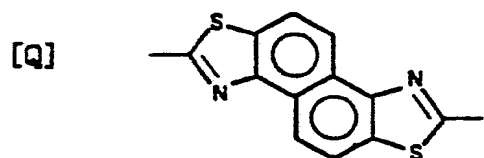


[G]

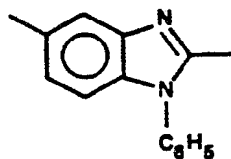




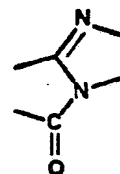
400



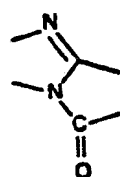
[Y]



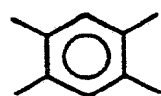
[Z]



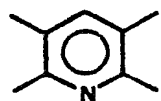
[A']



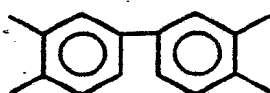
[B']



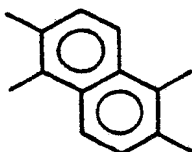
[C']



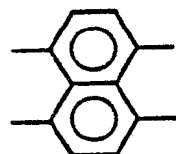
[D']



[E']



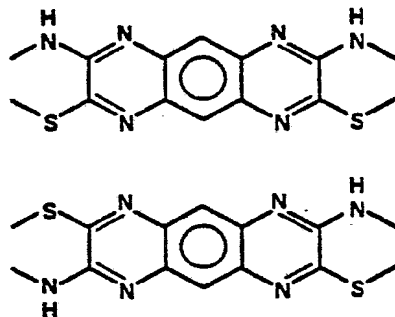
[F']



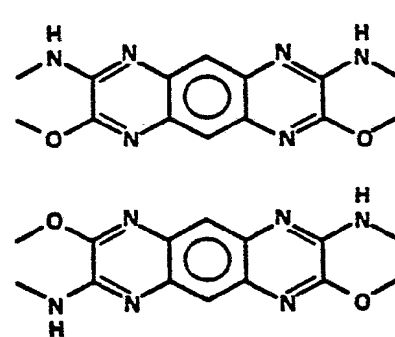
5

402

[G']

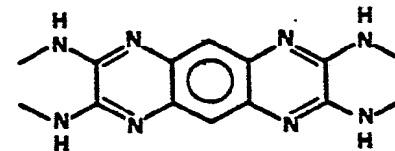


[H']



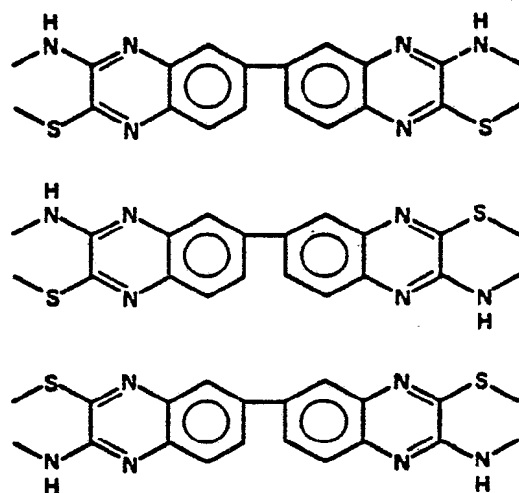
5

[I']



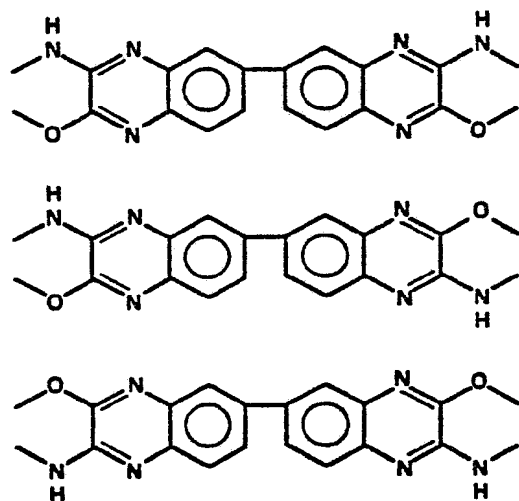


[J']

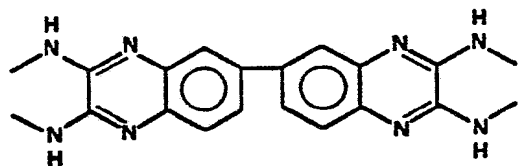


5

[K']

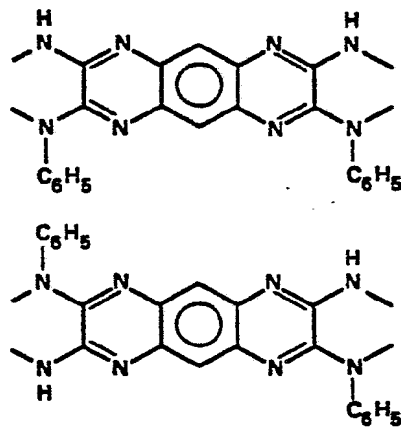


[L']

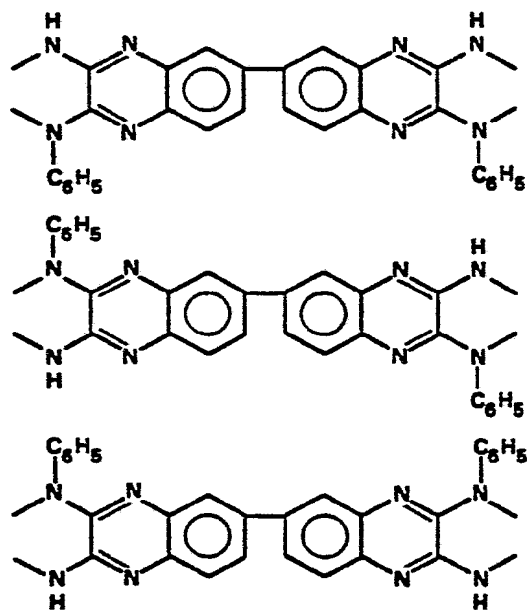


404

[M']

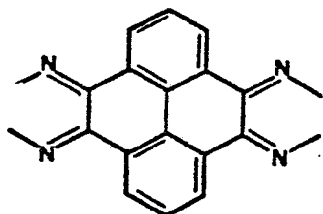


[N']

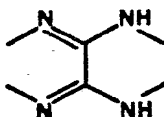


5

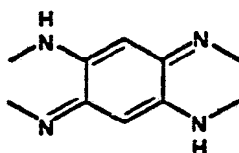
[O']



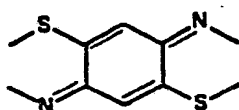
[P']



[Q']

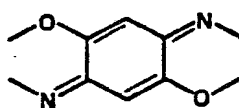


[R']

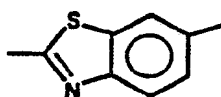


5

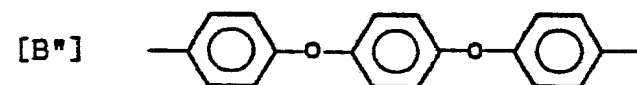
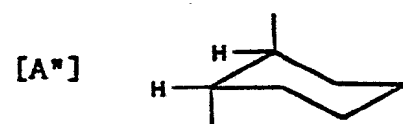
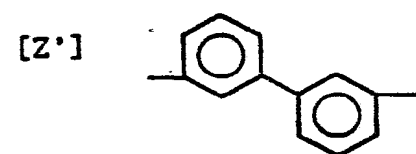
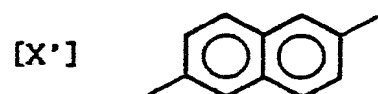
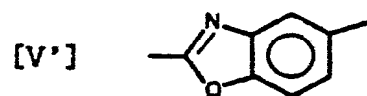
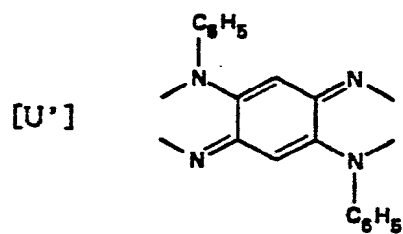
[S']



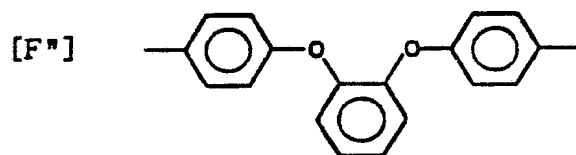
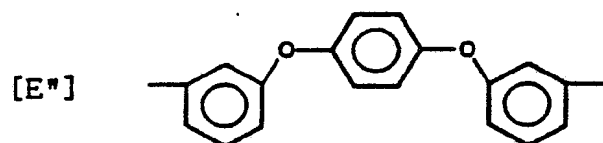
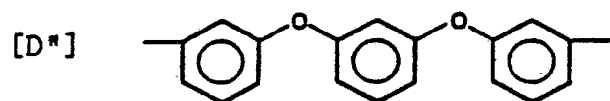
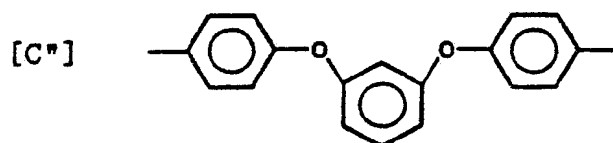
[T']



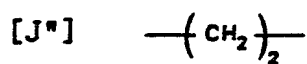
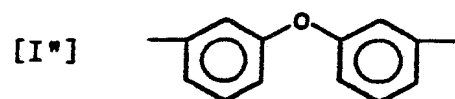
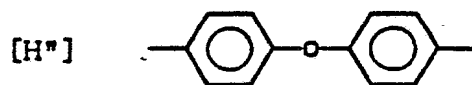
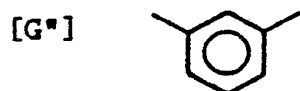
406

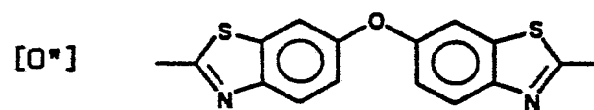
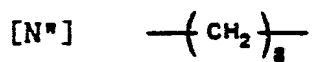
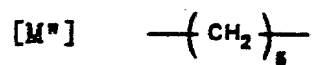
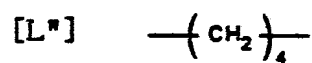


407

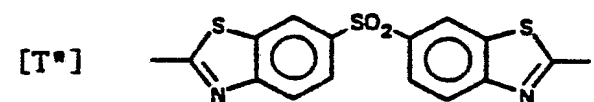
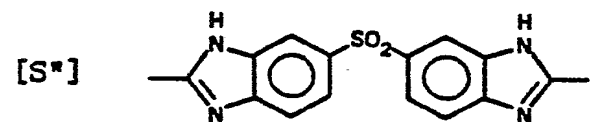
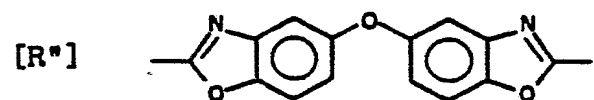
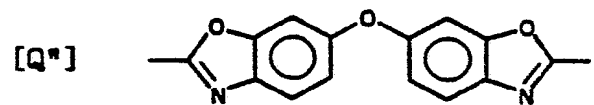
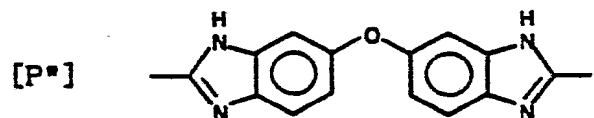


5

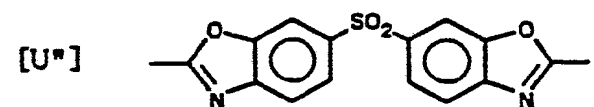




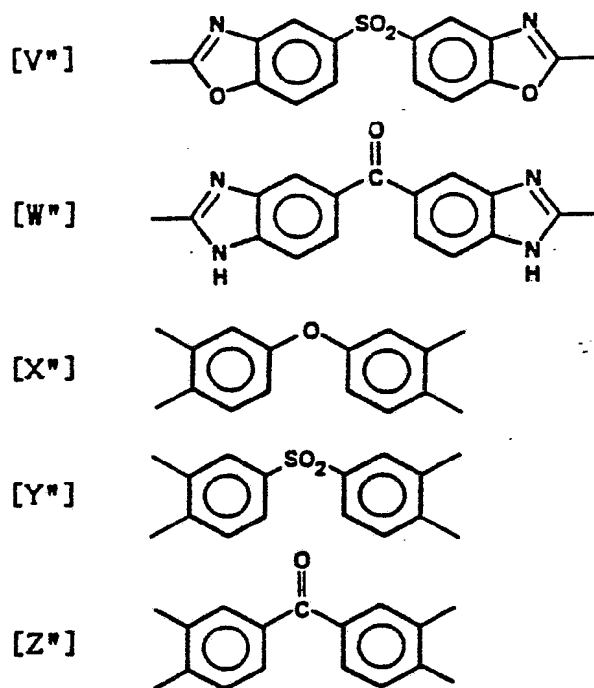
5



10



409



10

While certain features of this invention have been described in detail with respect to various embodiments thereof, it will, of course, be apparent that other modifications can be made within the spirit and scope of this invention, and it is not intended to limit the invention to the exact details shown above except insofar as they are defined in the following claims.

410

Claims

What we claim is:

1. A novel polymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful as a dope in the production of fibers and films characterized as comprising a polycondensation product consisting essentially of a blend of a solution of certain polyphosphoric acids and a high concentration of at least one high molecular weight extended chain polymer having one or more mesogenic group or groups, said extended chain polymer being present in sufficient concentration so as to be capable of exhibiting an anisotropic polymer phase alone or in combination with one or more different polymers with or without mesogenic group or groups, said extended chain polymer is selected from the group consisting of: a homopolymer, a copolymer, or a block polymer, said polycondensation product being further characterized as having a total polymer concentration of at least above about 10 percent by weight based on the total weight of said composition.

2. A composition according to claim 1, wherein said composition exhibits high speed spin-drawability and is further characterized as having high cohesive strength, capable of being drawn through long air gap distances and spun at high draw ratios.

3. A composition according to claim 1, wherein said composition is characterized as



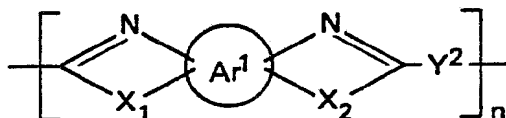


having a phosphorus pentoxide content within the range from about 82 percent to about 88 percent by weight based on the total weight of said solution of polyphosphoric acids.

- 5 4. A composition according to claim 3, wherein said composition is characterized as having a total polymer concentration of at least greater than about 14 percent by weight based on the total weight of said composition.

- 10 5. A composition according to claim 4, wherein said extended chain polymer present is characterized as having a molecular weight corresponding to an intrinsic viscosity of at least about 12 dL/g as determined in methanesulfonic acid at 30°C.

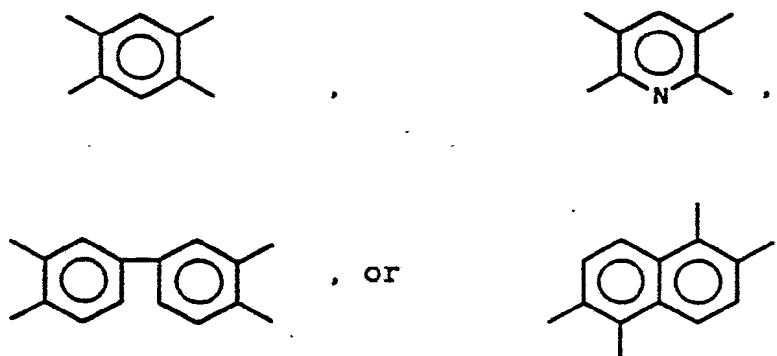
- 15 6. A composition according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 408, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the general formula:



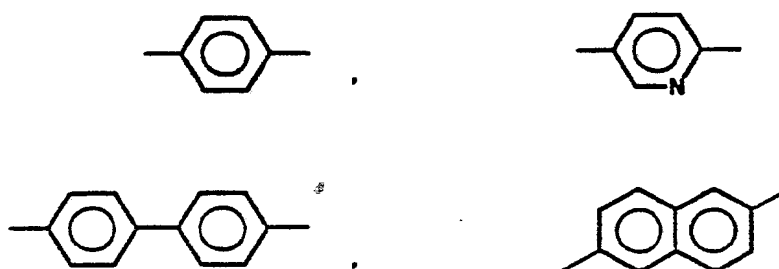
I.

412

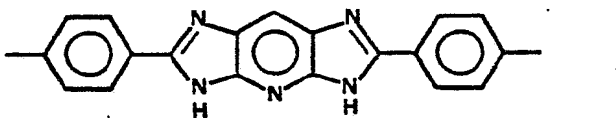
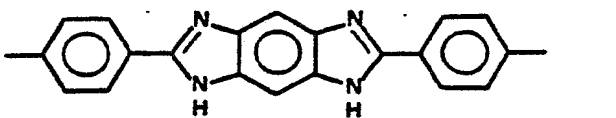
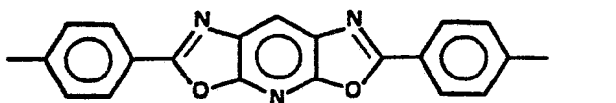
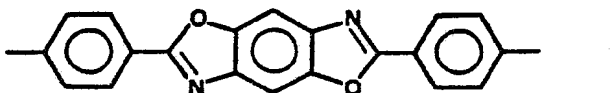
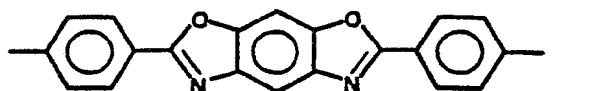
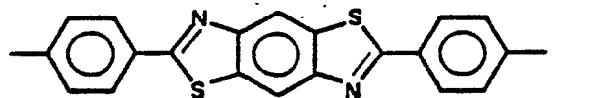
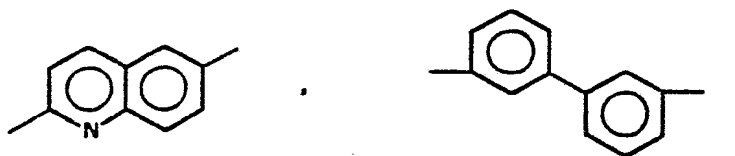
wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



5  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^1$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents a  
10 bivalent organic radical and is

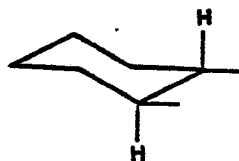
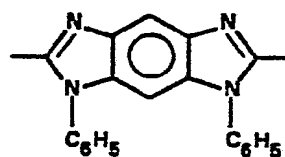
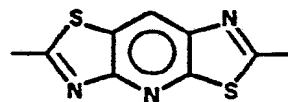
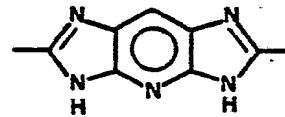
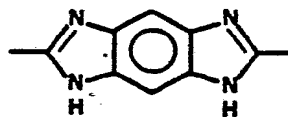
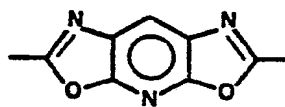
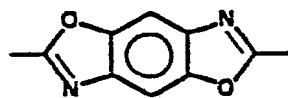
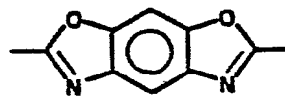
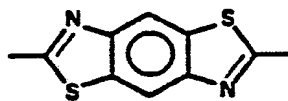
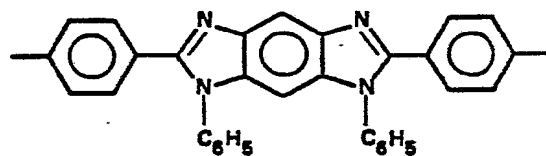
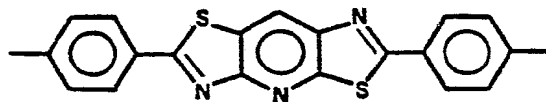


413

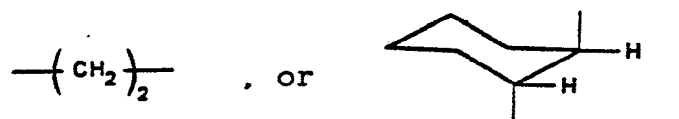


5

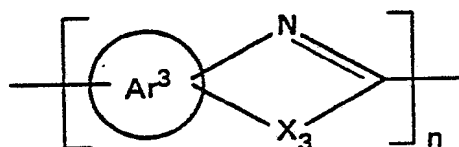
414



5



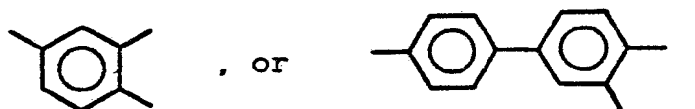
n being a positive integer;



II,

wherein Ar<sup>3</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is

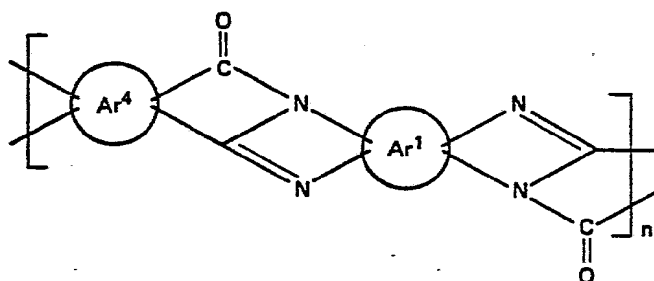
5



10

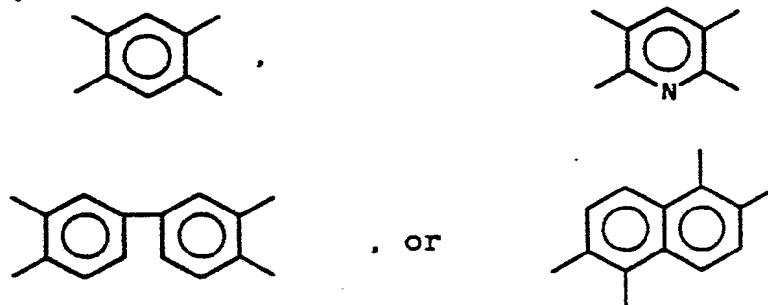
X<sub>3</sub> is oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and X<sub>3</sub> being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of Ar<sup>3</sup>, N and X<sub>3</sub> of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, n being a positive integer;

416

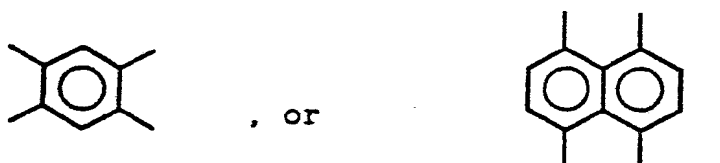


III,

wherein Ar<sup>1</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is



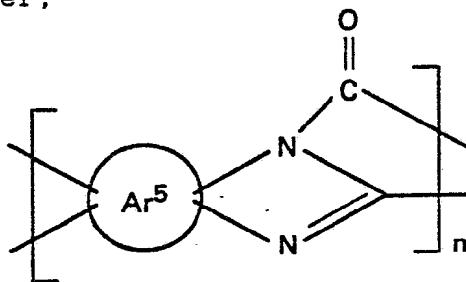
5 and Ar<sup>4</sup> represents a different aromatic moiety and is



the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of Ar<sup>1</sup> and the carbon atoms being

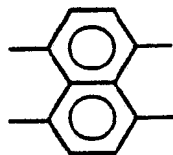
417

bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^4$ ,  $n$  being a positive integer;



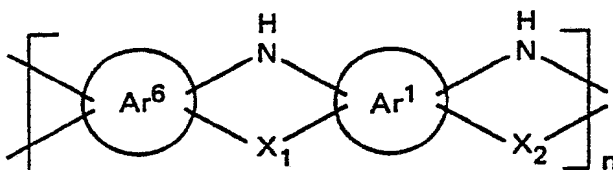
IV,

wherein  $\text{Ar}^5$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



5

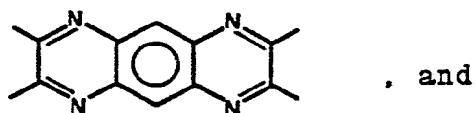
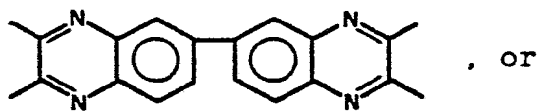
the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $\text{Ar}^5$ ,  $n$  being a positive integer;



V.

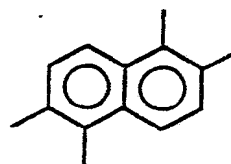
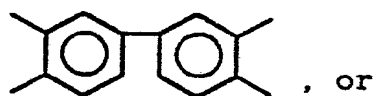
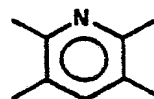
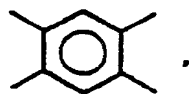
418

wherein Ar<sup>6</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is



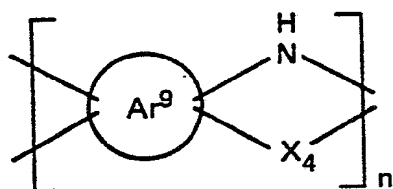
Ar<sup>1</sup> represents a different aromatic moiety and is

5



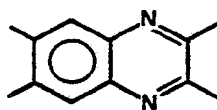


- 5  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_4$  and  $X_5$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^1$ , NH and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, n being a positive integer;



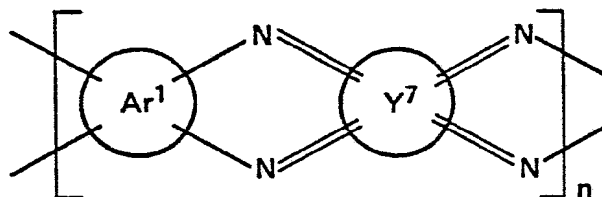
VI.

wherein  $Ar^9$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



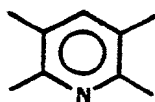
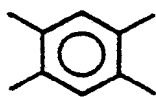
- 10  $X_4$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_4$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^9$ , n being a positive integer;

420

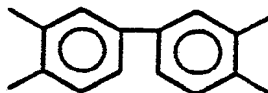


VII.

wherein Ar<sup>1</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is

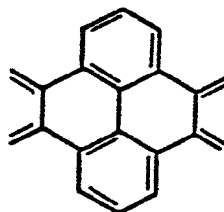


or



5

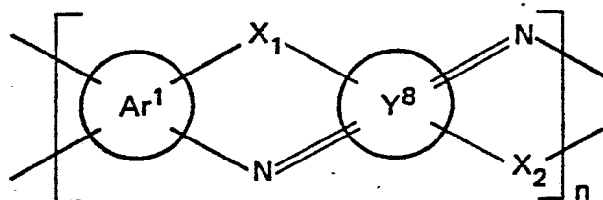
Y<sup>7</sup> represents an aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety and is



the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of Ar<sup>1</sup> and bonded to adjacent carbon

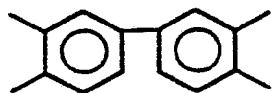
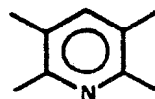
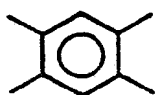
421

atoms of  $\gamma^7$ , n being a positive integer:

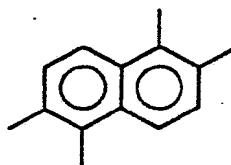


VIII,

wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

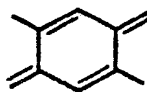


, or



5

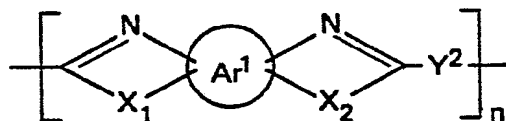
$\gamma^8$  is



422

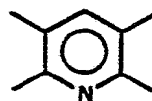
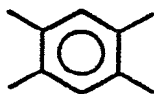
$X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$  and adjacent carbon atoms of  $Y^8$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, n being a positive integer.

7. A composition according to claim 2, 3, 4, or 5, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the general formulas:



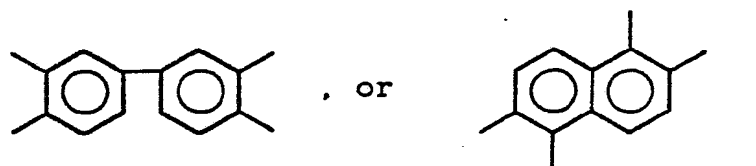
I,

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

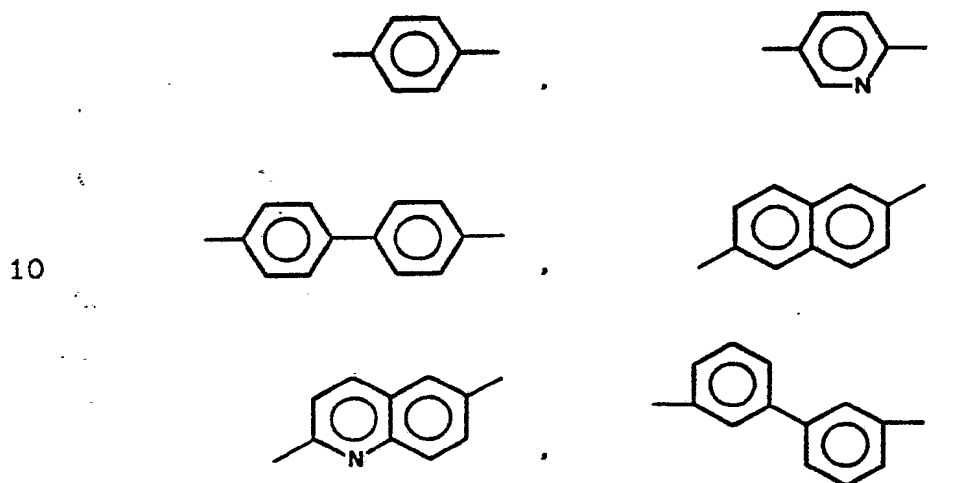


15

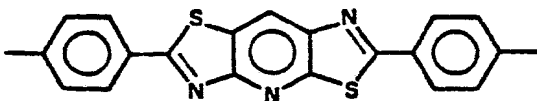
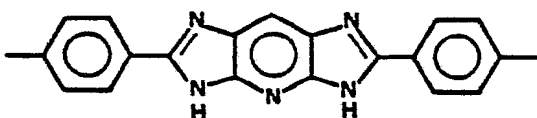
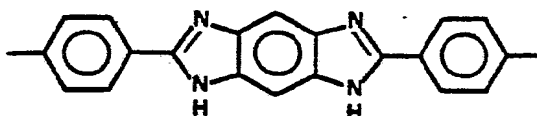
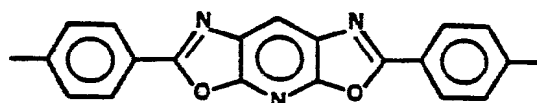
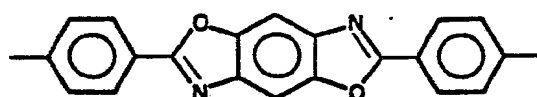
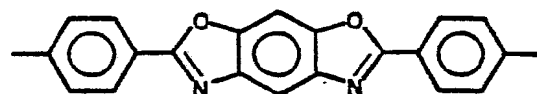
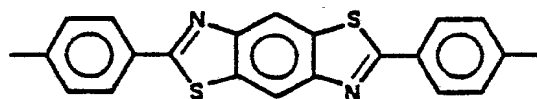
423



5  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is

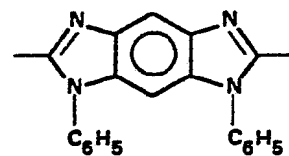
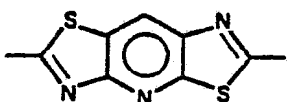
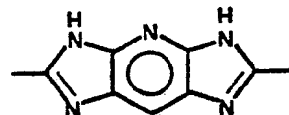
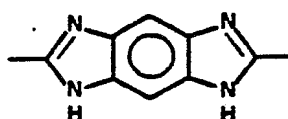
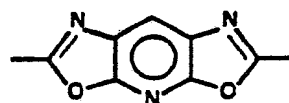
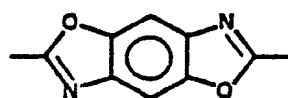
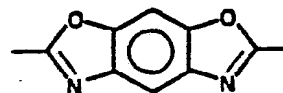
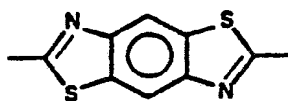
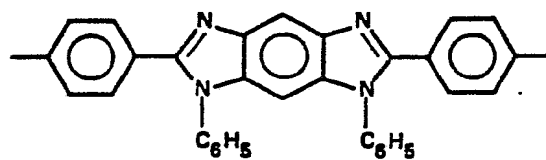


424

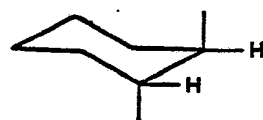
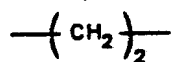


5

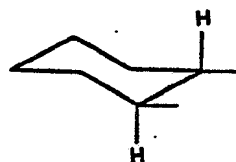
425



5

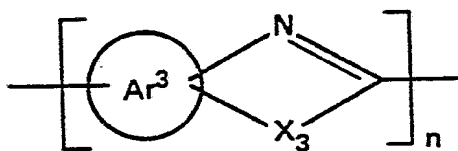


, or



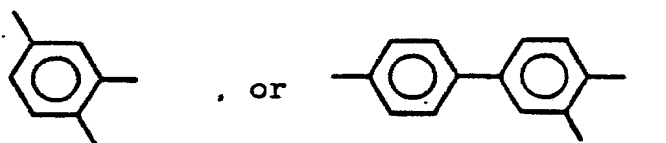
426

n being a positive integer;



II.

wherein Ar<sup>3</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is



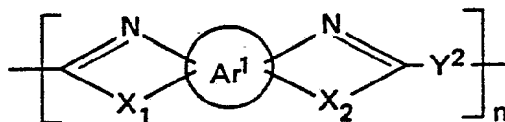
- 5 X<sub>3</sub> is oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and X<sub>3</sub> being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of Ar<sup>3</sup>, N and X<sub>3</sub> of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, n being a positive integer.



427

8. A composition according to claim 7 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

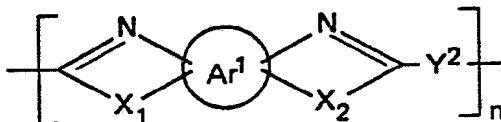
5



I.

9. A composition according to claim 6 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

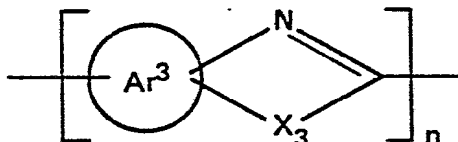
10



I.

10. A composition according to Claim 6 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

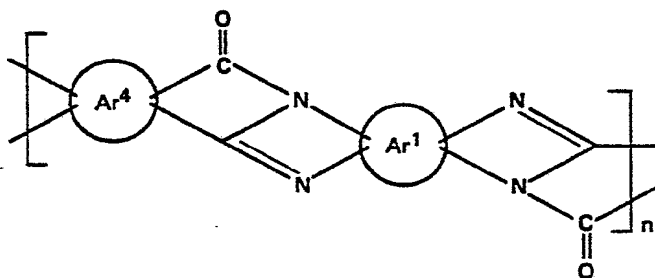
5



II.

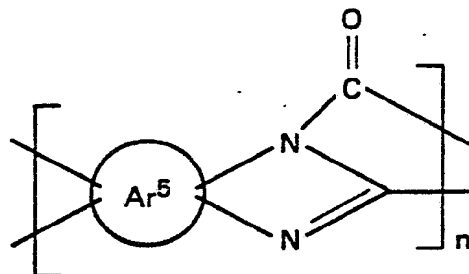
11. A composition according to Claim 6 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

10



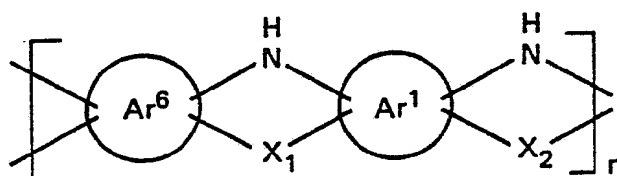
III.

12. A composition according to Claim 6 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:



IV.

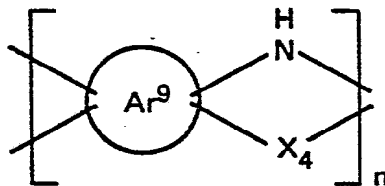
13. A composition according to Claim 6 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:



V.

14. A composition according to Claim 6 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

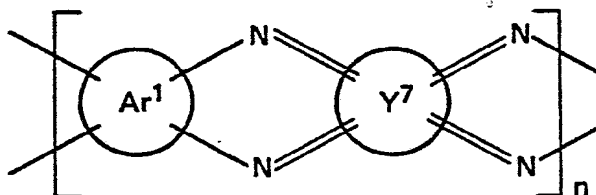
5



VI.

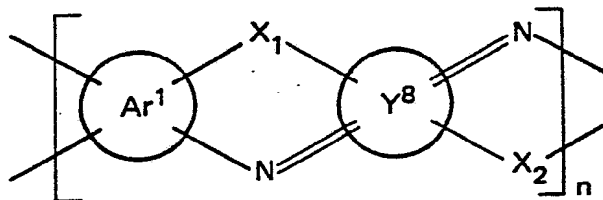
15. A composition according to Claim 6 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

10



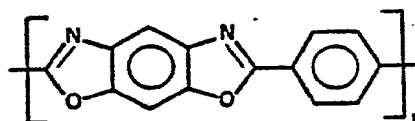
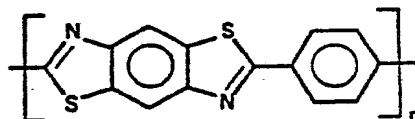
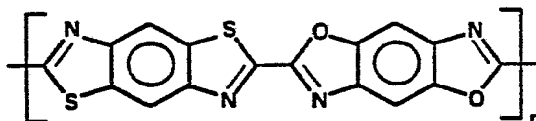
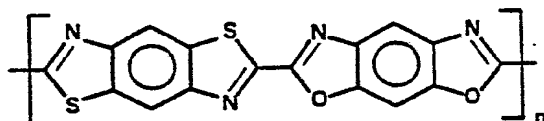
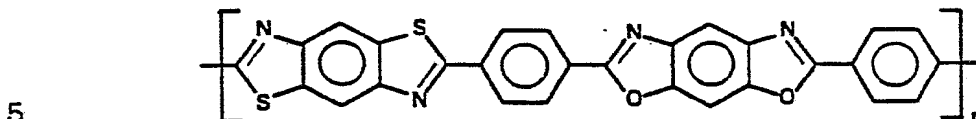
VII.

16. A composition according to Claim 6 wherein said extended chain polymer is a homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

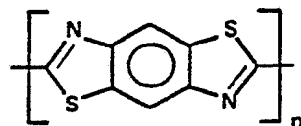
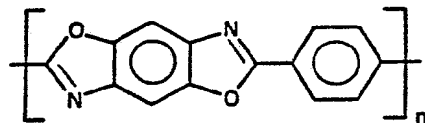


VIII.

17. A composition of claim 8, wherein said formula I extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formulas:

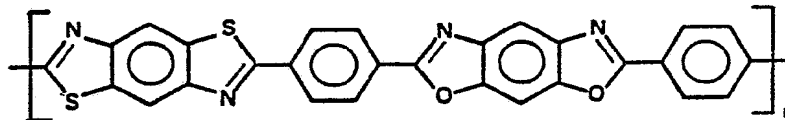


433



wherein n is at least greater than 30.

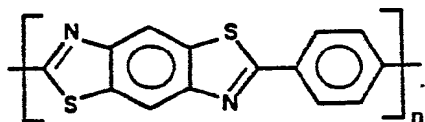
18. A composition of claim 8, wherein said  
 5 formula I extended chain polymer includes at  
 least one homopolymer having the recurring units  
 of the formula:



wherein n is at least greater than 30.

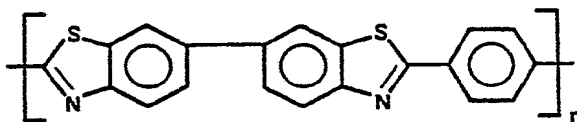
- 10 19. A composition of claim 8, wherein said  
 formula I extended chain polymer includes at  
 least one homopolymer having the recurring units  
 of the formula:

434



wherein n is at least greater than 110.

20. A composition of claim 8, wherein said  
formula I extended chain polymer includes at  
least one homopolymer having the recurring units  
of the formula:

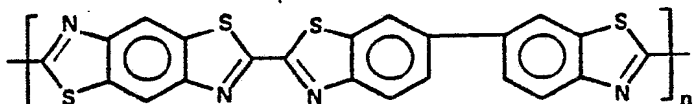
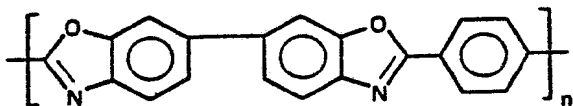
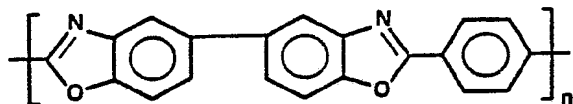
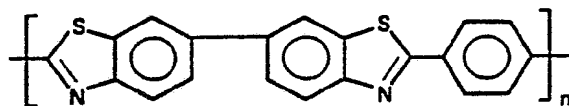
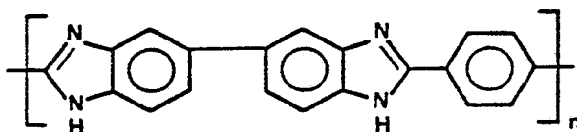


wherein n is at least greater than 60 and said  
composition is characterized as having a total polymer  
concentration of at least greater than about 18 percent  
by weight based on the total weight of said  
composition.

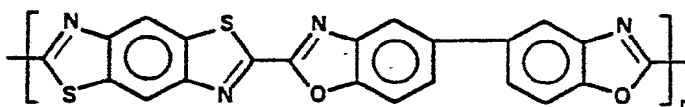
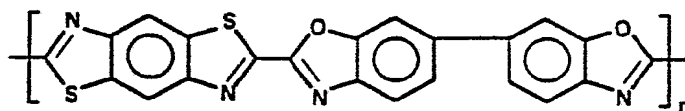


21. A composition of claim 8, wherein said formula I extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formulas:

5

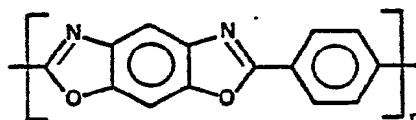


436



wherein  $n$  is at least greater than 50 and said composition is characterized as having a total polymer concentration of at least greater than about 18 percent by weight based on the total weight of said composition.

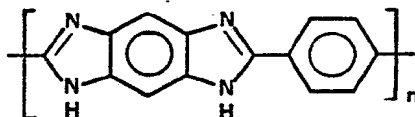
22. A composition of claim 9, wherein said formula I extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formula:



wherein  $n$  is at least greater than 70.

23. A composition of claim 9, wherein said formula I extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formula:

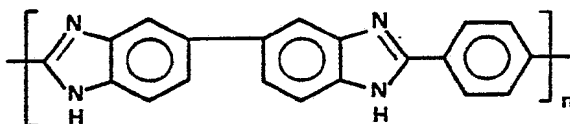
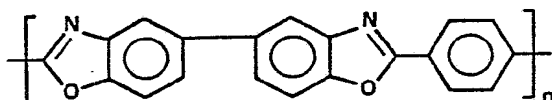
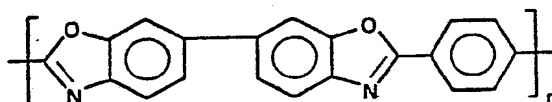
5



wherein n is at least greater than 60.

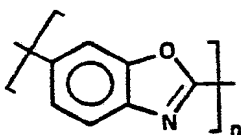
24. A composition of claim 9, wherein said formula I extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formulas:

10



wherein n is at least greater than 60 and said composition is characterized as having a total polymer concentration of at least greater than about 18 percent by weight based on the total weight of said composition.

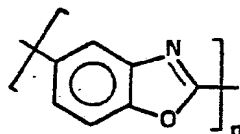
25. A composition of claim 10, wherein said formula II extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formula:



wherein n is at least greater than 60.

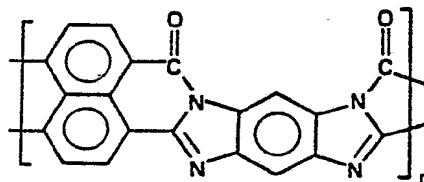
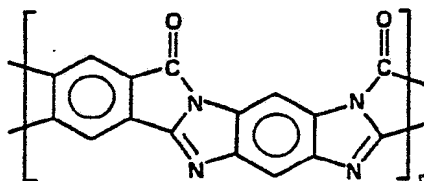
26. A composition of claim 10, wherein said

formula II extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formula:



5 wherein n is at least greater than 60.

27. A composition of claim 11, wherein said formula III extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formulas:

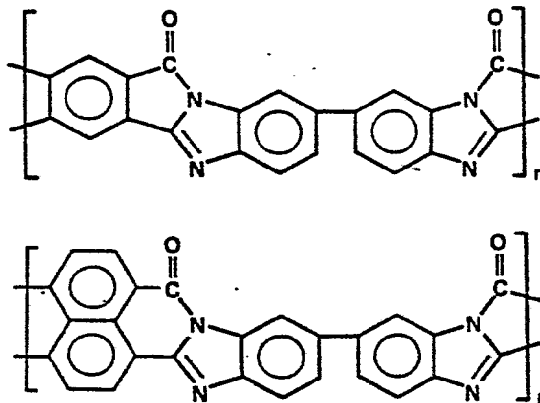


10 wherein n is at least greater than 50.

440

28. A composition of claim 11, wherein said formula III extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formulas:

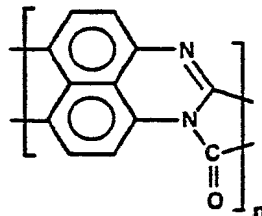
5



wherein n is at least greater than 60.

29. A composition of claim 12, wherein said formula IV extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formula:

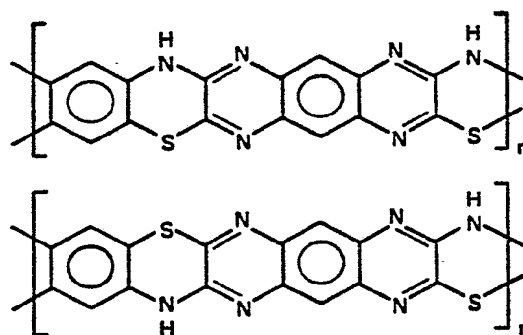
10



441

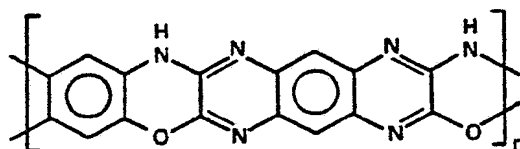
wherein n is at least greater than 70.

30. A composition of claim 13, wherein said  
formula V extended chain polymer includes at  
least one homopolymer having an equal mixture of  
5 isomeric recurring units of the formulas:

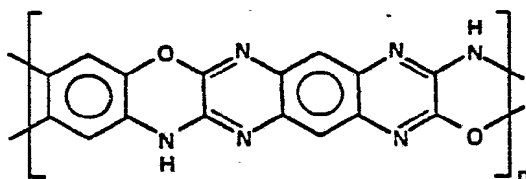


wherein n is at least greater than 30.

31. A composition of claim 13, wherein said  
10 formula V extended chain polymer includes at  
least one homopolymer having an equal mixture of  
isomeric recurring units of the formulas:

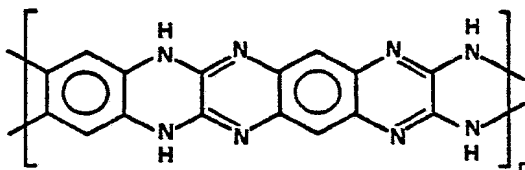


442



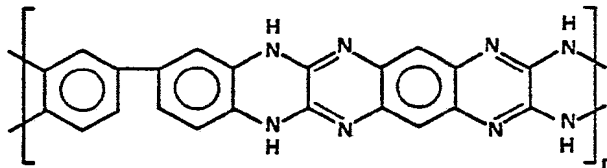
wherein n is at least greater than 30.

32. A composition of claim 13, wherein said  
formula V extended chain polymer includes at  
least one homopolymer having the recurring units  
of the formula:



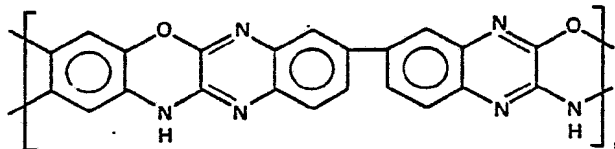
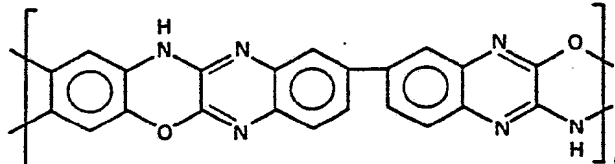
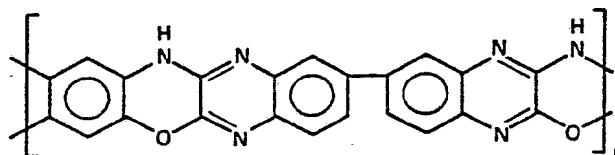
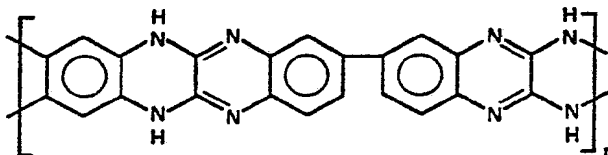
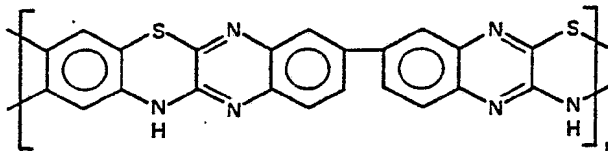
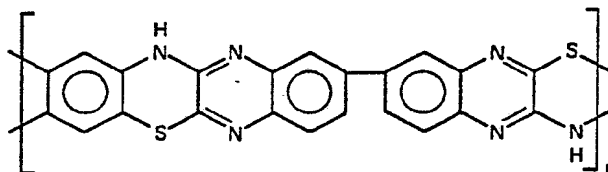
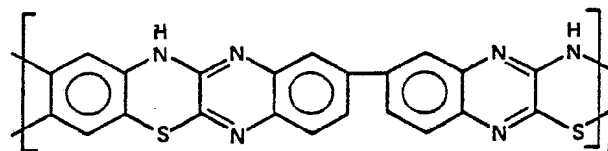
wherein n is at least greater than 30.

33. A composition of claim 13, wherein said  
formula V extended chain polymer includes at  
least one homopolymer having the recurring units  
of the formulas:



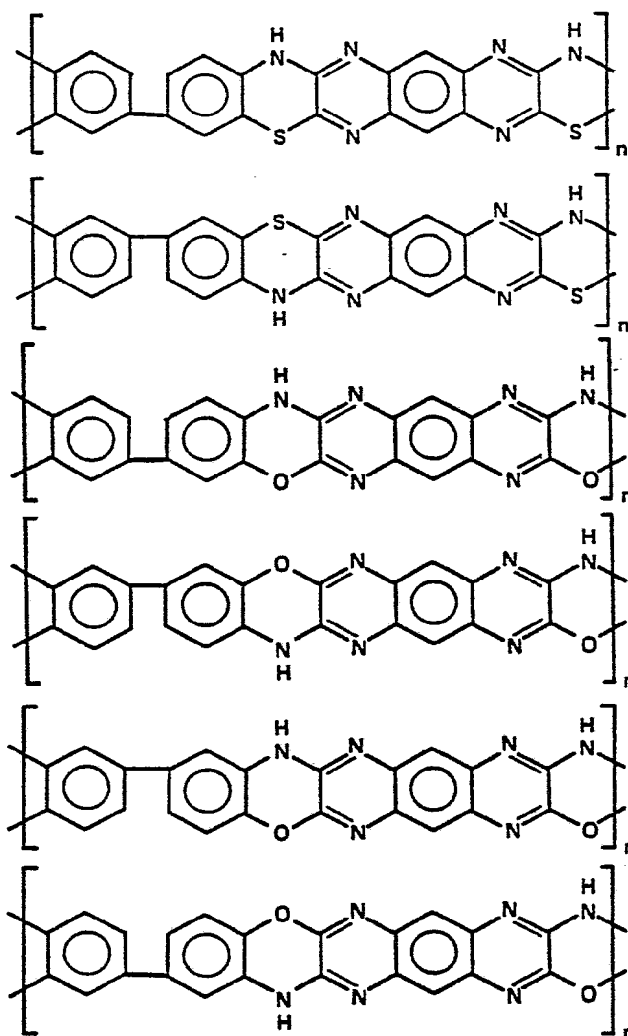


443



5

444

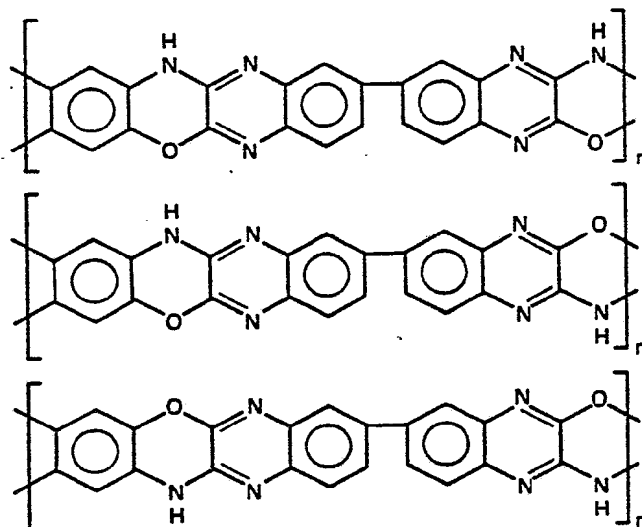


5

wherein  $n$  is at least greater than 30.

34. A composition of claim 13, wherein said formula V extended chain polymer includes at

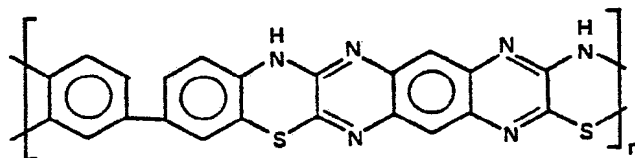
least one homopolymer having a mixture of isomeric recurring units of the formulas:



wherein n is at least greater than 30.

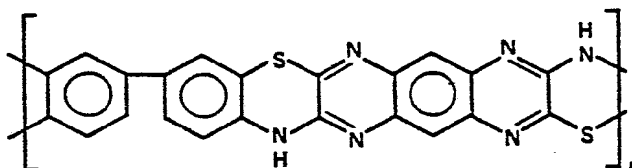
35. A composition of claim 13, wherein said formula V extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having a mixture of isomeric recurring units of the formulas:

10



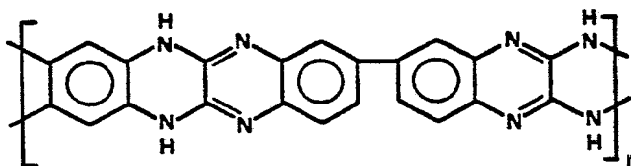
446

5



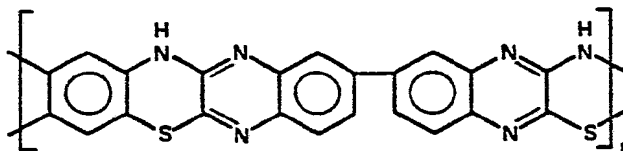
wherein  $n$  is at least greater than 30.

36. A composition of claim 13, wherein said formula V extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formula:

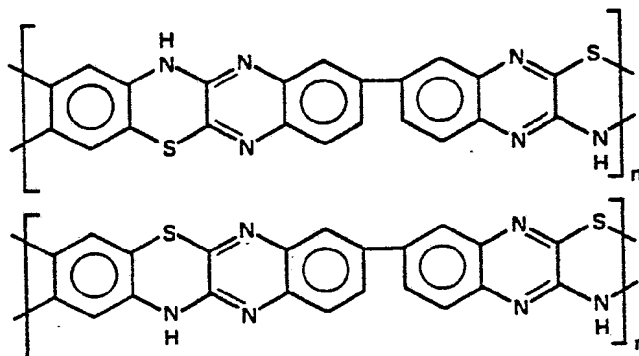


wherein  $n$  is at least greater than 30.

37. A composition of claim 13, wherein said formula V extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formulas:

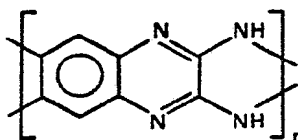


447



wherein n is at least greater than 30.

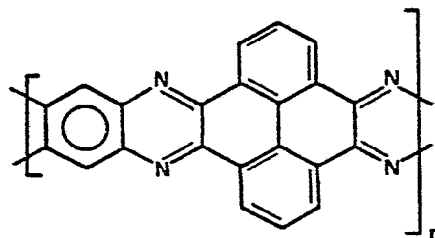
38. A composition of claim 14, wherein said  
 5 formula VI extended chain polymer includes at  
 least one homopolymer having the recurring units  
 of the formula:



wherein n is at least greater than 30.

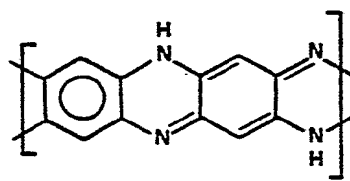
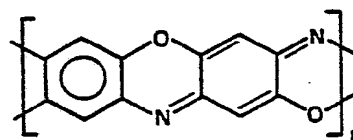
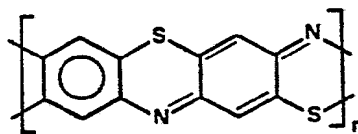
10 39. A composition of claim 15, wherein said  
 formula VII extended chain polymer includes at  
 least one homopolymer having the recurring units  
 of the formula:

448



wherein n is at least greater than 30.

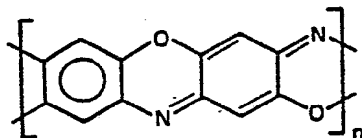
40. A composition of claim 16, wherein said  
formula VIII extended chain polymer includes at  
least one homopolymer having the recurring units  
of the formulas:



- 10 wherein n is at least greater than 40.

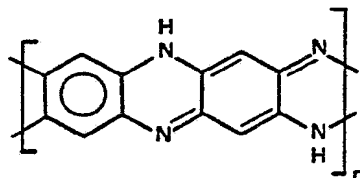
41. A composition of claim 16, wherein said

formula VIII extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formula:



5 wherein n is at least greater than 30.

42. A composition of claim 16, wherein said formula VIII extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formula:



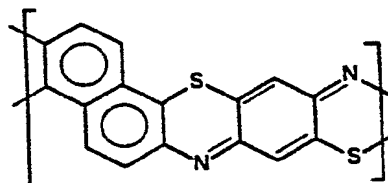
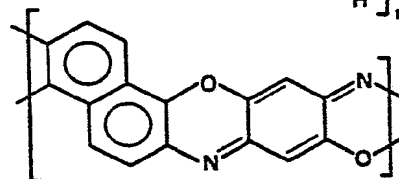
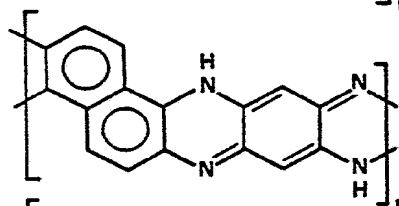
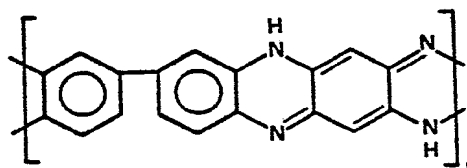
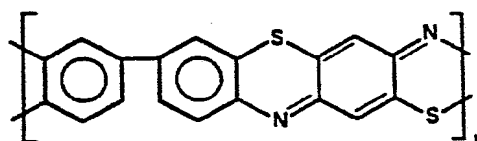
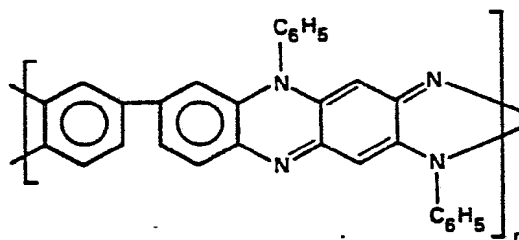
10

wherein n is at least greater than 30.

43. A composition of claim 16, wherein said formula VIII extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units

450

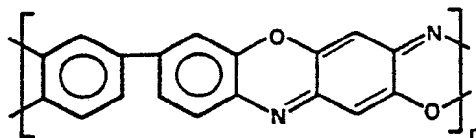
of the formulas:



5

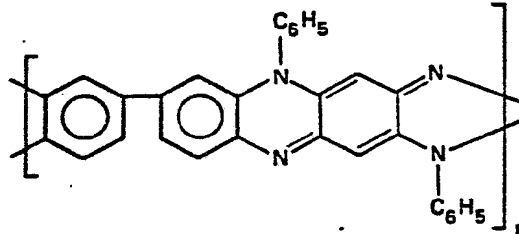
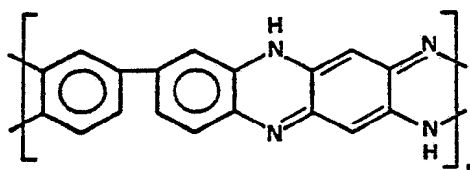
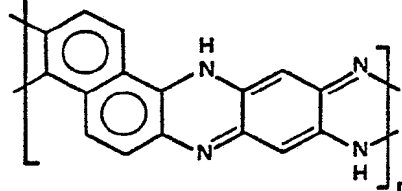
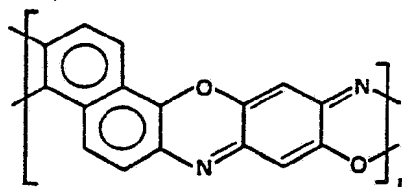


451



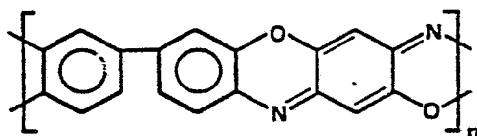
wherein  $n$  is at least greater than 30.

44. A composition of claim 16, wherein said formula VIII extended chain polymer includes at least one homopolymer having the recurring units of the formulas:



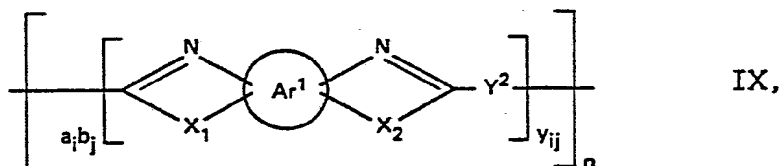
10

452

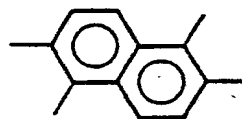
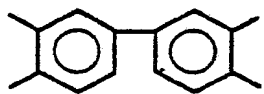
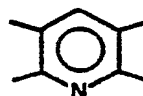
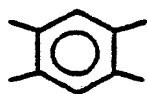


wherein  $n$  is at least greater than 30.

45. A composition according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 409, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the general formulas:

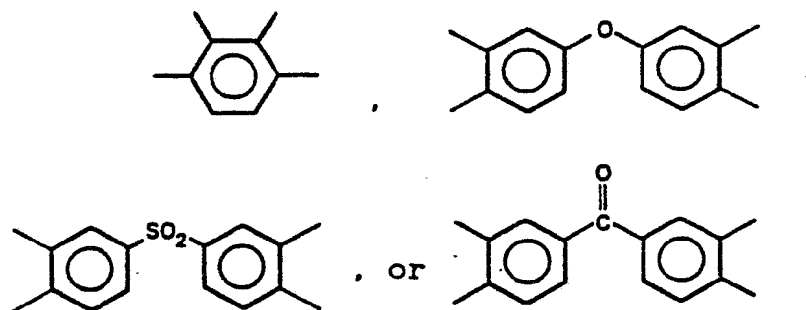


wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



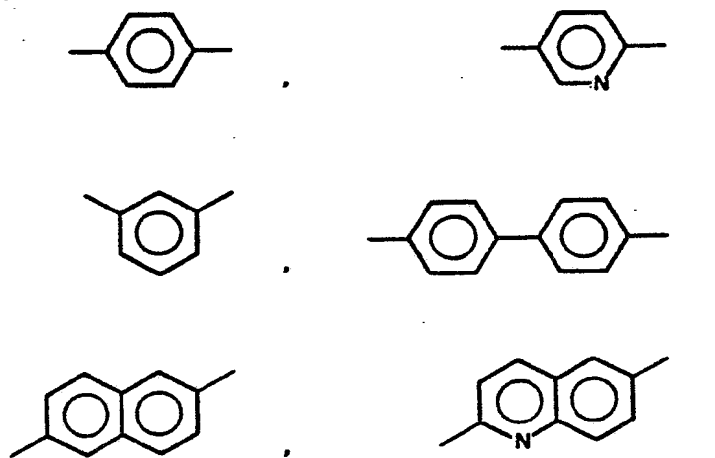
10

453

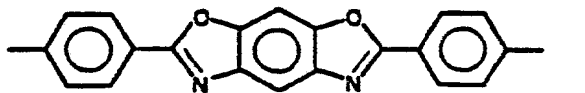
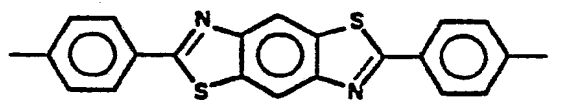
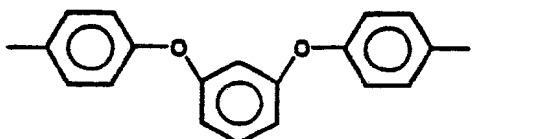
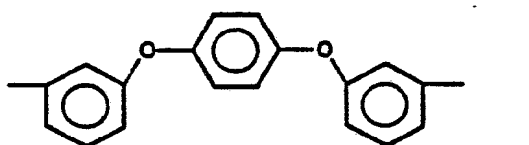
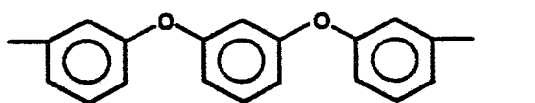
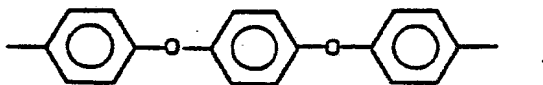
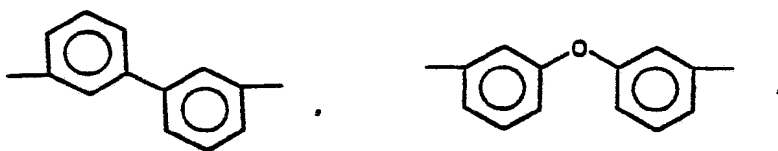


5  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is

10

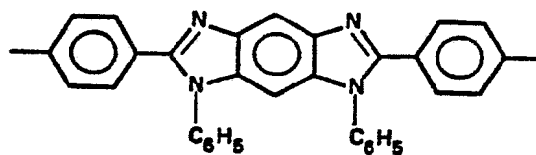
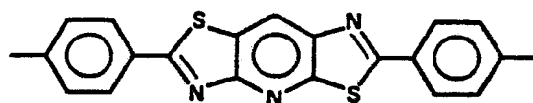
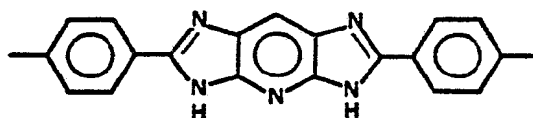
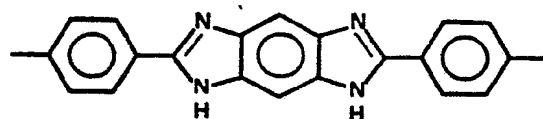
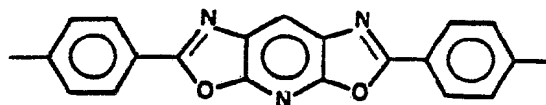
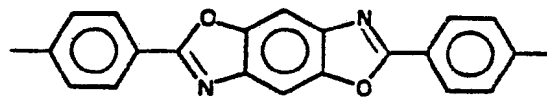


454



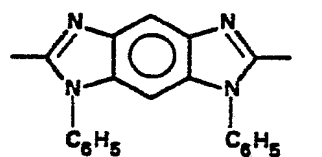
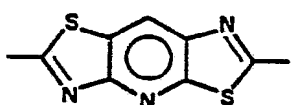
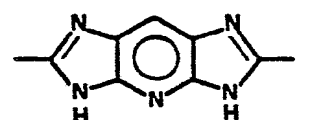
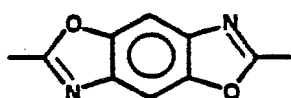
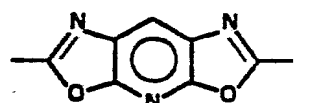
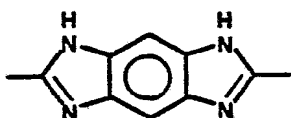
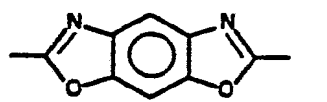
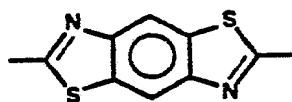
5

455

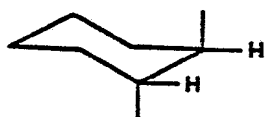
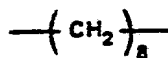
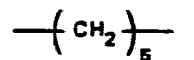
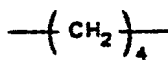
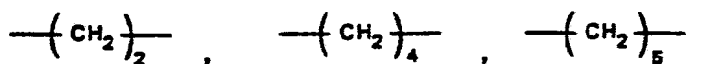


5

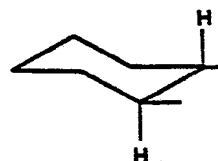
456



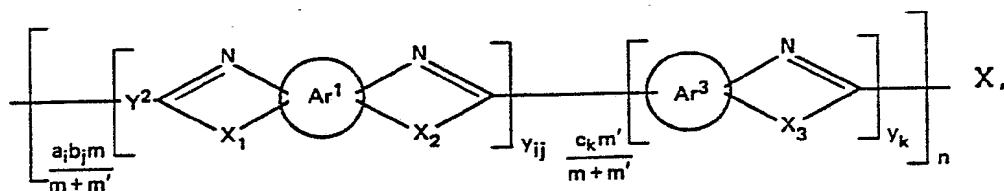
5



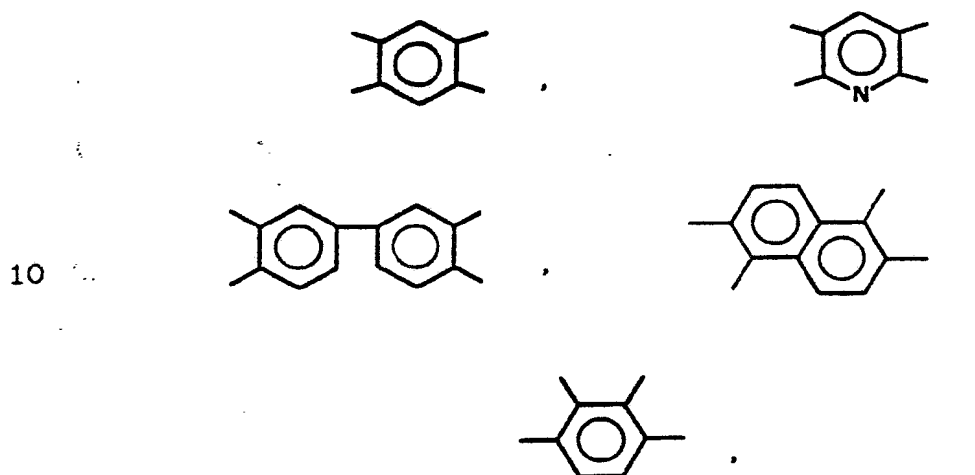
, or



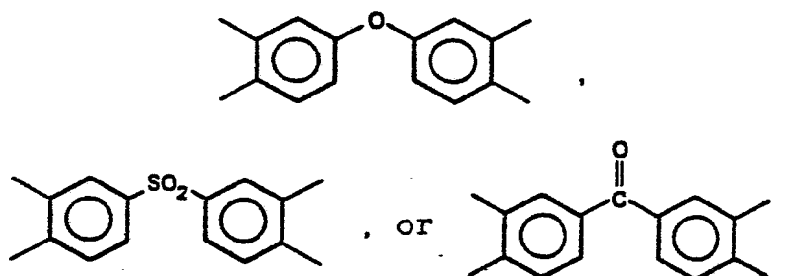
$a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the  
 respective different recurring units present in  
 said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number  
 of the respective different sequential recurring  
 units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a  
 positive integer;



wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

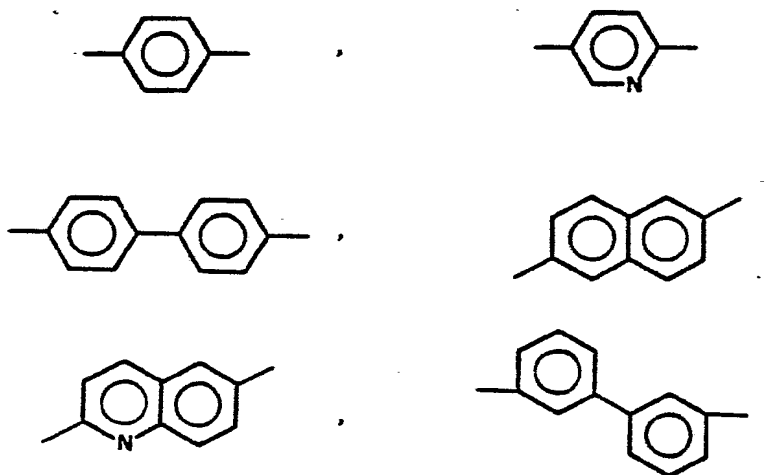


458



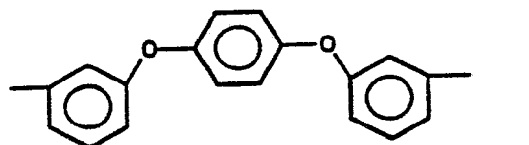
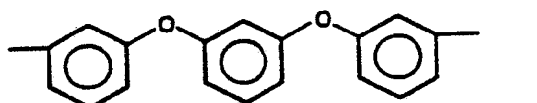
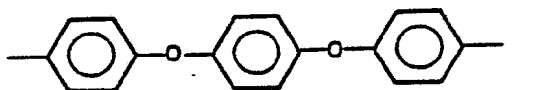
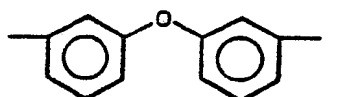
$X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is

10

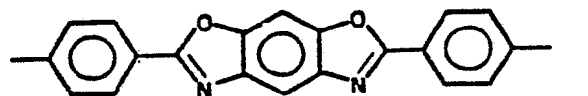
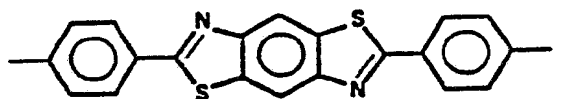
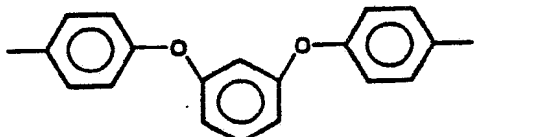




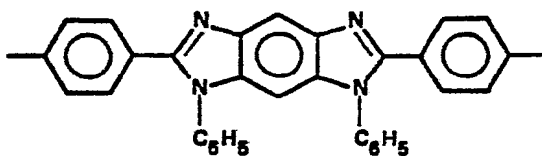
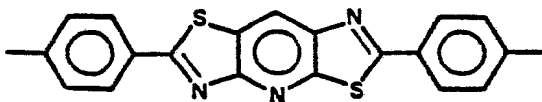
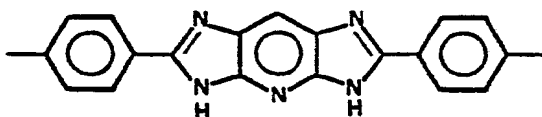
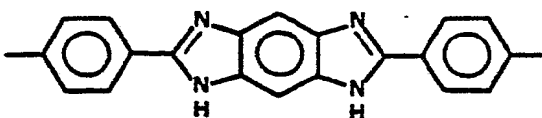
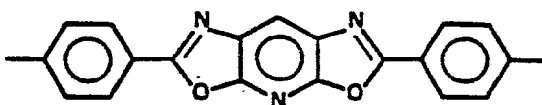
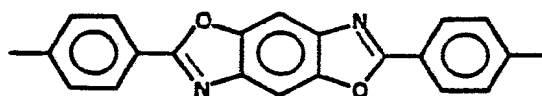
459



5

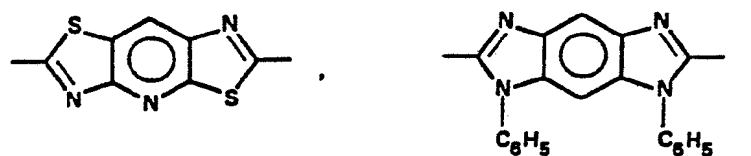
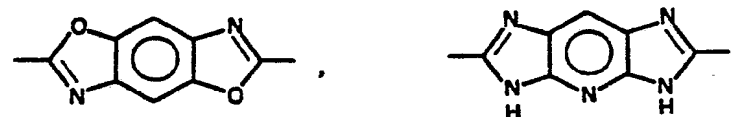


460

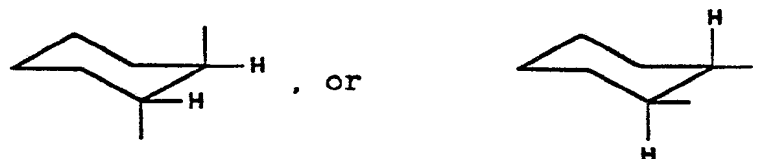
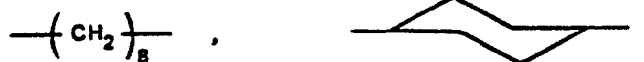
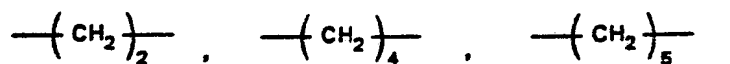


5

461

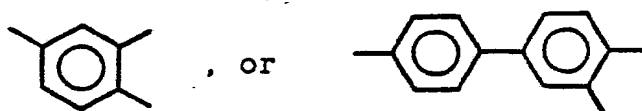


5

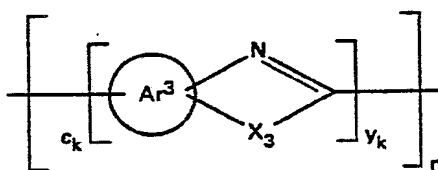


462

$a_i b_j m / m + m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $Ar^3$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is



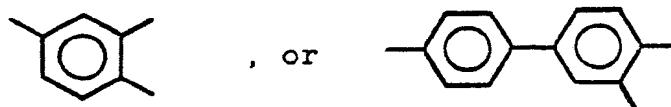
the nitrogen atom and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^3$ ,  $c_k m' / m + m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



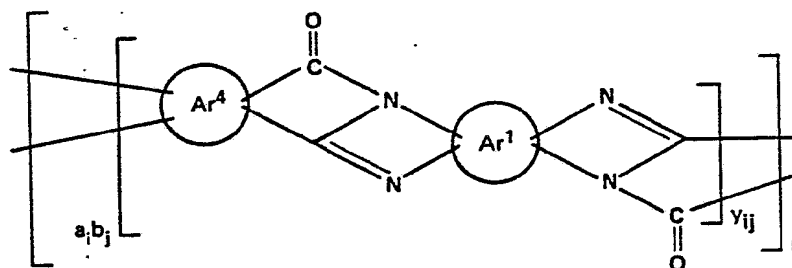
XI.

463

wherein  $\text{Ar}^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



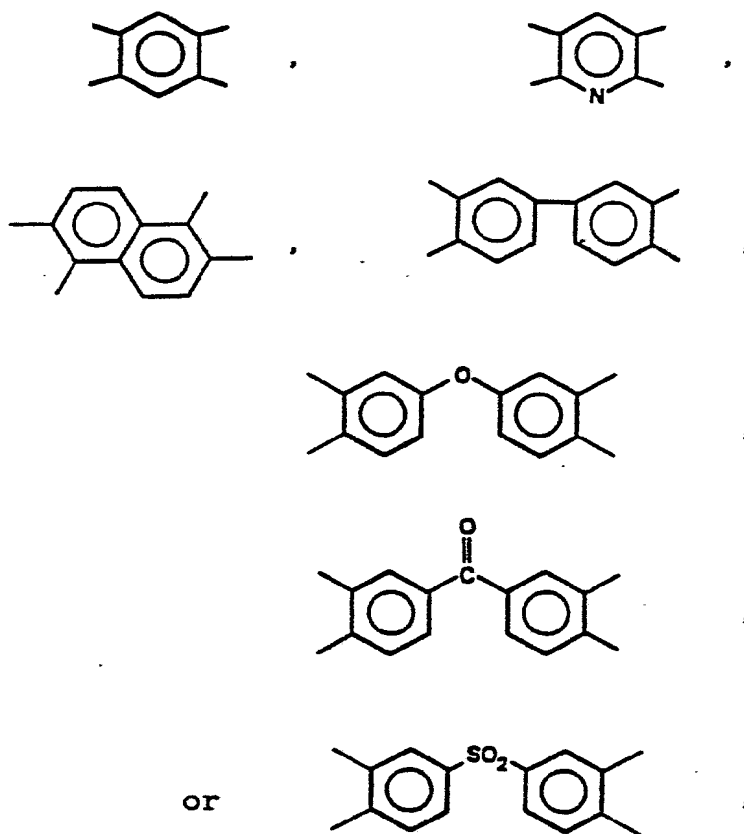
$\text{X}_3$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $\text{X}_3$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^3$ , N and  $\text{X}_3$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $c_k$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer, n being a positive integer;



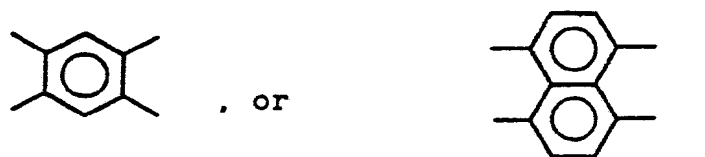
XII.

wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

464

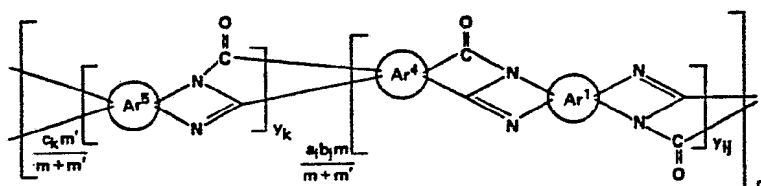


Ar<sup>4</sup> represents a different aromatic moiety and is



465

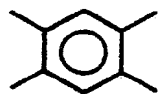
the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $Ar^1$  and the carbon atoms being bonded to  $Ar^4$ ,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



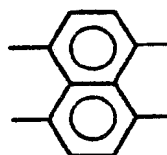
XV,

wherein  $Ar^4$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

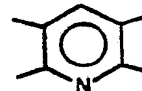
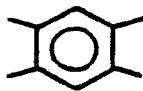
10



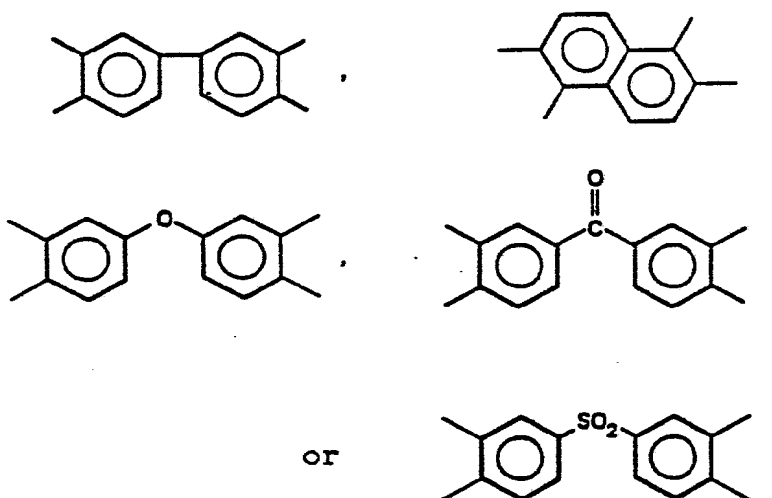
or



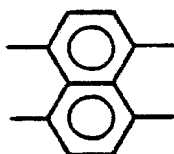
$Ar^1$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is



466



5 and  $\text{Ar}^5$  represents an aromatic moiety different from  $\text{Ar}^4$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$  and is

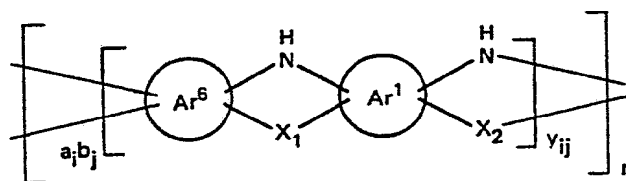


10 the carbon atoms being bonded to  $\text{Ar}^4$  and  $\text{Ar}^5$  and the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $\text{Ar}^1$  and  $\text{Ar}^5$ ,  $n$  being a positive integer;  $c_k m' / m + m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective



467

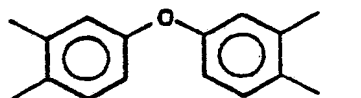
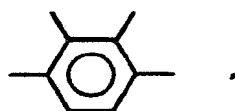
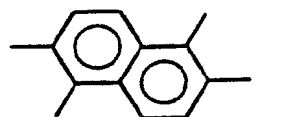
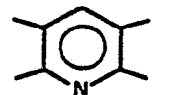
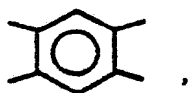
different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $a_i b_j m / m + m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



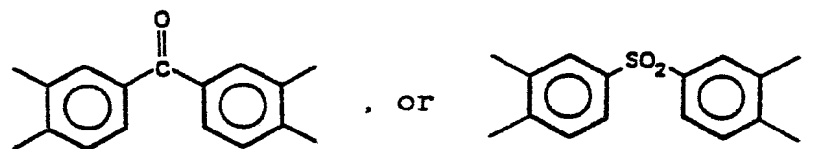
XVI,

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

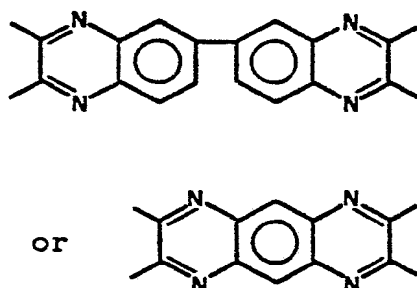
10



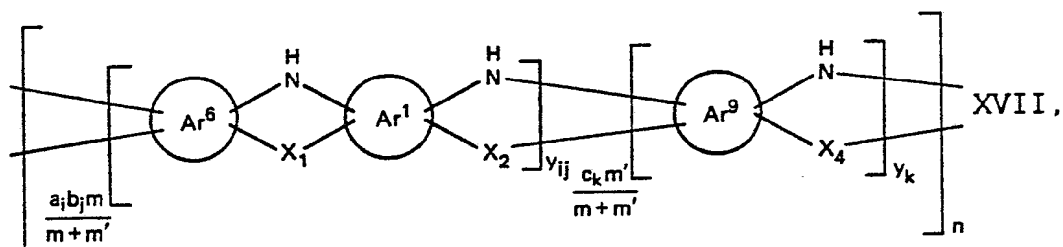
468



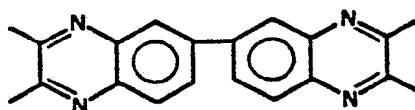
$\text{Ar}^6$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is



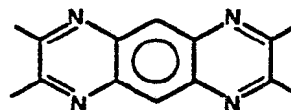
- 5  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^6$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$ , NH and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed
- 10 ortho to one another,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said
- 15 copolymer, n being a positive integer;



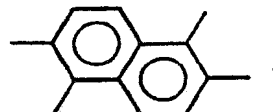
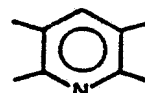
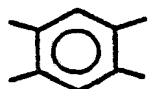
wherein  $\text{Ar}^6$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



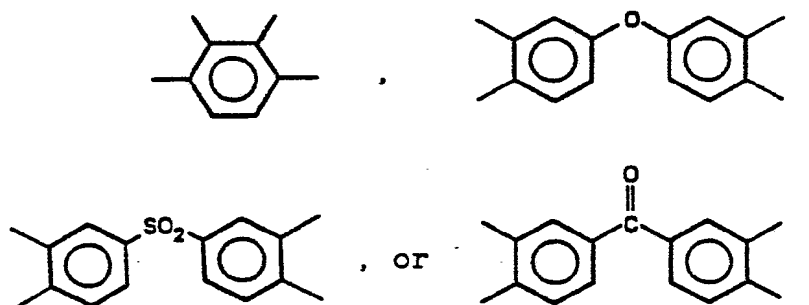
or



5  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is

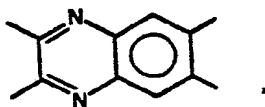


470



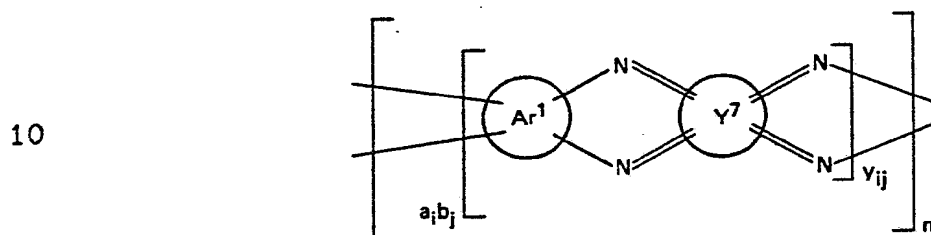
$X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are  
 sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an  
 organic group), the NH groups and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being  
 5 bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^6$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$ ,  
 NH and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed  
 ortho to one another,  $a_i b_j m/m+m'$  represents the  
 molar proportions of the respective different  
 10 recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$   
 represents an average number of the respective  
 different sequential recurring units present in  
 said copolymer,  $\text{Ar}^9$  represents an aromatic moiety  
 different from  $\text{Ar}^6$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$  and is

15



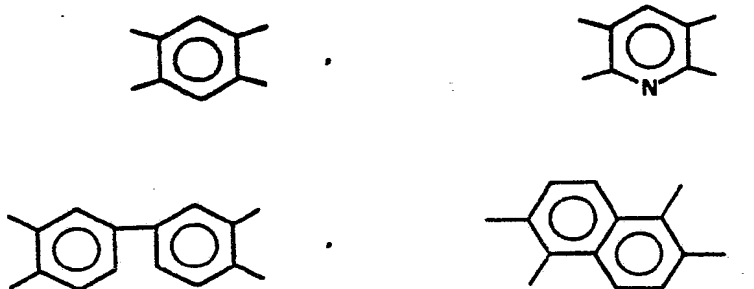
471

- 5  $X_4$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_4$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^9$ ,  $c_{k,m'}/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer, n being a positive integer;

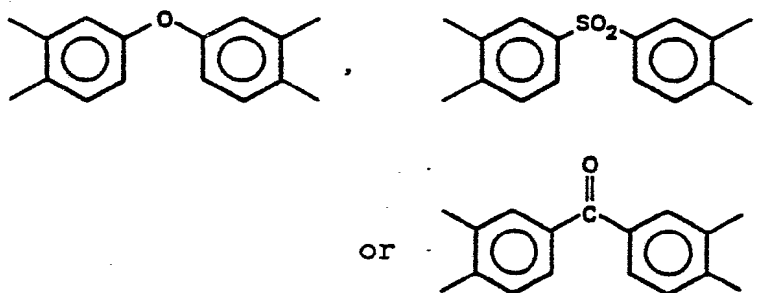


XVIII.

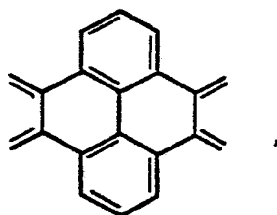
wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



472



$Y^7$  represents an aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety and is



5

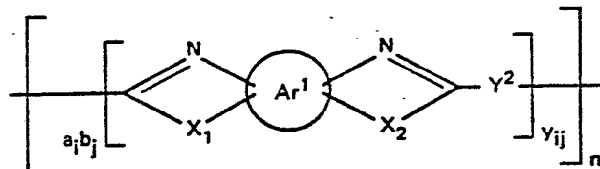
the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$  and bonded to adjacent carbon atoms of  $Y^7$ ,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said copolymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said copolymer,  $n$  being a positive integer.

10

473

46. A composition according to claim 45 wherein said extended chain polymer is a copolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

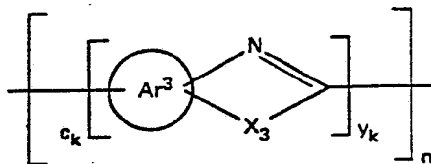
5



IX.

47. A composition according to claim 45 wherein said extended chain polymer is a copolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

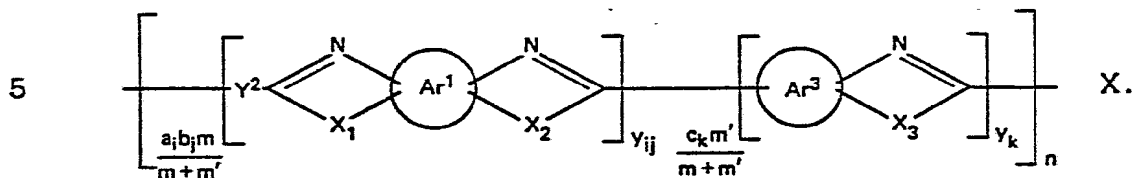
10



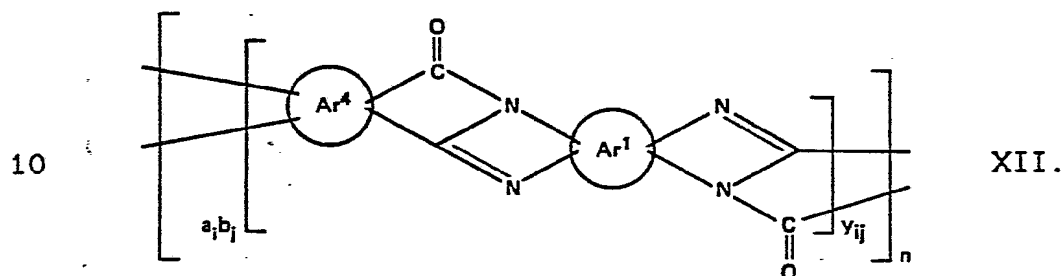
XI.

474

48. A composition according to claim 45 wherein said extended chain polymer is a copolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

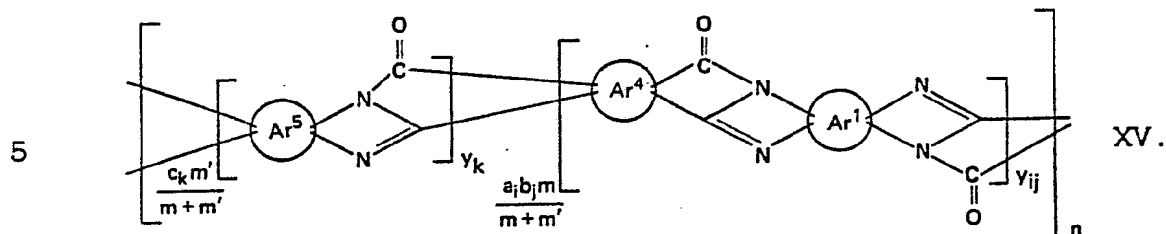


49. A composition according to claim 45 wherein said extended chain polymer is a copolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

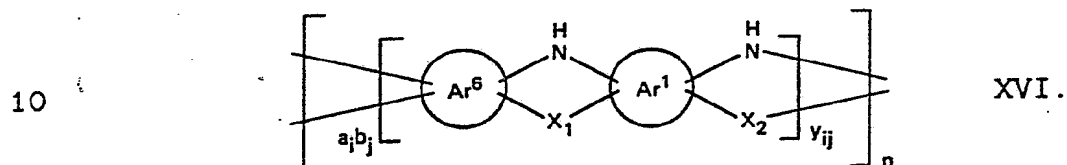




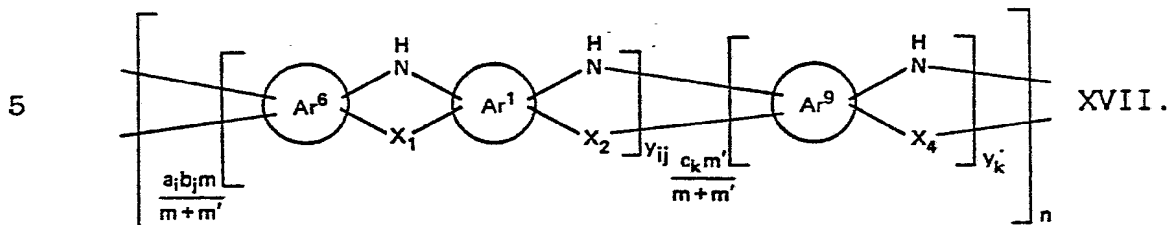
50. A composition according to claim 45 wherein said extended chain polymer is a copolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:



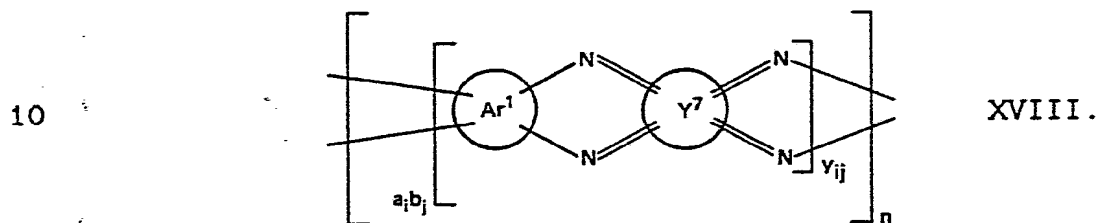
51. A composition according to claim 45 wherein said extended chain polymer is a copolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:



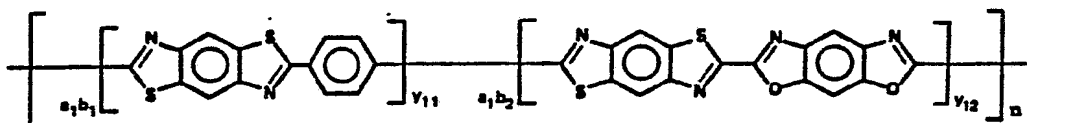
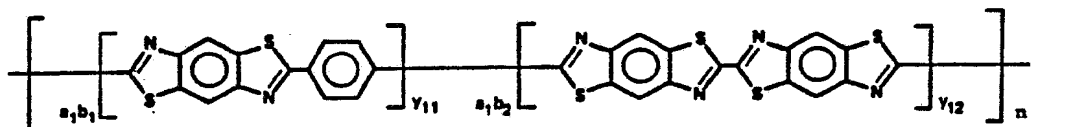
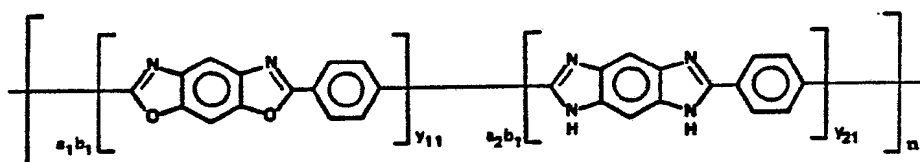
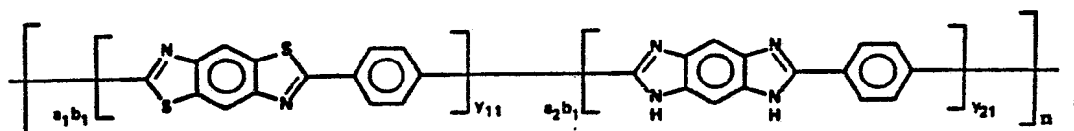
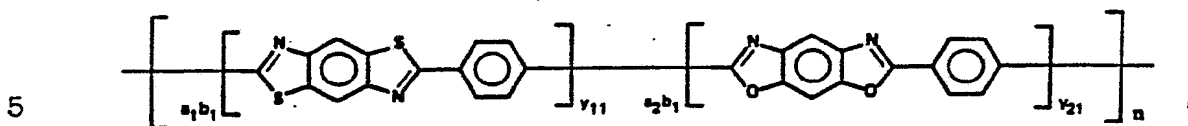
52. A composition according to claim 45 wherein said extended chain polymer is a copolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:



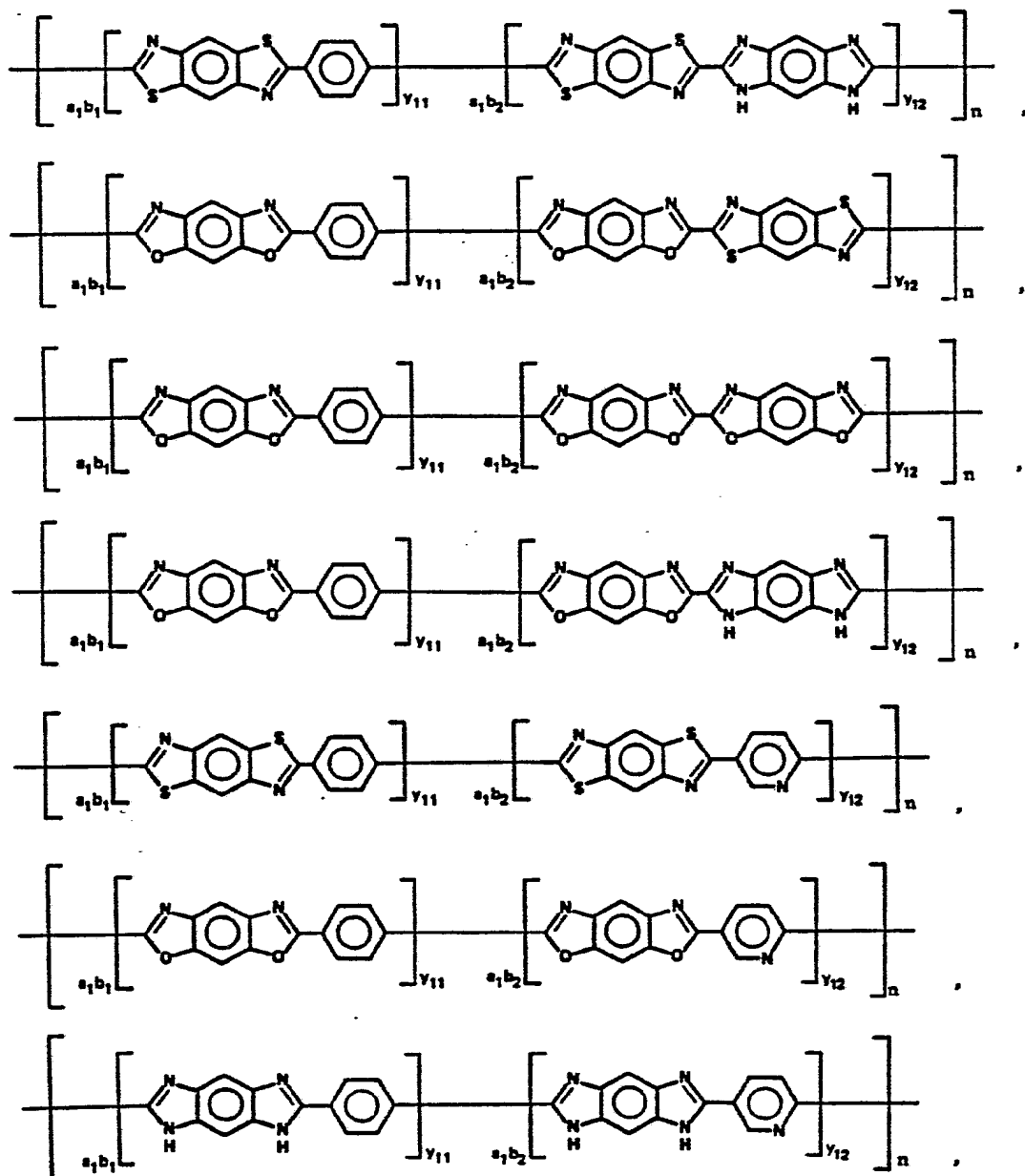
53. A composition according to claim 45 wherein said extended chain polymer is a copolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

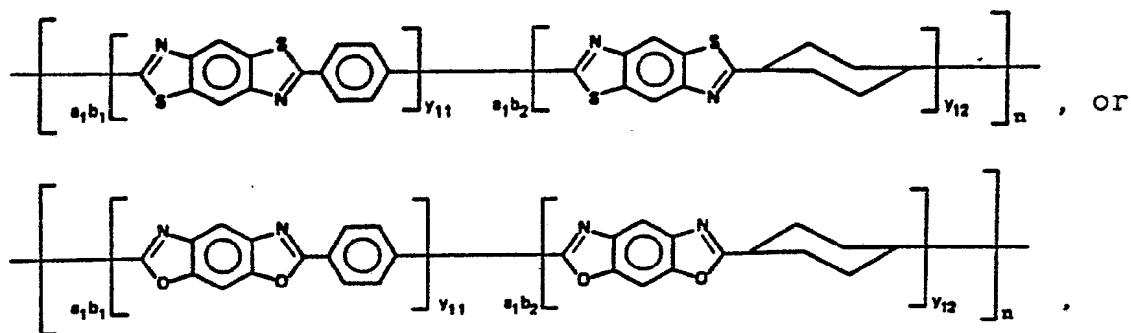


54. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



478

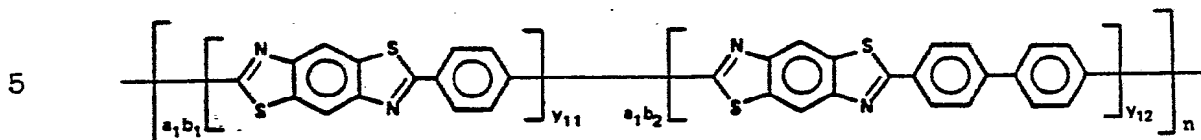




wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_1b_2$  or  $a_2b_1$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between zero and about one,  $a_1b_2$  or  $a_2b_1$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about one and less than about 75,  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  being at least greater than one and less than about 75,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 50 and less than about 150; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 7 weight percent.

480

55. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

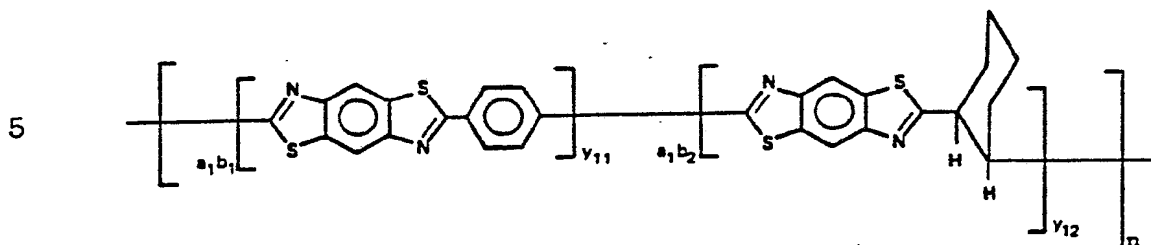


wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_1b_2$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.9 and one,  $a_1b_2$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about 10,  $y_{12}$  being about one,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 150; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 7 weight percent.

10

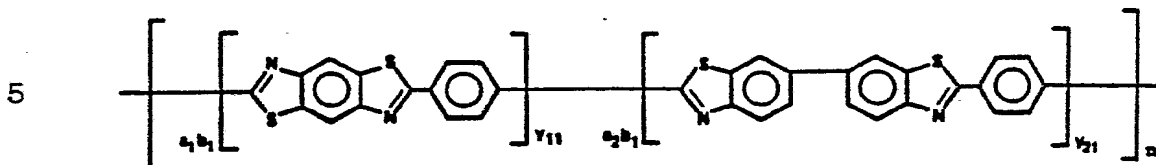
15

56. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_1b_2$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.95 and 1,  $a_1b_2$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about 20,  $y_{12}$  being about one,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 150; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

57. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



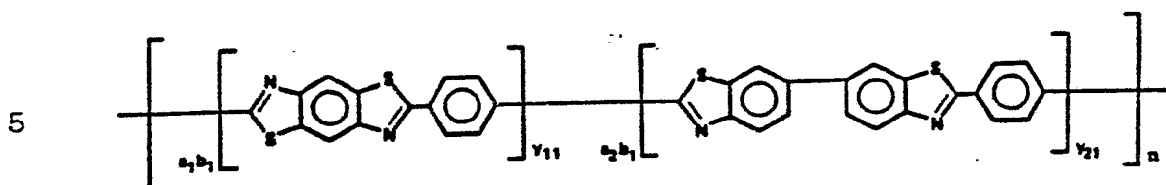
wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_2b_1$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between zero and about one,  $a_2b_1$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{21}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about one,  $y_{21}$  being about one,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 150; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

10

15



58. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

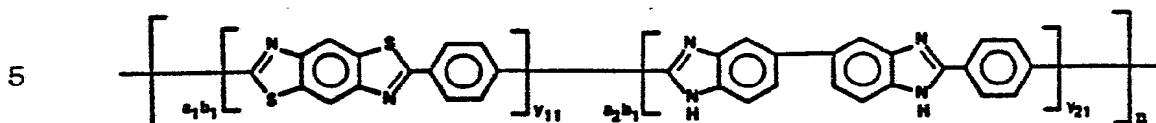


wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_2b_1$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.75 and one,  $a_2b_1$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{21}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about 4,  $y_{21}$  being about 1.3,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 150; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

10

15

59. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

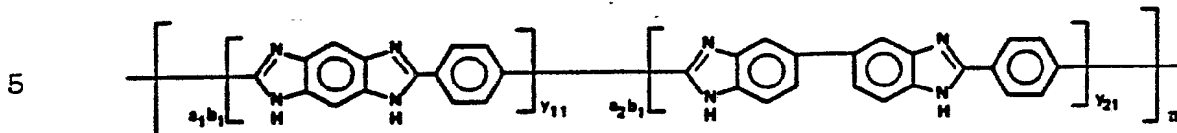


wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_2b_1$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.75 and one,  $a_2b_1$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{21}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about 4,  $y_{12}$  being about 1.3,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 150; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

10

15

60. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

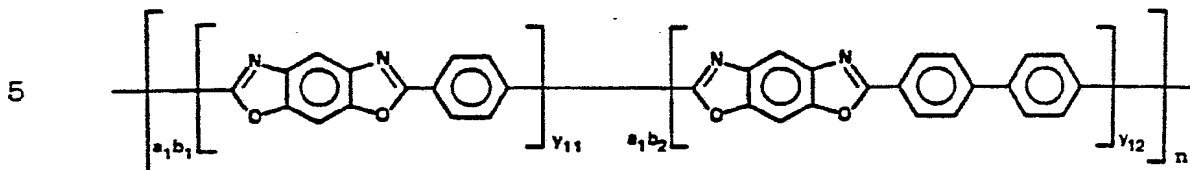


wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_2b_1$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.8 and one,  $a_2b_1$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{21}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about 5,  $y_{21}$  being about 1.2,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 120; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 12 weight percent.

10

15

61. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

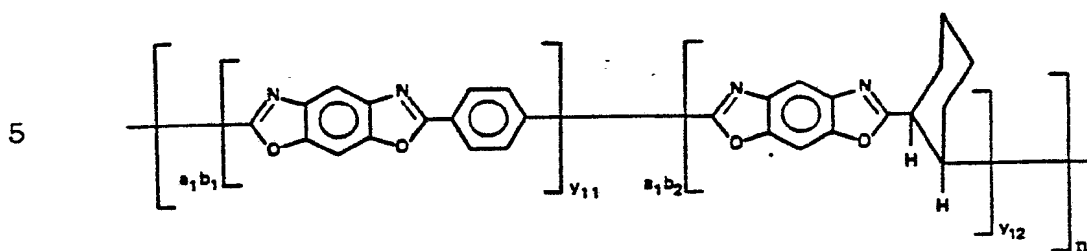


wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_1b_2$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.9 and one,  $a_1b_2$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about 10,  $y_{12}$  being about one,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 100; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 12 weight percent.

10

15

62. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

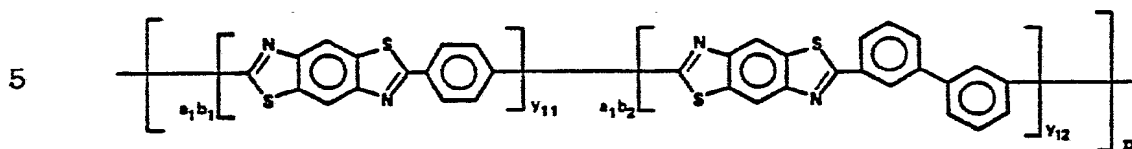


wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_1b_2$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.95 and one,  $a_1b_2$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about 20,  $y_{12}$  being about one,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 100; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 12 weight percent.

10

15

63. A composition of claim 46, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

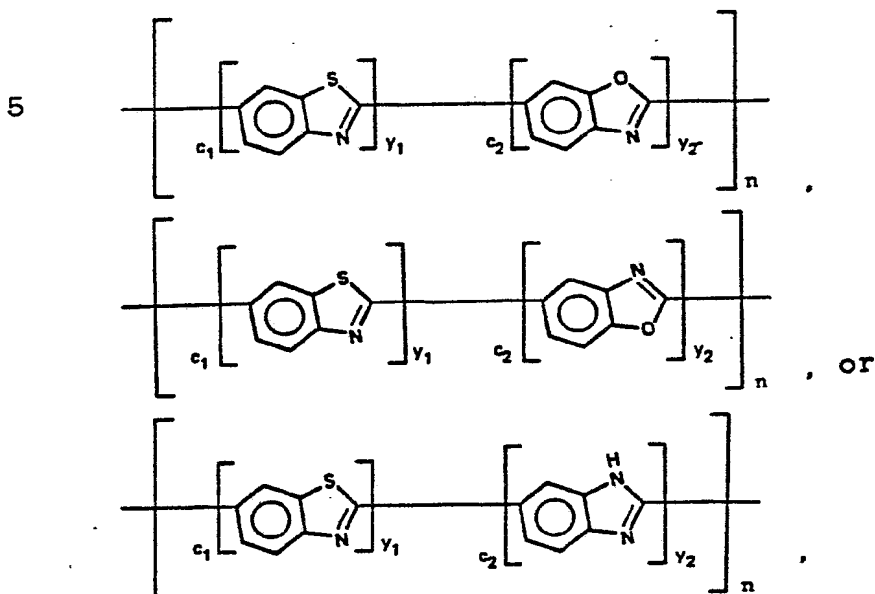


wherein  $a_1b_1$  and  $a_1b_2$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.9 and one,  $a_1b_2$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least about 10,  $y_{12}$  being about one,  $n$  being at least about 50 and less than about 150; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

10

15

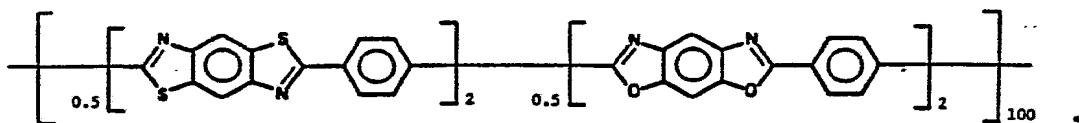
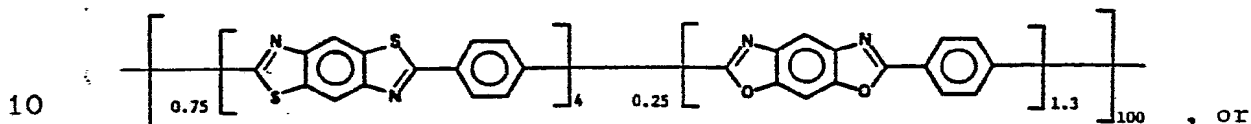
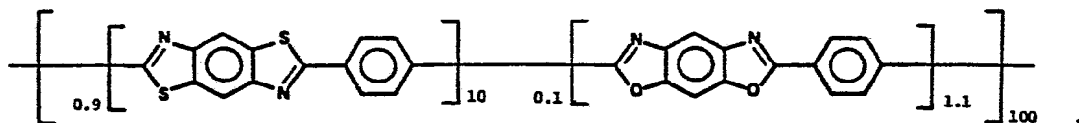
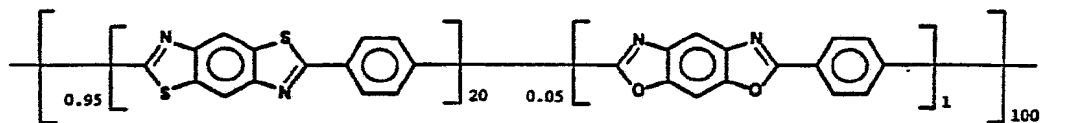
64. A composition of claim 47, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



10 wherein  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $c_1$  being between about 0.75 and one,  $c_2$  being equal to  $1-c_1$ ; wherein  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_1$  being at least about 4,  $y_2$  being about 1.3,  $n$  being at least about 50 and

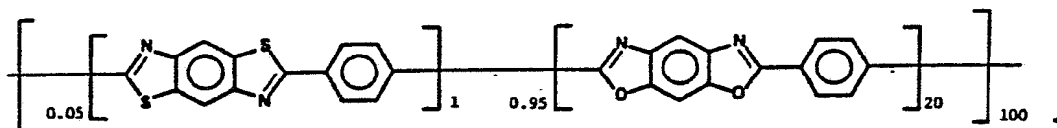
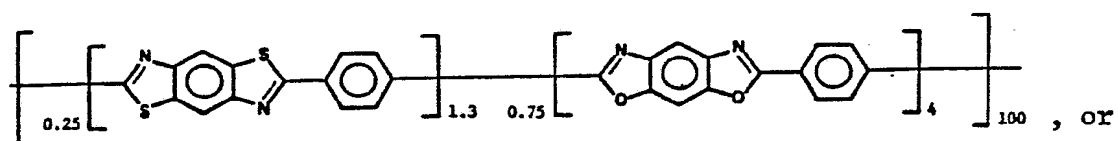
less than about 200; and said copolymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 18 weight percent.

5 65. A composition of claim 54, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:

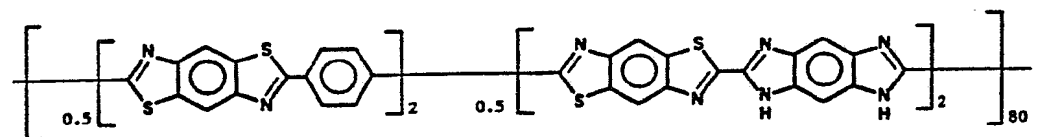
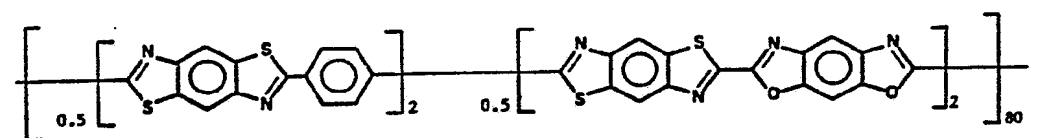
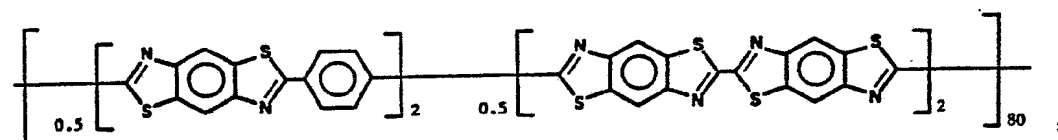




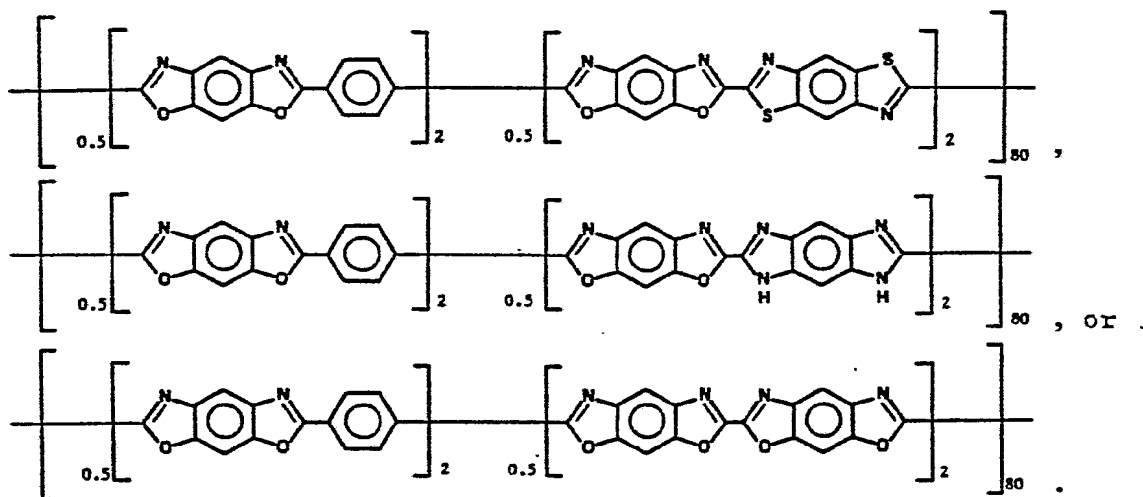
491



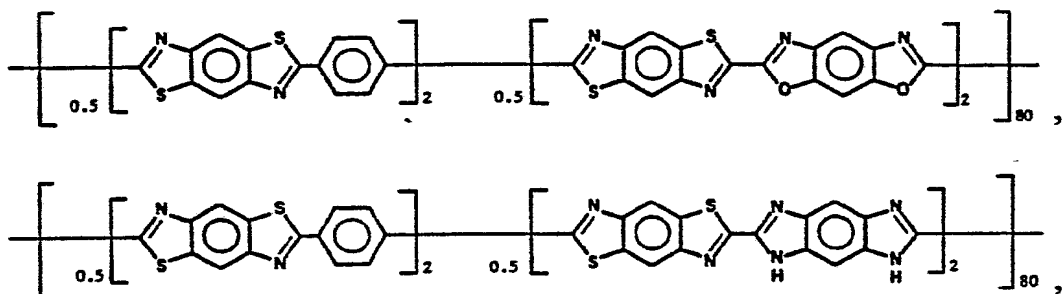
66. A composition of claim 54, wherein said  
 extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 5 copolymer selected from the group consisting of  
 recurring units of the formulas:



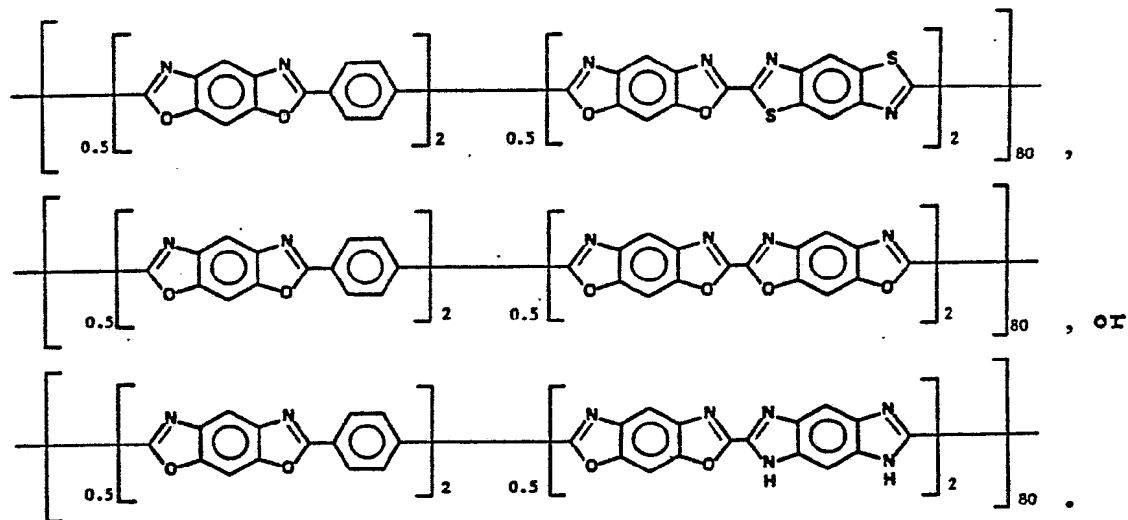
492



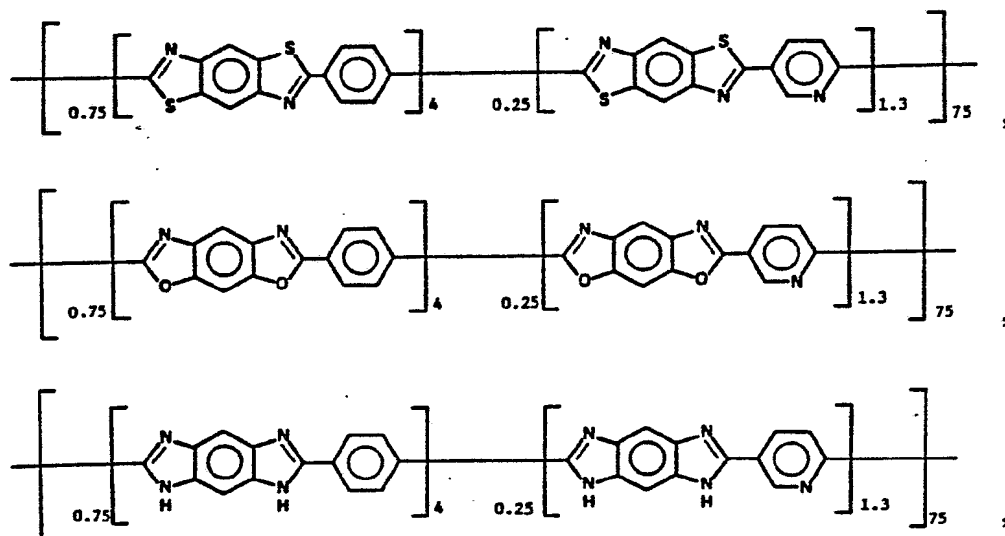
67. A composition of claim 54, wherein said  
 5 extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 copolymer selected from the group consisting of  
 recurring units of the formulas:



493

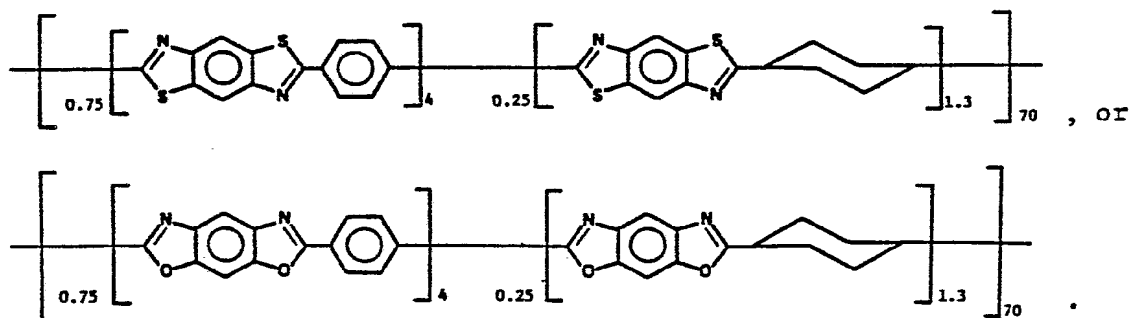


68. A composition of claim 54, wherein said  
 5 extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 copolymer selected from the group consisting of  
 recurring units of the formulas:

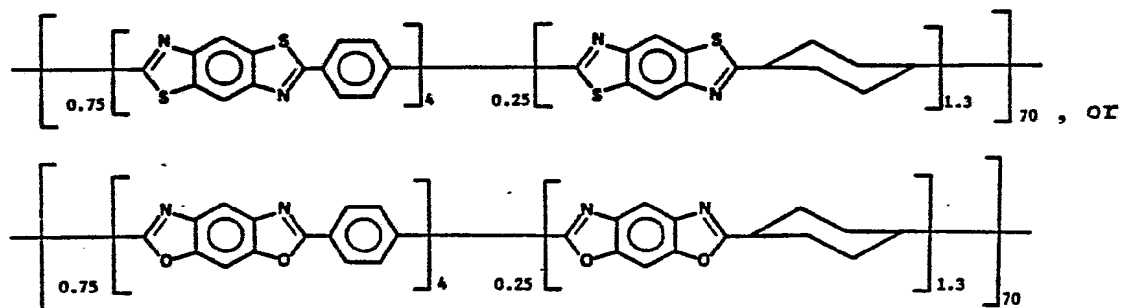


10

494



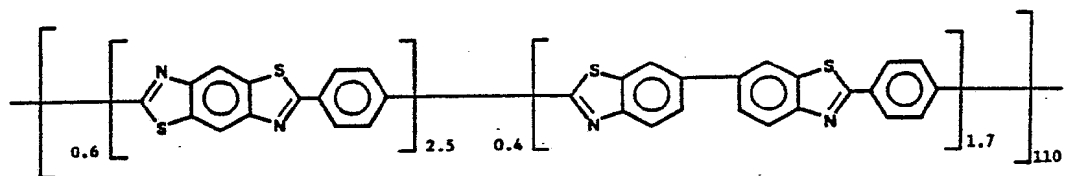
69. A composition of claim 54, wherein said  
 extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 5 copolymer selected from the group consisting of  
 recurring units of the formulas:



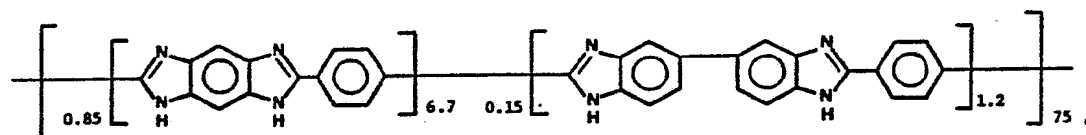
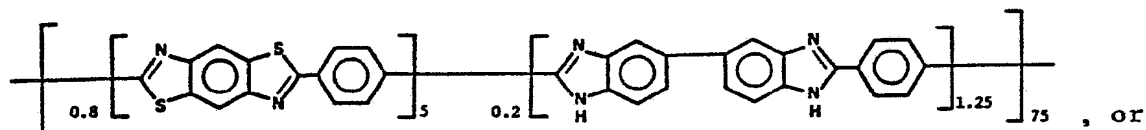
70. A composition of claim 57, wherein said  
 10 extended chain polymer includes at least one

495

copolymer selected from the group consisting of  
recurring units of the formula:



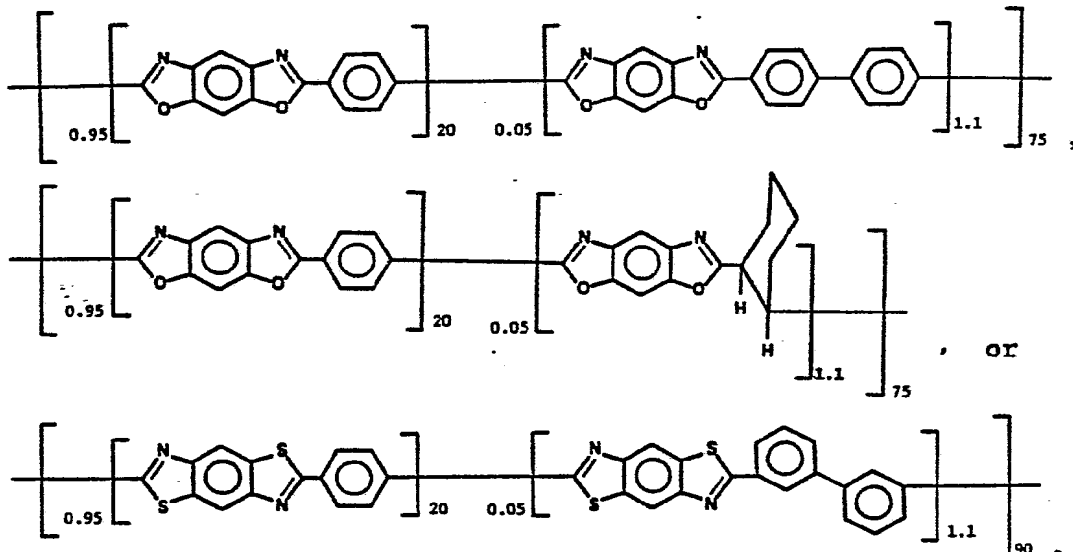
71. A composition of claim 45, wherein said  
5 extended chain polymer includes at least one  
copolymer selected from the group consisting of  
recurring units of the formulas:



- 10 72. A composition of claim 45, wherein said  
extended chain polymer includes at least one

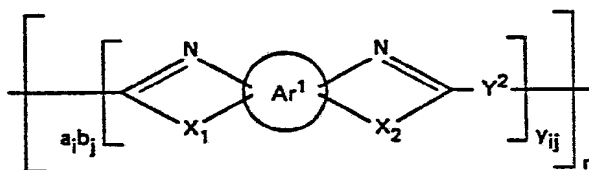
496

copolymer selected from the group consisting of  
recurring units of the formulas:



5

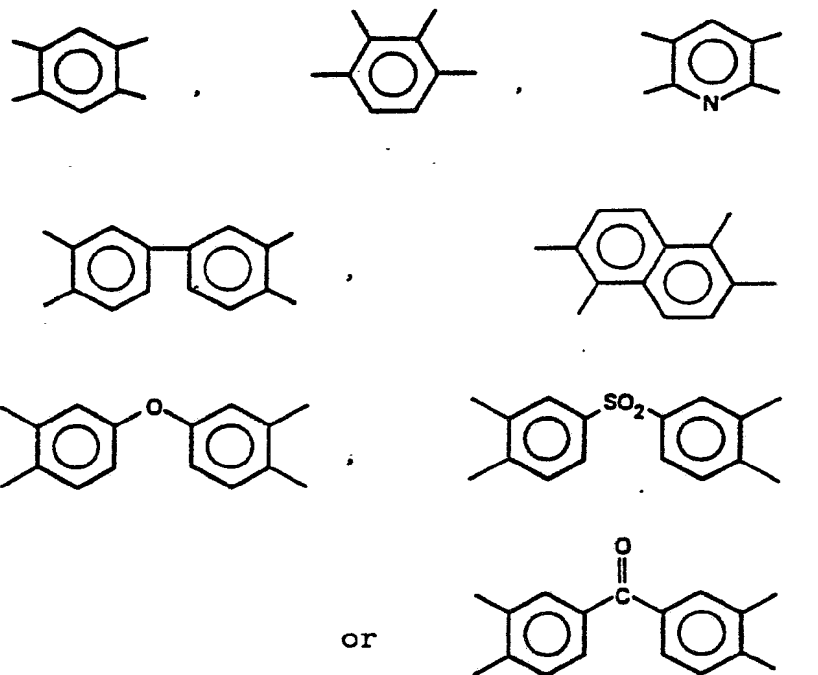
73. A composition according to claim 1, 2, 3, 4,  
5, or 410, wherein said extended chain polymer includes  
at least one copolymer selected from the group  
consisting of recurring units of the general formulas:



IX,

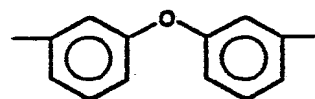
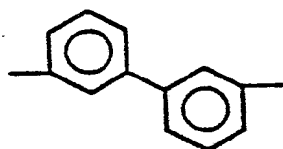
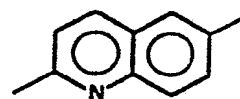
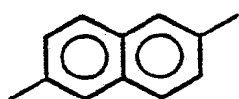
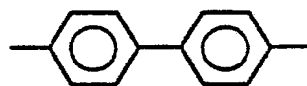
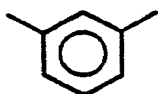
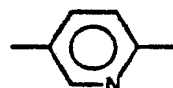
10

wherein Ar<sup>1</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is

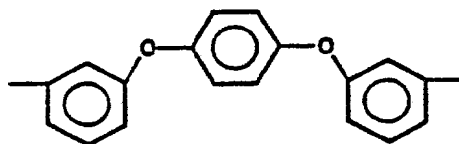
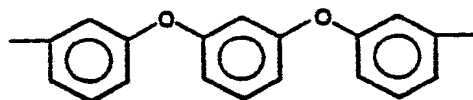
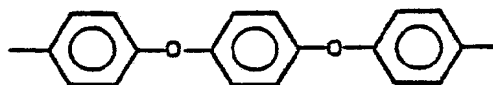


10 X<sub>1</sub> and X<sub>2</sub> are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and X<sub>1</sub> and X<sub>2</sub> being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of Ar<sup>1</sup>, N and X<sub>1</sub> or X<sub>2</sub> of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and Y<sup>2</sup> is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is

498

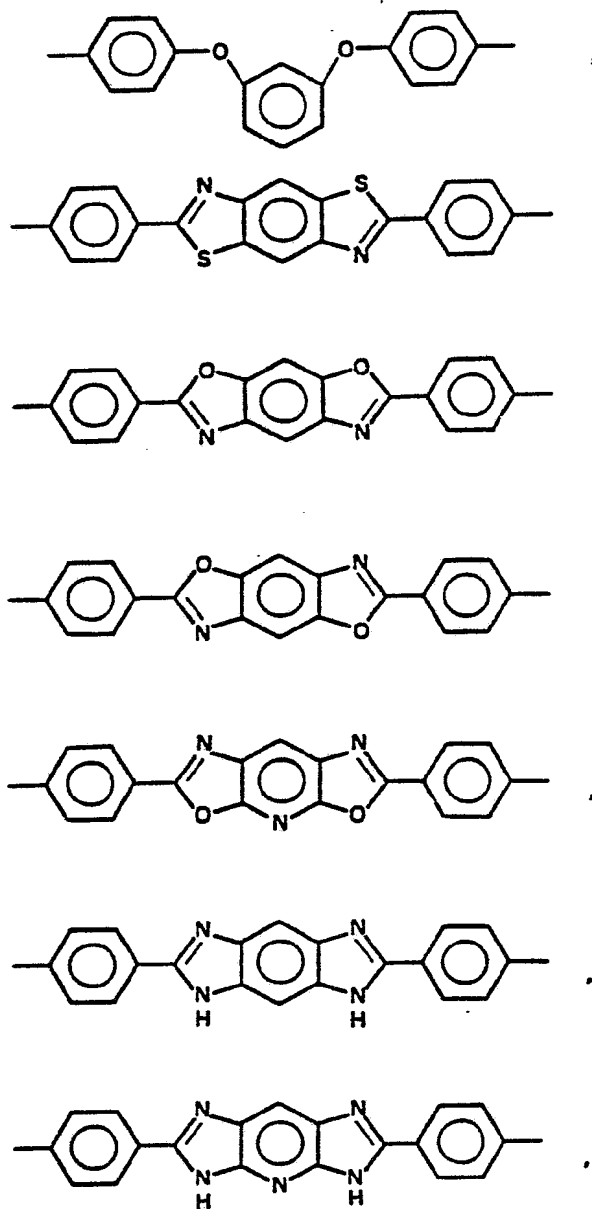


5



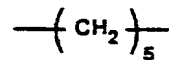
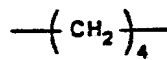
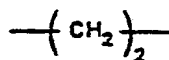
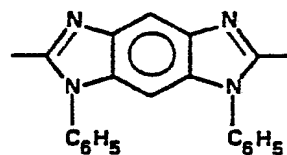
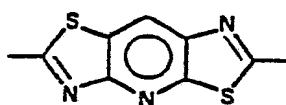
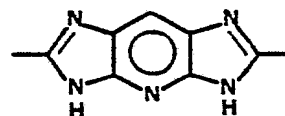
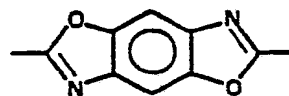
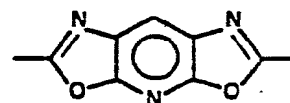
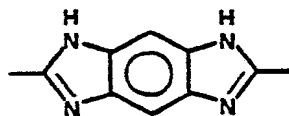
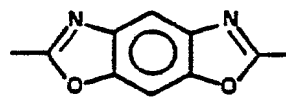
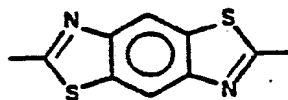
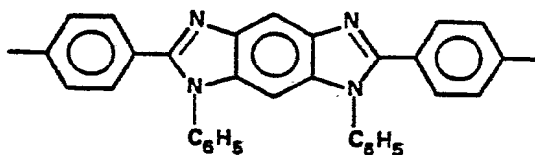
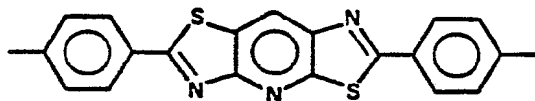


499



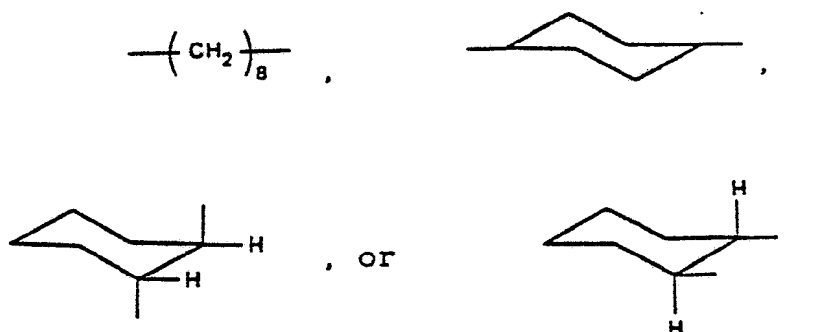
5

500

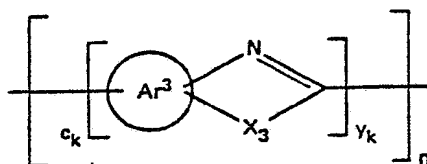


5

501



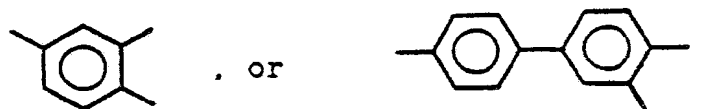
5  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the  
 respective different recurring units present in  
 said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average  
 number of the respective different sequential  
 recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$   
 being a positive integer;



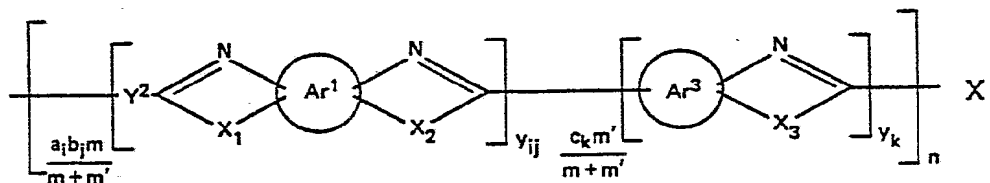
XI,

10 wherein  $\text{Ar}^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

502

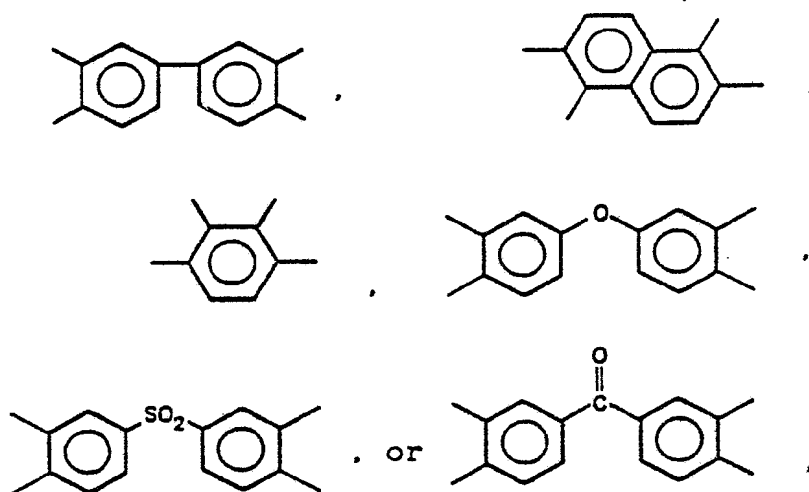


5  $X_3$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^3$ , N and  $X_3$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $c_k$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer, n being a positive integer;

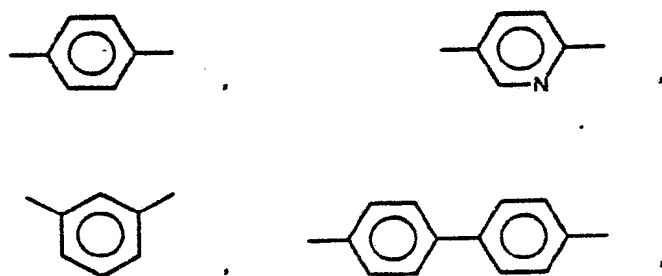


wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

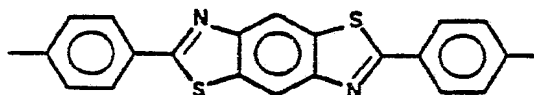
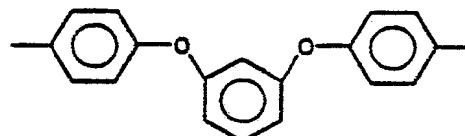
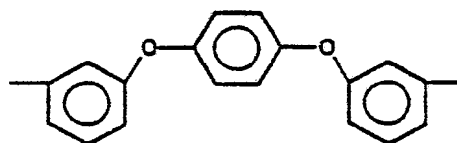
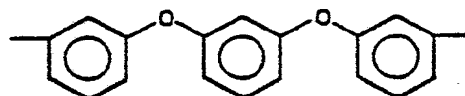
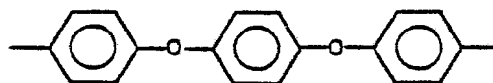
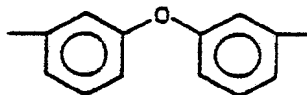
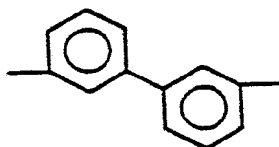
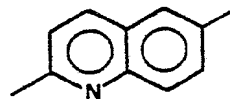
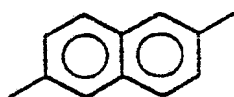




5  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are  
 sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an  
 organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$   
 being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^1$ , N  
 and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed  
 ortho to one another and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents  
 10 a bivalent organic radical and is

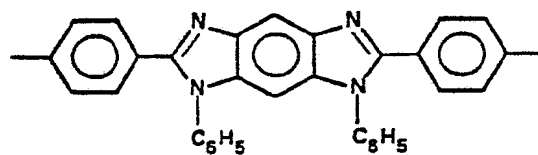
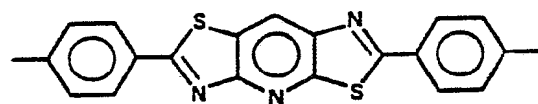
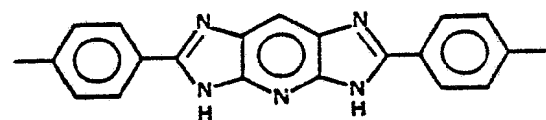
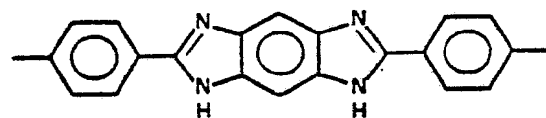
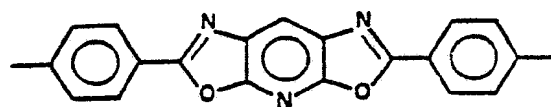
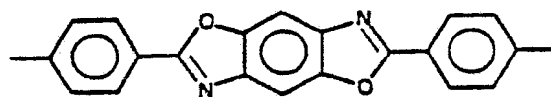
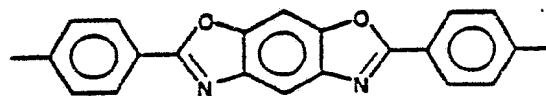


504



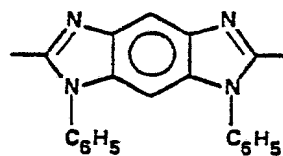
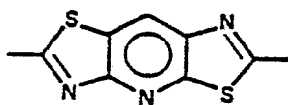
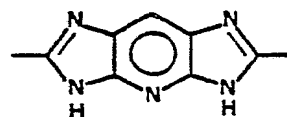
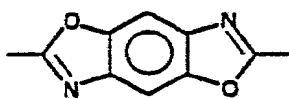
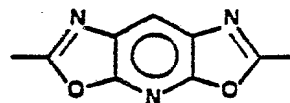
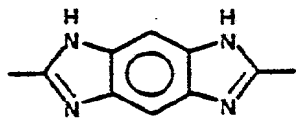
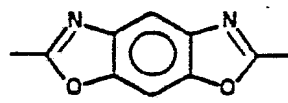
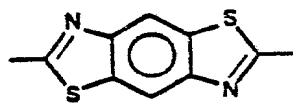
5

505

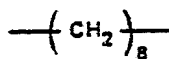
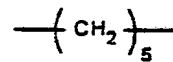
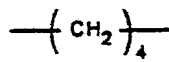
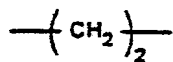


5

506

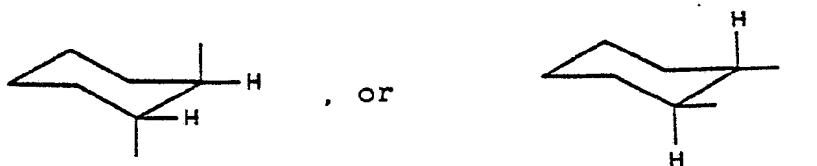


5

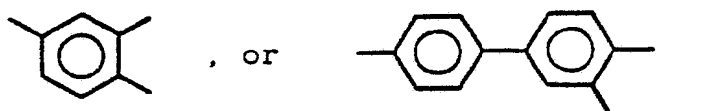




507

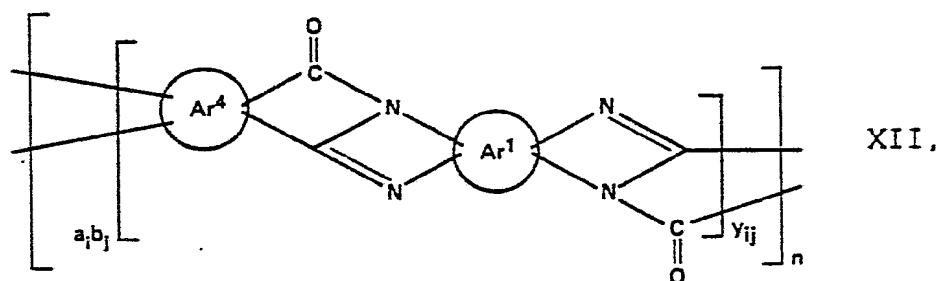


$a_i b_j m/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $Ar^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

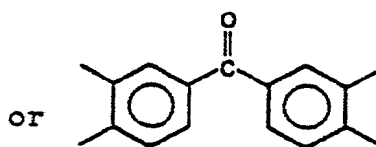
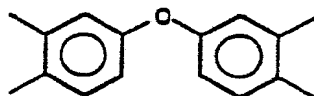
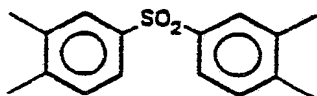
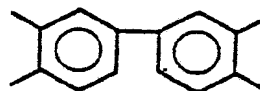
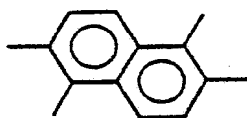
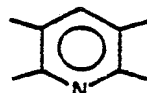
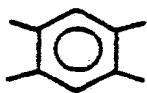


$X_3$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$ , N and  $X_3$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $c_k m'/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_k$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer, n being a positive integer;

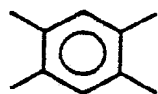
508



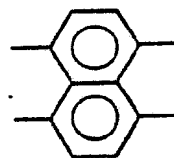
wherein Ar<sup>1</sup> represents an aromatic moiety and is



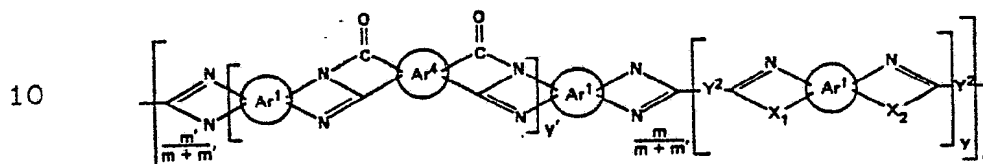
Ar<sup>4</sup> represents a different aromatic moiety and is



, or

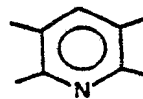
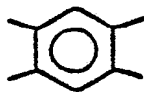


the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $Ar^1$  and the carbon atoms being bonded to  $Ar^4$ ,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;

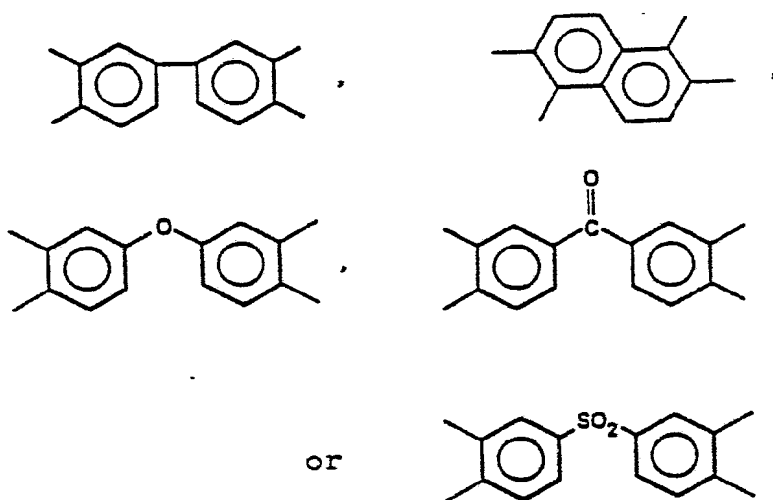


XIII.

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



510



$Ar^4$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is

5

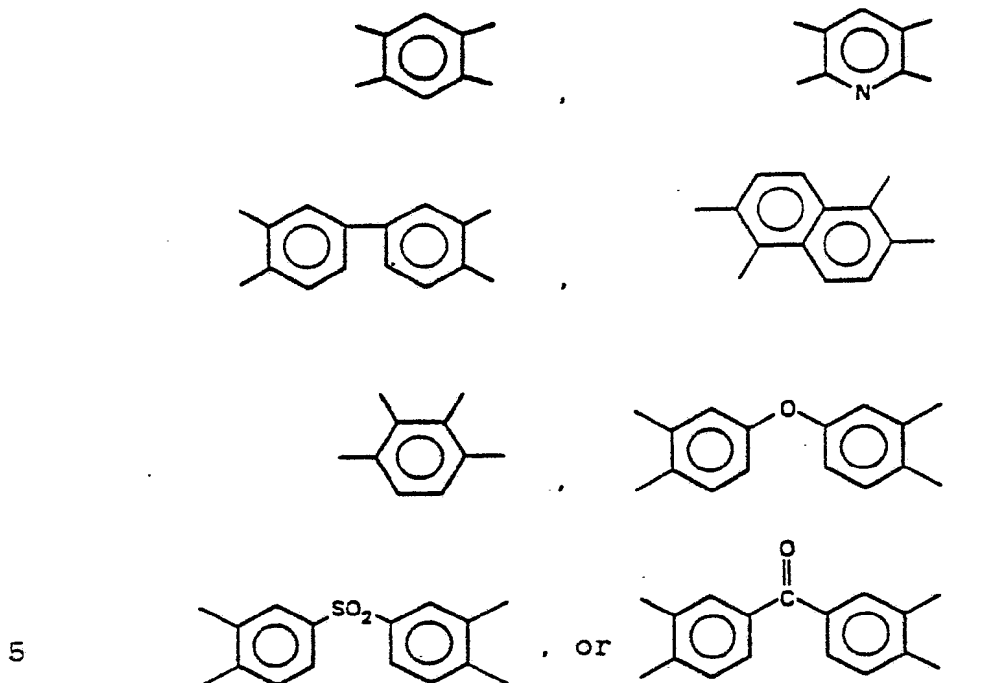


10

the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $Ar^1$  and the carbon atoms being bonded to  $Ar^4$ ,  $m'/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y'$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer.

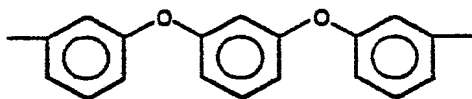
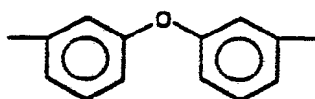
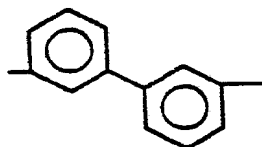
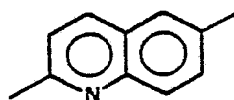
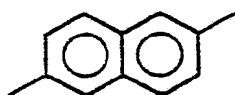
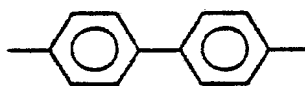
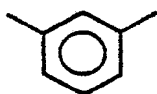
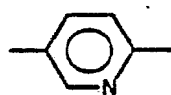
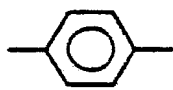
511

$\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



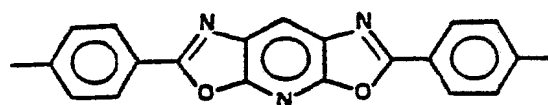
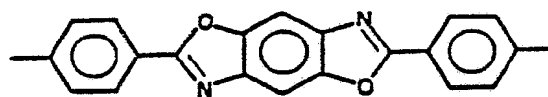
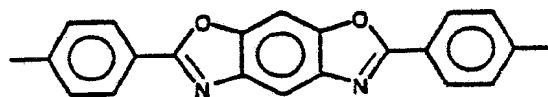
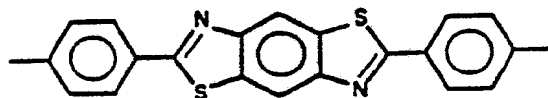
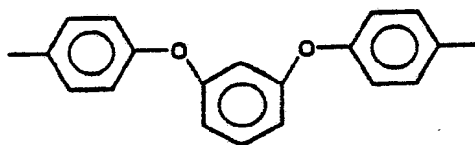
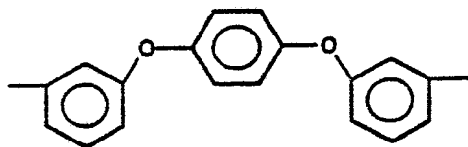
10  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^4$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is

512



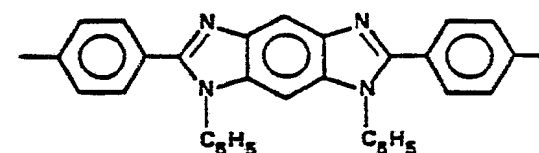
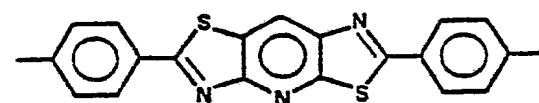
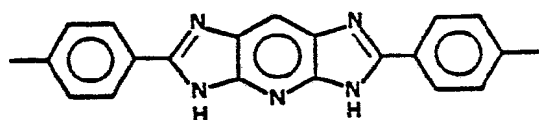
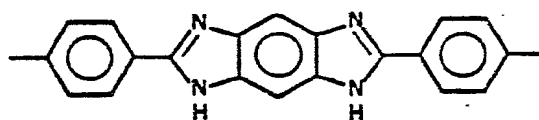
5

513

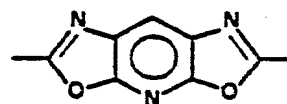
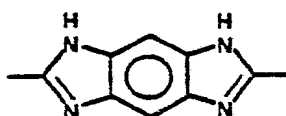


5

514

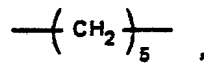
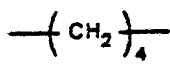
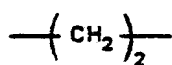
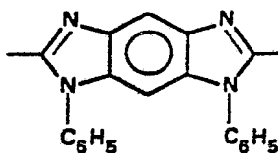
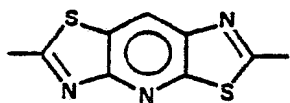
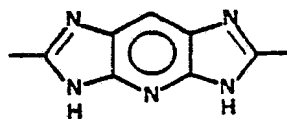
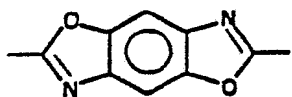
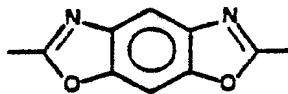
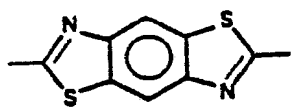


5

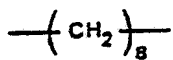




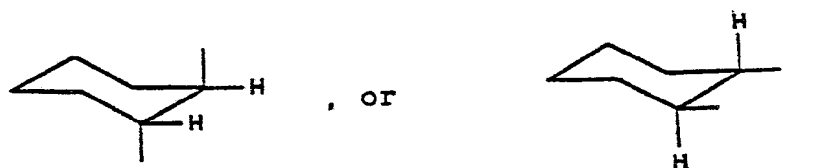
515



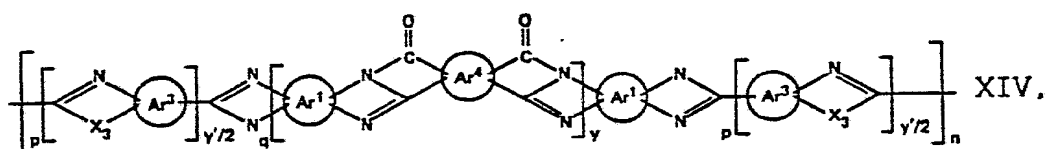
5



516

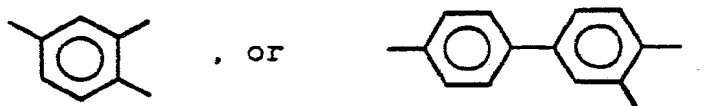


5  $m/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;



wherein  $Ar^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

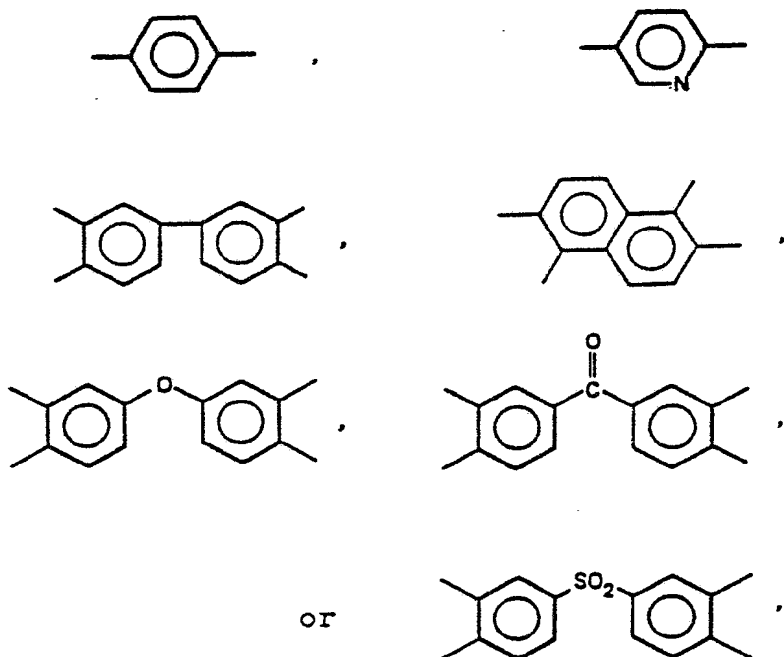
10



$X_3$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$

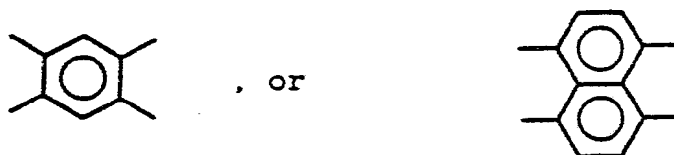
being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^3$ , N and  $\text{X}_3$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, p represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y'/2$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

10

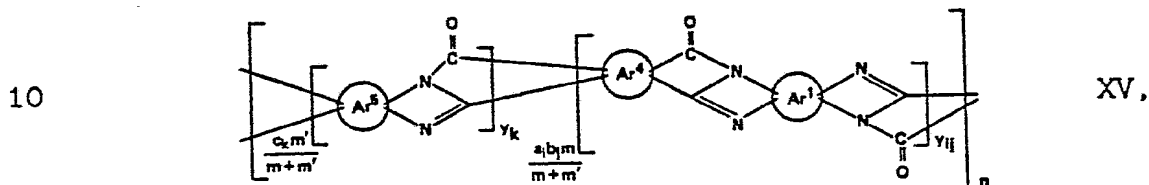


518

$\text{Ar}^4$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is

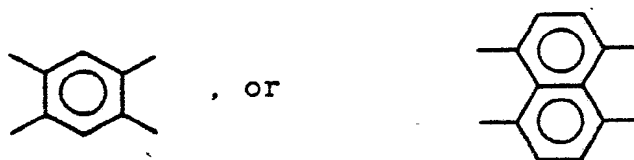


the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $\text{Ar}^1$  and the carbon atoms being bonded to  $\text{Ar}^4$ ,  $q$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer;

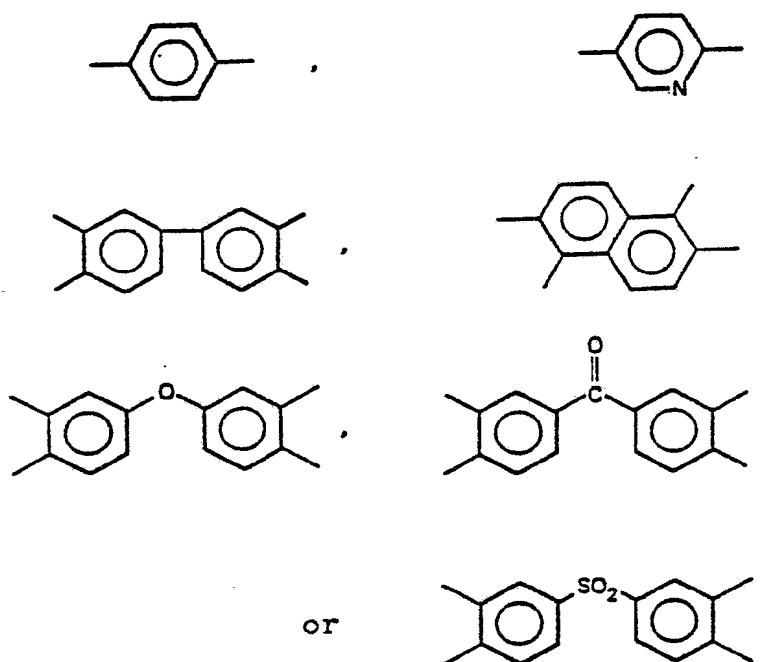


wherein  $\text{Ar}^4$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is

519

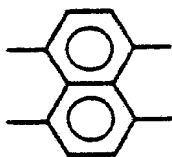


$\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

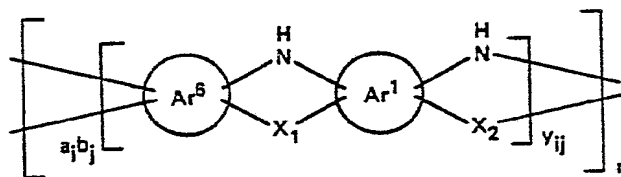


and  $\text{Ar}^5$  represents an aromatic moiety different from  $\text{Ar}^4$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$  and is

520



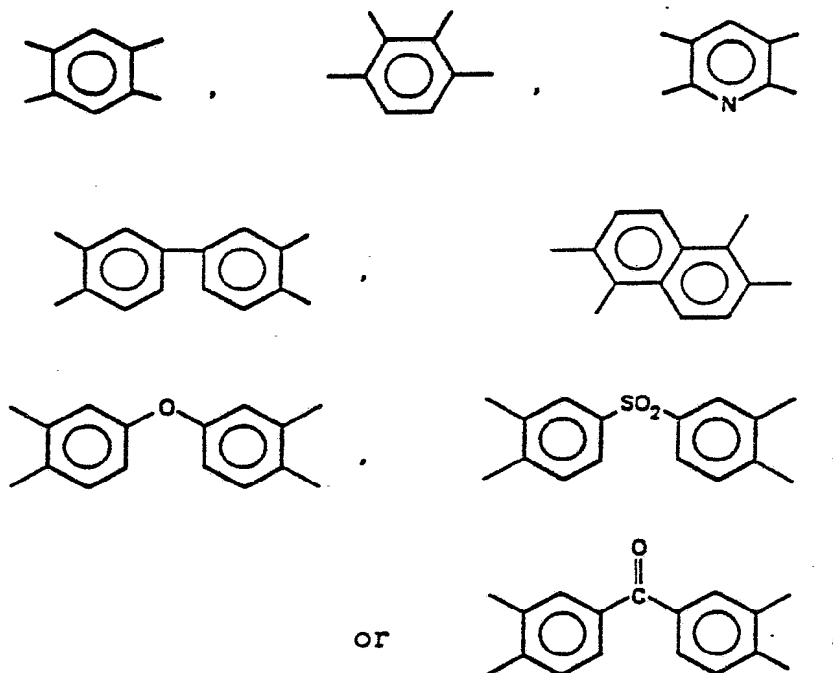
the carbon atoms being bonded to  $\text{Ar}^4$  and  $\text{Ar}^5$ , and  
 the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $\text{Ar}^1$  and  $\text{Ar}^5$ ,  $n$   
 being a positive integer;  $c_k m' / m + m'$  represents  
 5 the molar proportions of the respective different  
 recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_k$   
 represents an average number of the respective  
 different sequential recurring units present in  
 said block polymer,  $a_i b_j m / m + m'$  represents the  
 10 molar proportions of the respective different  
 recurring units present in said block polymer,  
 $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the  
 respective different sequential recurring units  
 present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive  
 15 integer;



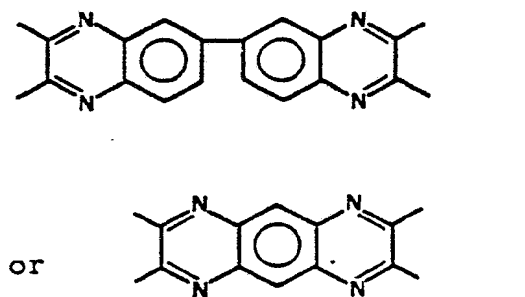
XVI,

wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

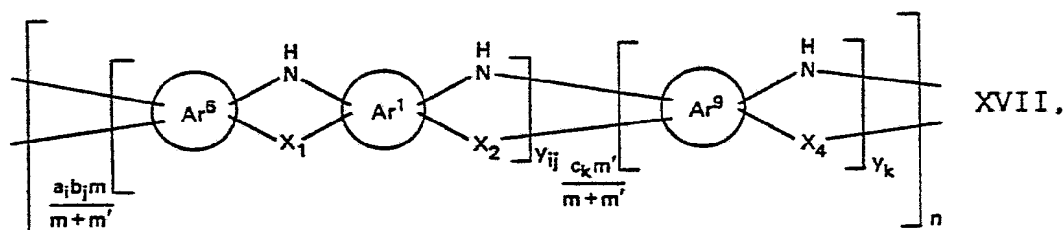
521



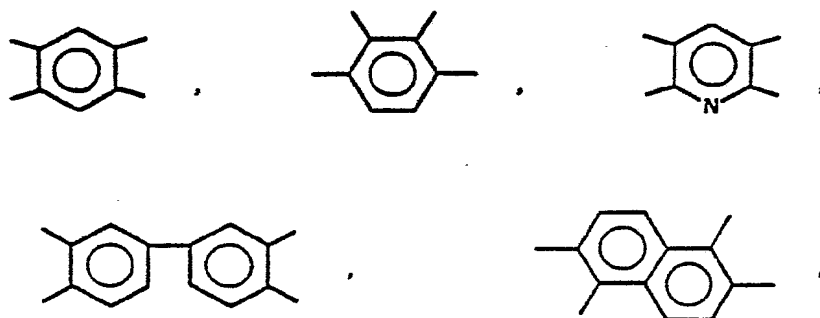
5  $\text{Ar}^6$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is



$X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^1$ ,  
 5 NH and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective  
 10 different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer, n being a positive integer;

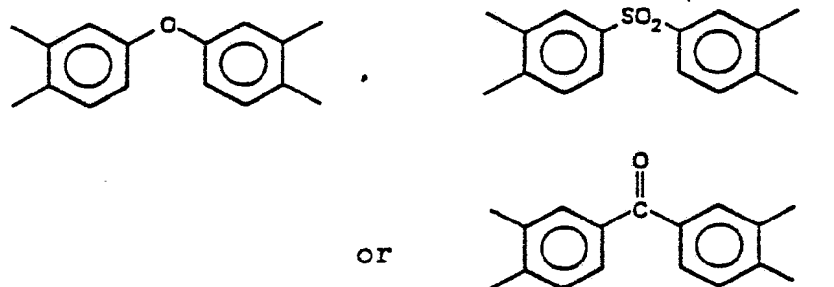


wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

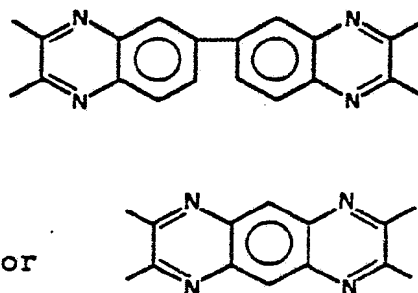




523



$\text{Ar}^6$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is

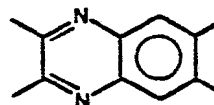


5

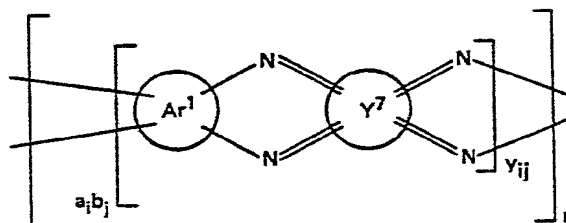
$\text{X}_1$  and  $\text{X}_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $\text{X}_1$  and  $\text{X}_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^6$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$ , NH and  $\text{X}_1$  or  $\text{X}_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $a_i b_j m/m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different

10

recurring units present in said block polymer,  
 $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the  
 respective different sequential recurring units  
 present in said block polymer,  $Ar^9$  represents an  
 aromatic moiety different from  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^1$  and is

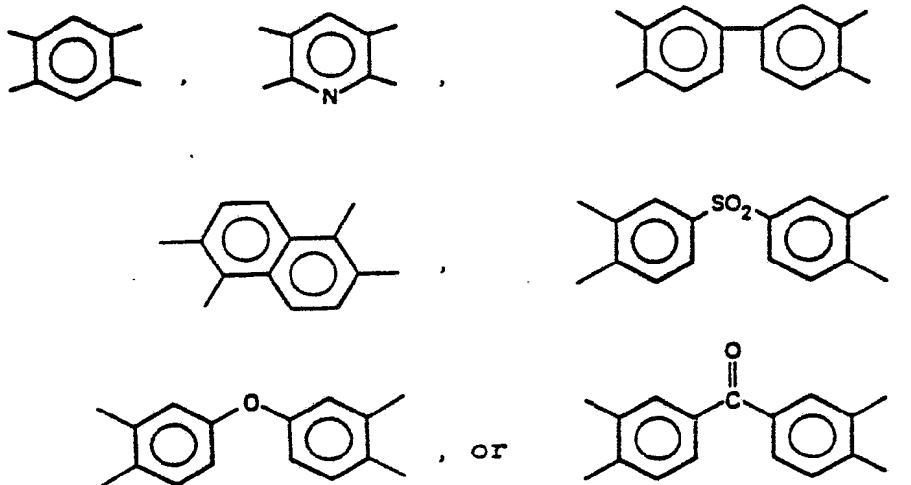


$X_4$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or  
 an organic group), the NH groups and  $X_4$  being  
 bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^6$  and  $Ar^9$ ,  
 $c_k^m / m+m'$  represents the molar proportions of the  
 respective different recurring units present in  
 said block polymer,  $y_k$  represents an average  
 number of the respective different sequential  
 recurring units present in said block polymer, n  
 being a positive integer;

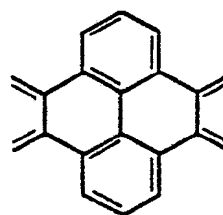


XVIII.

wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



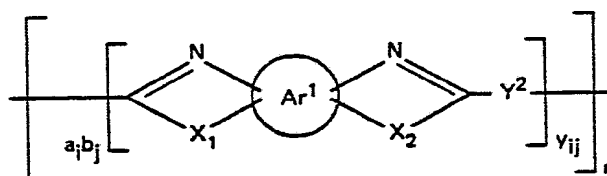
5  $\text{Y}^7$  represents an aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety and is



the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^1$  and bonded to adjacent carbon

atoms of  $Y^7$ ,  $a_i b_j$  represents the molar proportions of the respective different recurring units present in said block polymer,  $y_{ij}$  represents an average number of the respective different sequential recurring units present in said block polymer,  $n$  being a positive integer.

74. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

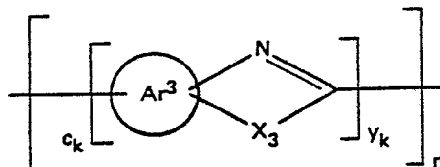


IX.

527

75. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

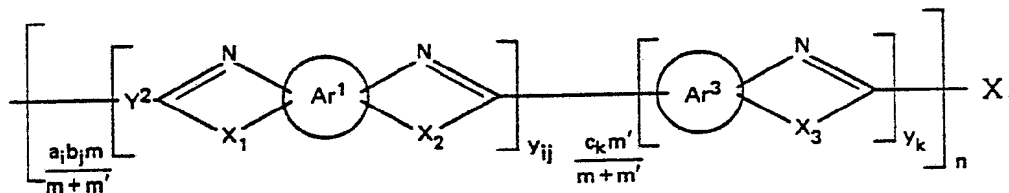
5



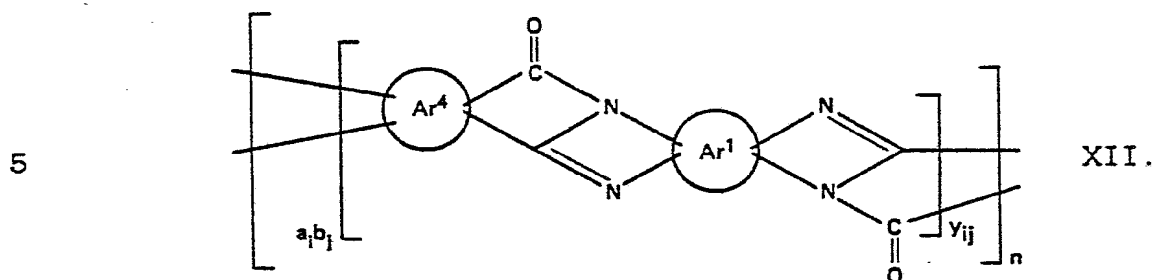
XI.

76. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

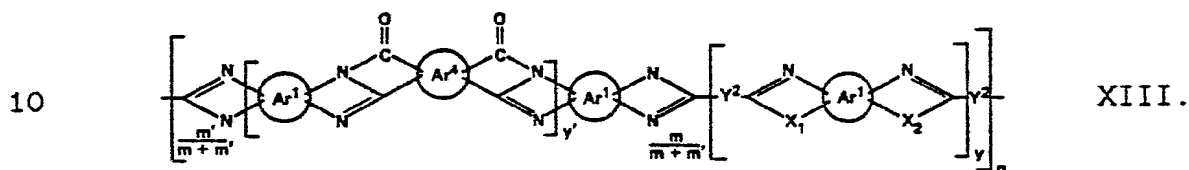
10



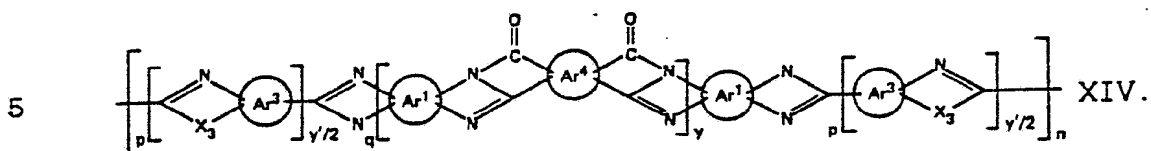
77. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:



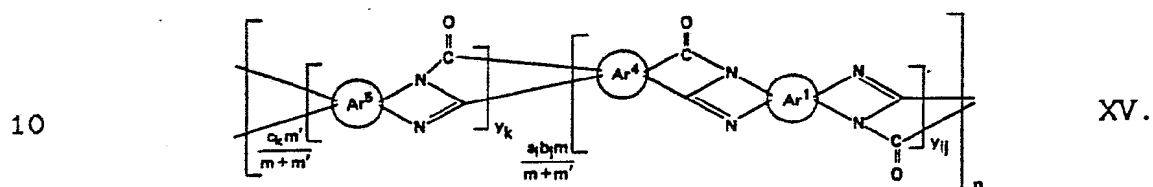
78. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:



79. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

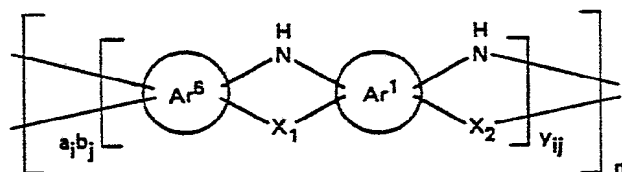


80. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:



81. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

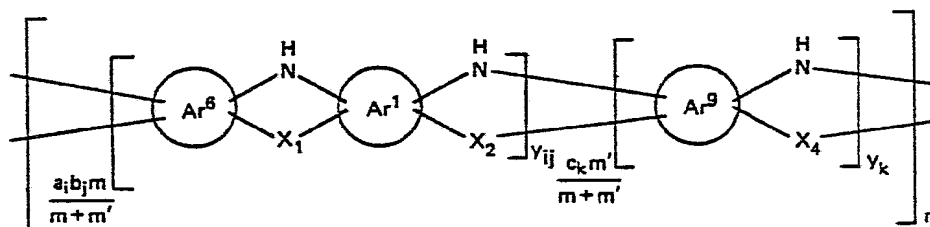
5



XVI.

82. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

10

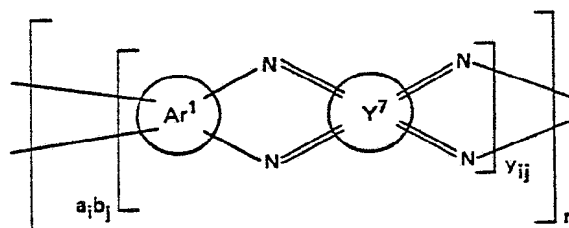


XVII.



83. A composition according to claim 73 wherein said extended chain polymer is a block polymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

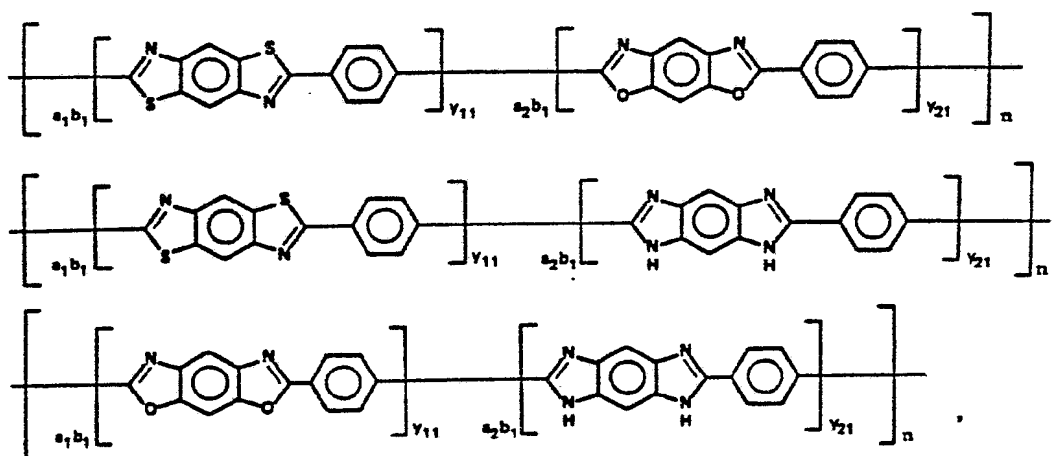
5

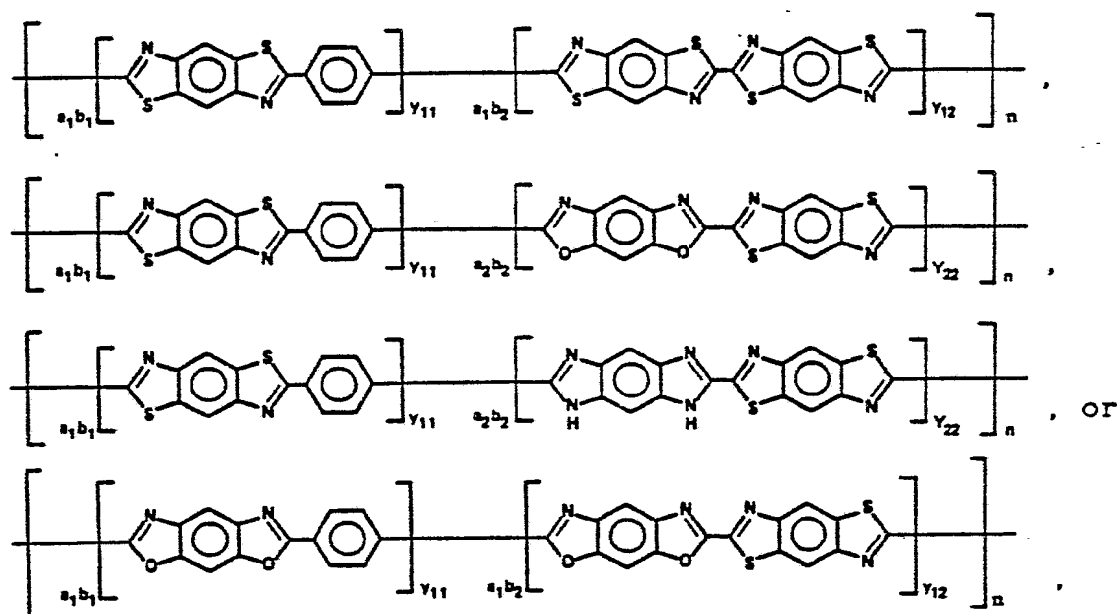


XVIII.

84. A composition of claim 74, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:

10

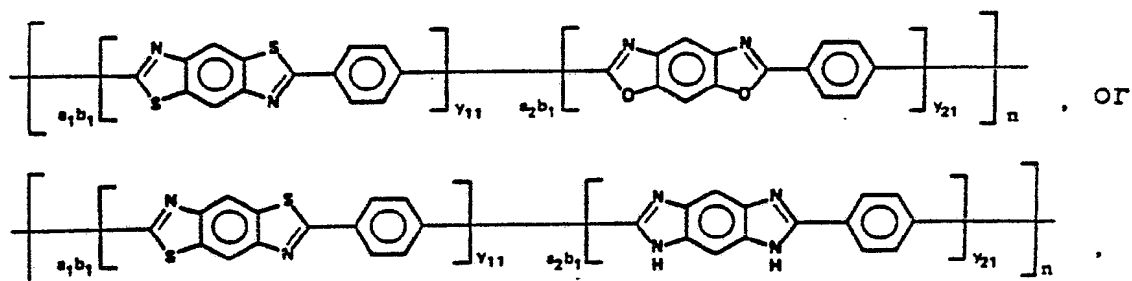




- 5 wherein  $a_1b_1$ ,  $a_1b_2$ ,  $a_2b_1$ , and  $a_2b_2$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between zero and one,  $a_1b_2$  or  $a_2b_1$  or  $a_2b_2$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ;
- 10 wherein  $y_{11}$ ,  $y_{12}$ ,  $y_{21}$ , and  $y_{22}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 20 and less than about 75,  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  or  $y_{22}$  being at least greater than one and less than about 75,  $n$  being an average number of
- 15 total recurring units greater than about 50 and

less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 7 weight percent.

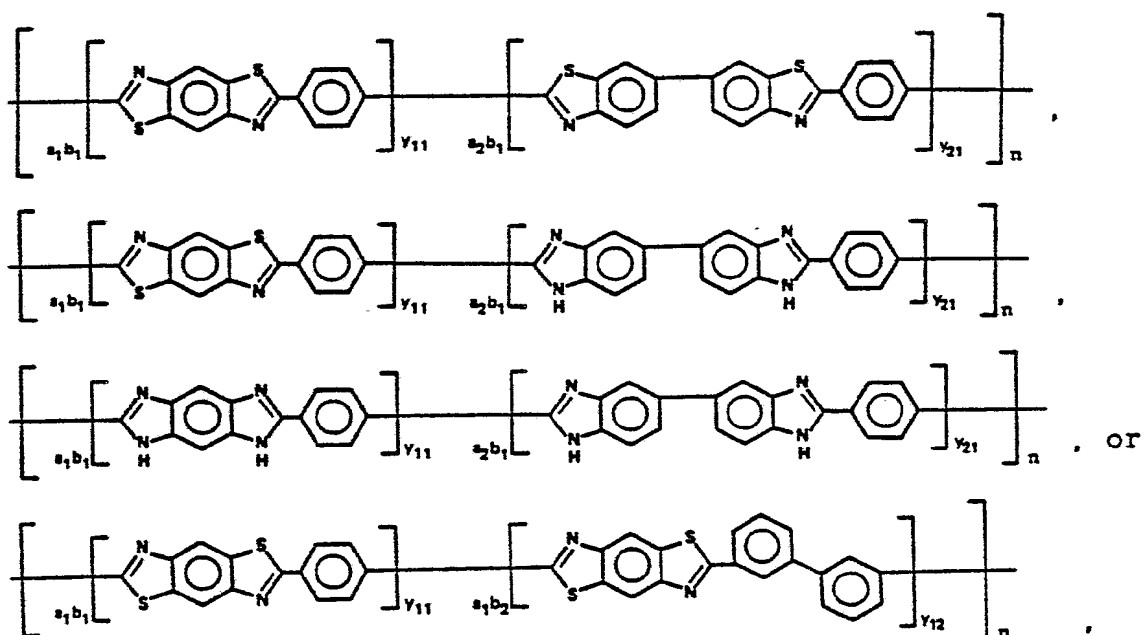
85. A composition of claim 74, wherein said  
 5 extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



- 10 wherein  $\text{a}_1\text{b}_1$  and  $\text{a}_2\text{b}_1$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $\text{a}_1\text{b}_1$  being between zero and one,  $\text{a}_2\text{b}_1$  being equal to  $1-\text{a}_1\text{b}_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{21}$  are the said average number of the respective  
 15 different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 20 and less than about 75,  $y_{21}$  being at least greater than one and less than about 75,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 50 and  
 20 less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least

greater than about 7 weight percent.

86. A composition of claim 74, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



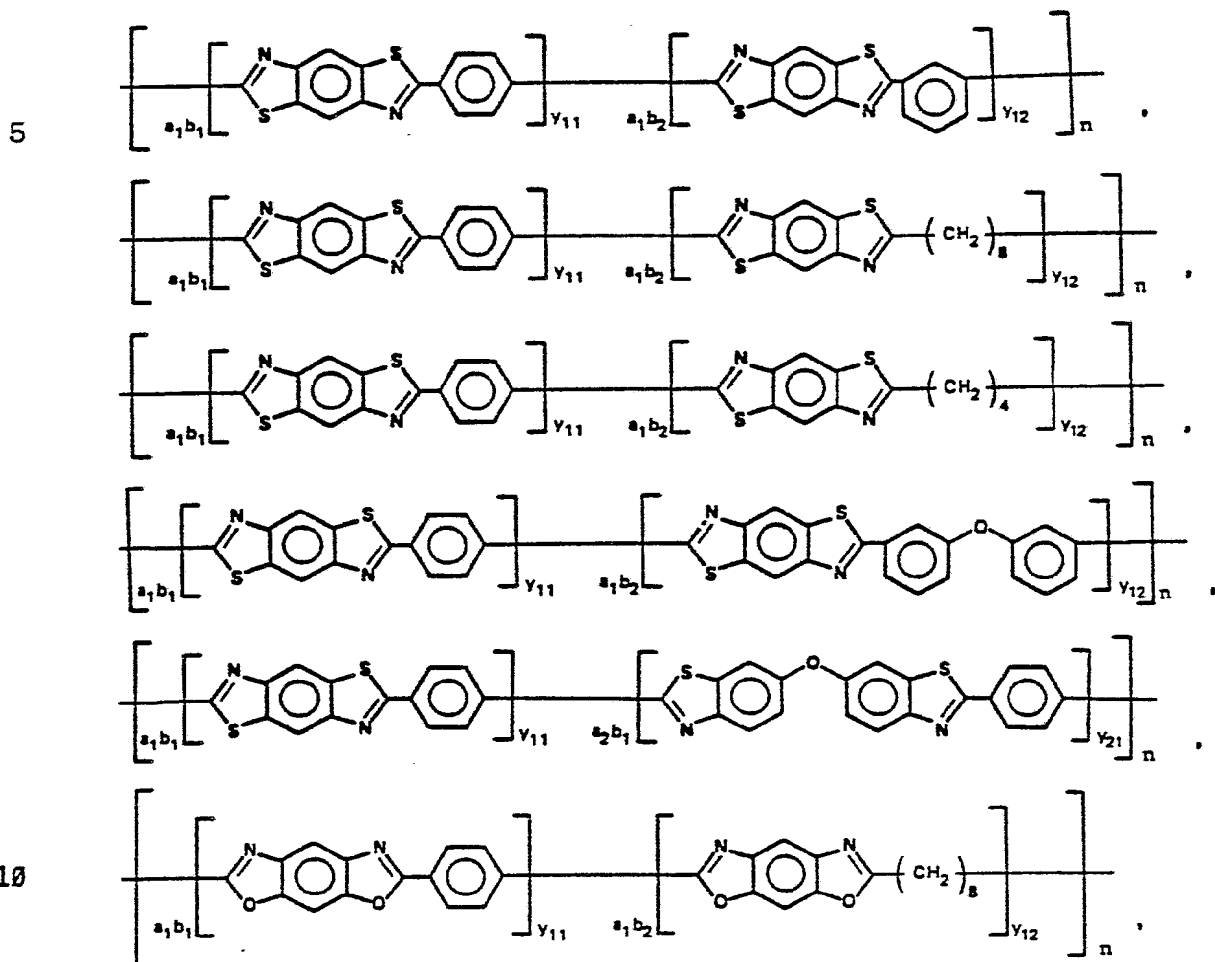
10 wherein  $a_1b_1$ ,  $a_1b_2$  and  $a_2b_1$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $a_1b_2$  or  $a_2b_1$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$ ,  $y_{12}$

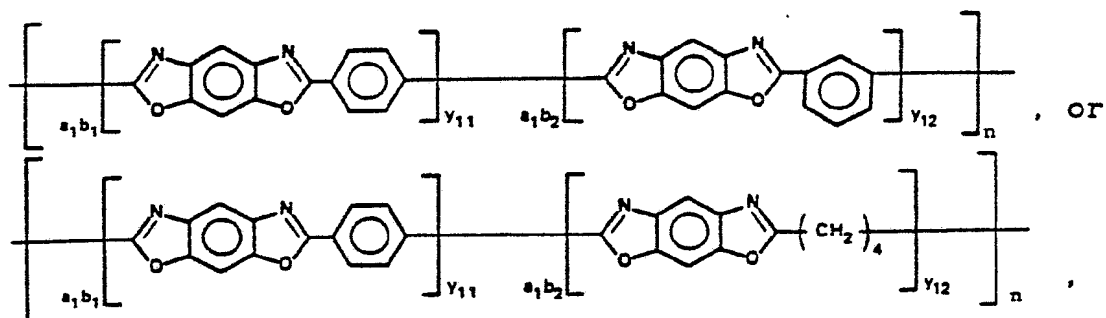
535

and  $y_{21}$  are the said average number of the  
respective different sequential recurring units,  
 $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 20 and less  
than about 75,  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  being at least greater  
5 than one and less than about 75,  $n$  being an  
average number of total recurring units greater  
than about 50 and less than about 150; and said  
block polymer being present in said composition  
in an amount at least greater than about 15  
10 weight percent.



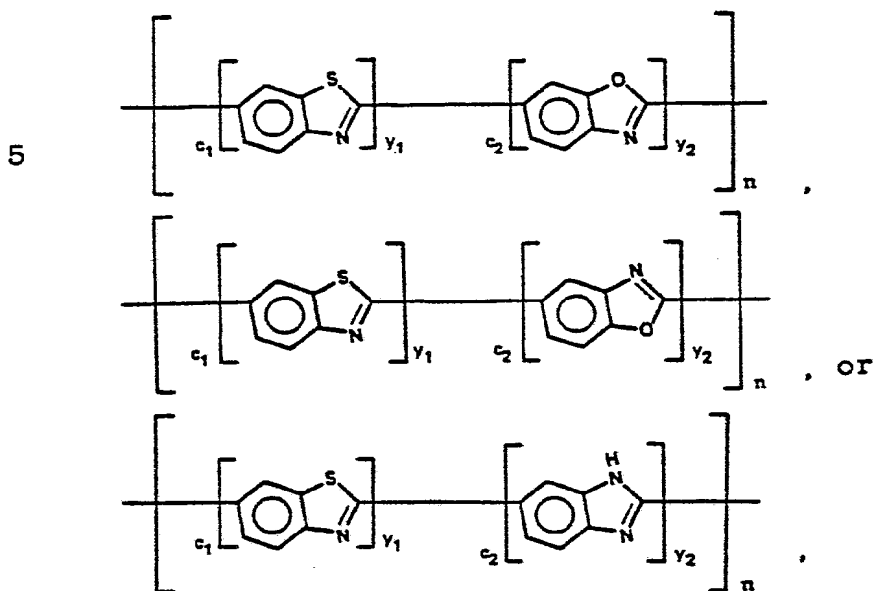
87. A composition of claim 74, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:





wherein  $a_1b_1$ ,  $a_1b_2$  and  $a_2b_1$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1$  being between about 0.6 and one,  $a_1b_2$  or  $a_2b_1$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 30,  $y_{12}$  or  $y_{21}$  being at least greater than one and less than about 50,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 50 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

88. A composition of claim 75, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



wherein  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $c_1$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $c_2$  being equal to  $1-c_1$ ; wherein  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_1$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 100,  $y_2$  being at least greater than one and less than about 50,  $n$

10

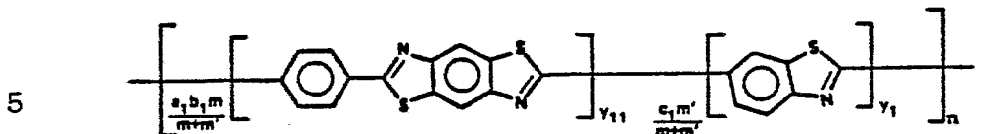
15



being an average number of total recurring units  
greater than about 60 and less than about 200;  
and said block polymer being present in said  
composition in an amount at least greater than  
5 about 15 weight percent.



89. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

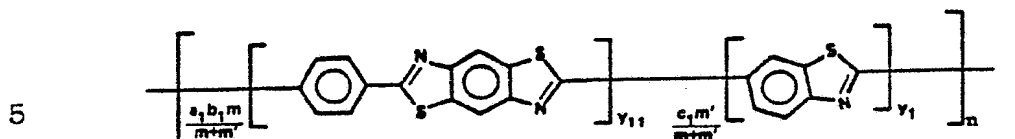


wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  being between zero and about 0.5,  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  being equal to 1 -  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than one and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 75 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

10

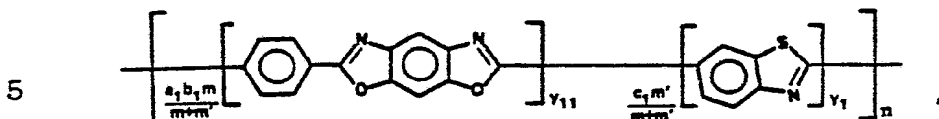
15

90. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



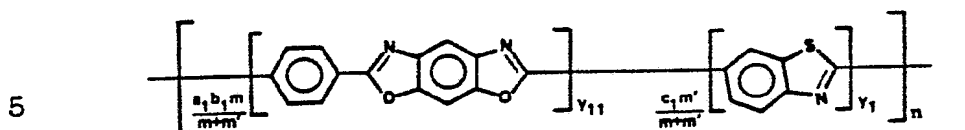
wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  being equal to 1-  
 10  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than 5 and less than about  
 15 30,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 60 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

91. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  being between zero and 0.5,  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  being equal to  $1 - a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$ ;  
 10 wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about one and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $n$   
 15 being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 75 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

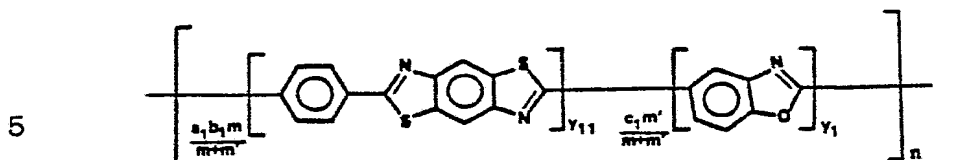
92. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  being equal to 1-  
 10  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than 5 and less than  
 15 about 30,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 60 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

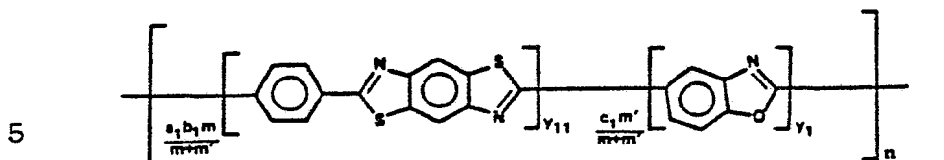
544

93. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



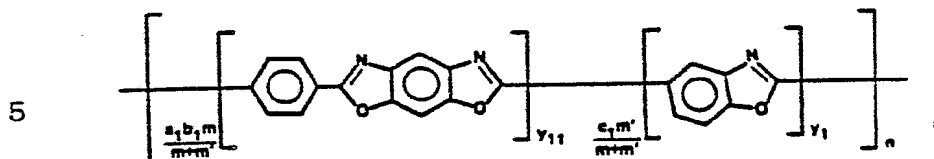
wherein  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  and  $c_1m'/m+m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  being between zero and 0.5,  $c_1m'/m+m'$  being equal to  $1-a_1b_1m/m+m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about one and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 75 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

94. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m+m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m+m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m+m'$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $c_1 m' / m+m'$  being equal to 1-  
 10  $a_1 b_1 m / m+m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than 5 and less than about  
 15 30,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 60 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

95. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



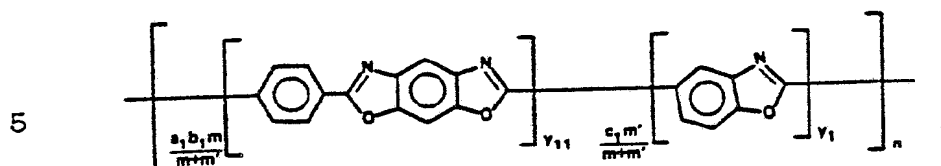
wherein  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  and  $c_1m'/m+m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  being between zero and about 0.5,  $c_1m'/m+m'$  being equal to  $1 - a_1b_1m/m+m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about one and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 75 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

10

15

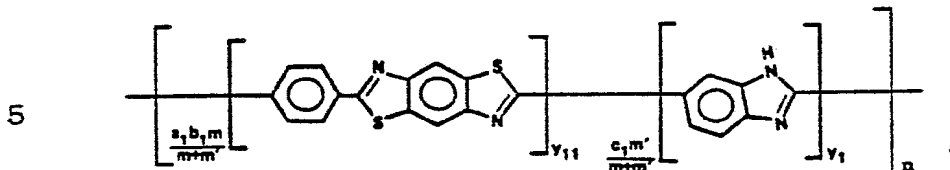


96. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



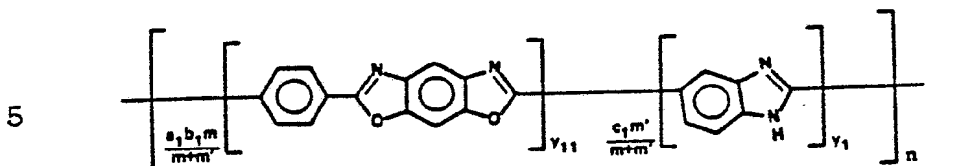
wherein  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  and  $c_1m'/m+m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $c_1m'/m+m'$  being equal to 1-  
 10  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than 5 and less than  
 15 about 30,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 60 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

97. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



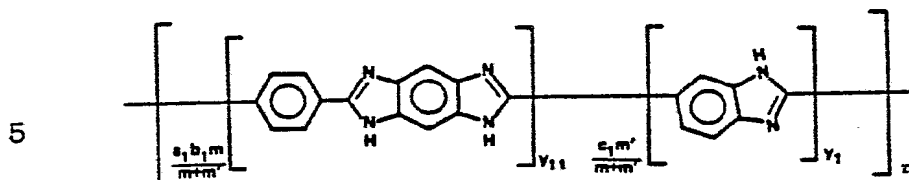
wherein  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  and  $c_1m'/m+m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $c_1m'/m+m'$  being equal to 1-  
 10  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than 5 and less than about  
 15 30,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 60 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

98. A composition of claim 78, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



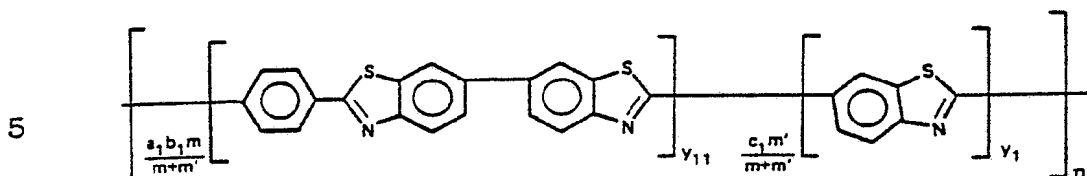
wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  being equal to 1-  
 10  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $y_1$  being at least greater than 5 and less than about  
 15 30,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 60 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

99. A composition of claim 78, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



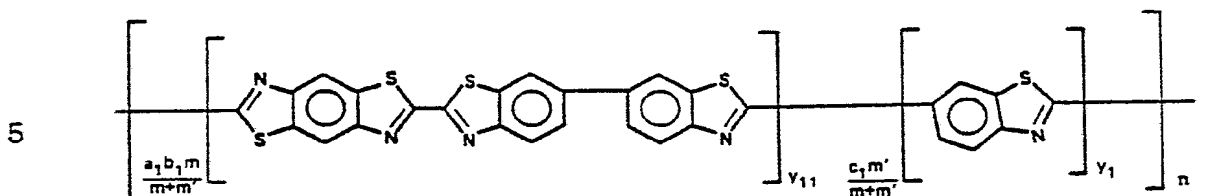
wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m+m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m+m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m+m'$  being between about 0.5 and one,  $c_1 m' / m+m'$  being equal to 1-  
 10  $a_1 b_1 m / m+m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about 30 and less than about 75,  $y_1$   
 15 being at least greater than 5 and less than about 30,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 60 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 10 weight percent.

100. A composition of claim 76, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



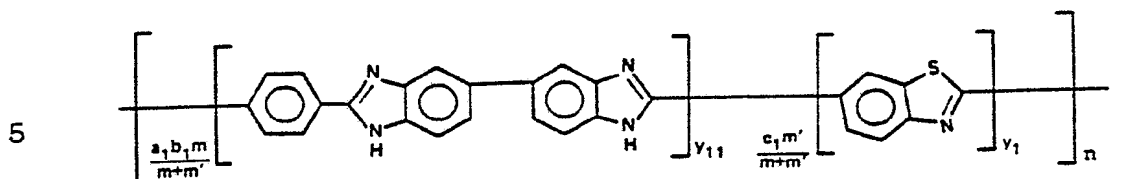
wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  being between zero and one,  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  being equal to  $1 - a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$ ;  
 10 wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about one,  $y_1$  being at least greater than about 5,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units  
 15 greater than about 50 and less than about 200; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

101. A composition of claim 78, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



wherein  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  and  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$  being between zero and one,  $c_1 m' / m + m'$  being equal to  $1 - a_1 b_1 m / m + m'$ ;  
 10 wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about one,  $y_1$  being at least greater than about 5,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units  
 15 greater than about 50 and less than about 200; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

102. A composition of claim 78, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



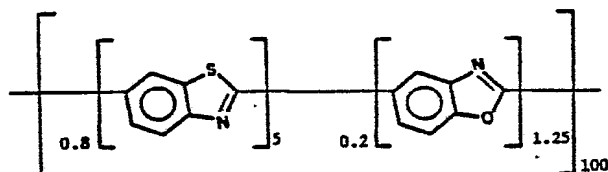
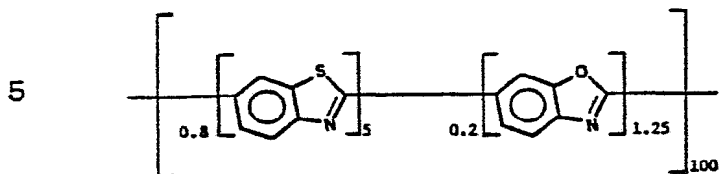
wherein  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  and  $c_1m'/m+m'$  are the said molar proportions of the respective different recurring units,  $a_1b_1m/m+m'$  being between zero and about 0.5,  $c_1m'/m+m'$  being equal to  $1 - a_1b_1m/m+m'$ ; wherein  $y_{11}$  and  $y_1$  are the said average number of the respective different sequential recurring units,  $y_{11}$  being at least greater than about one and less than about 20,  $y_1$  being at least greater than about 30,  $n$  being an average number of total recurring units greater than about 75 and less than about 150; and said block polymer being present in said composition in an amount at least greater than about 15 weight percent.

10

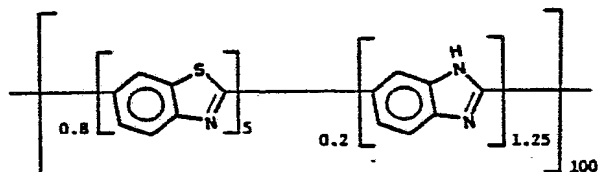
15

554

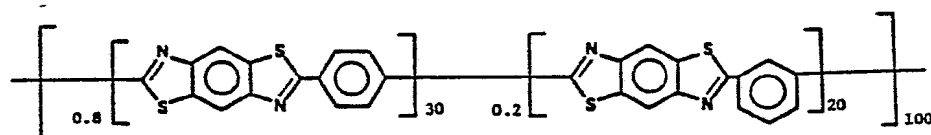
103. A composition of claim 64, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one copolymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



or

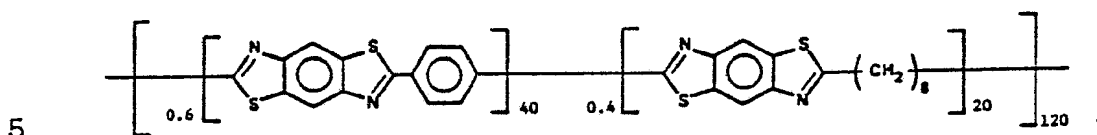


104. A composition of claim 87, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

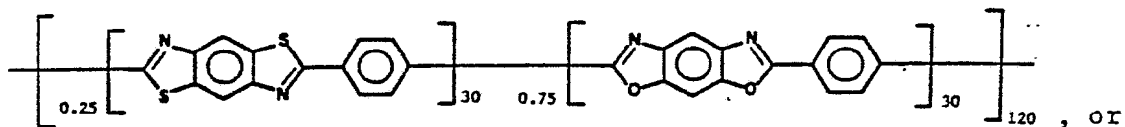
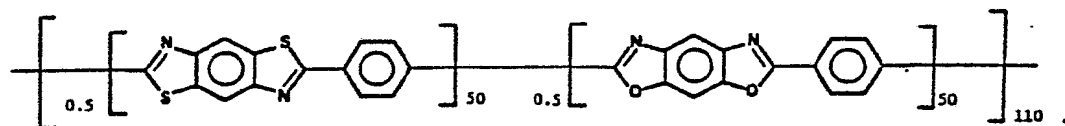
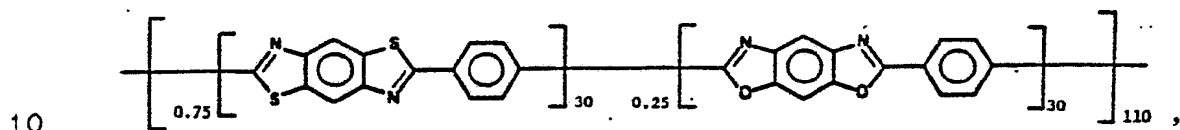




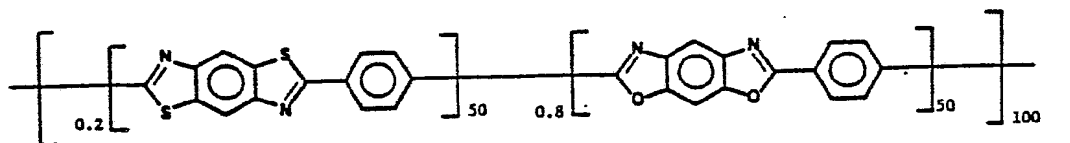
105. A composition of claim 87, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



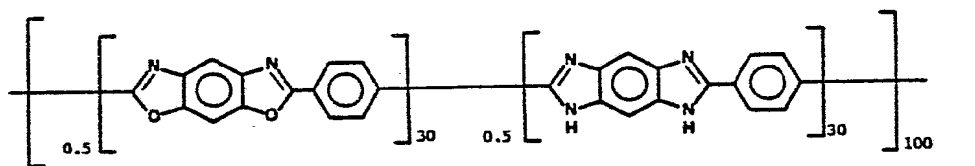
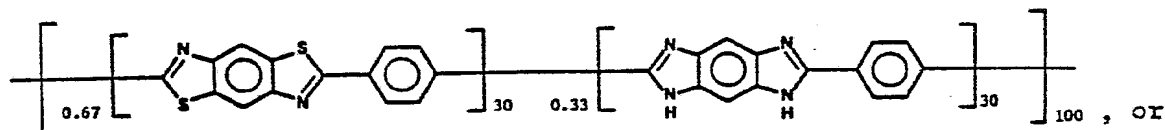
106. A composition of claim 84, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



556

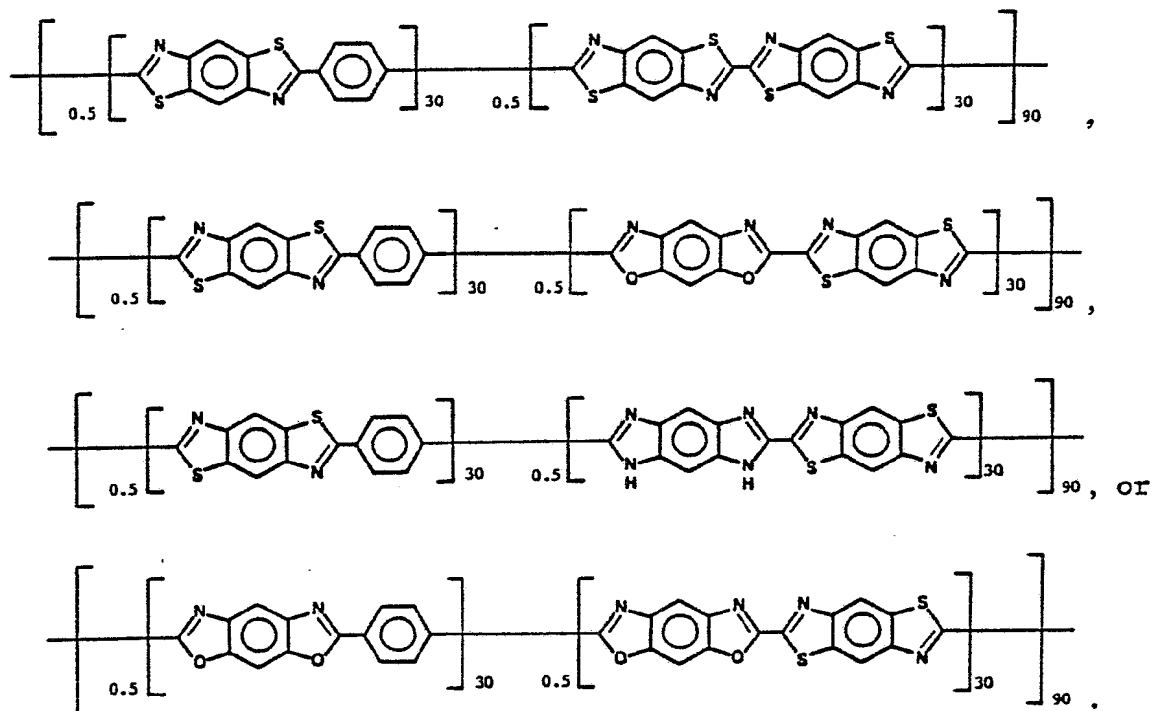


107. A composition of claim 84, wherein  
 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 5 of recurring units of the formulas:



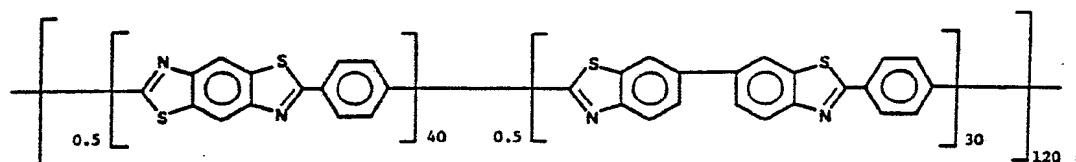
108. A composition of claim 84, wherein  
 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 10 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 of recurring units of the formulas:

557

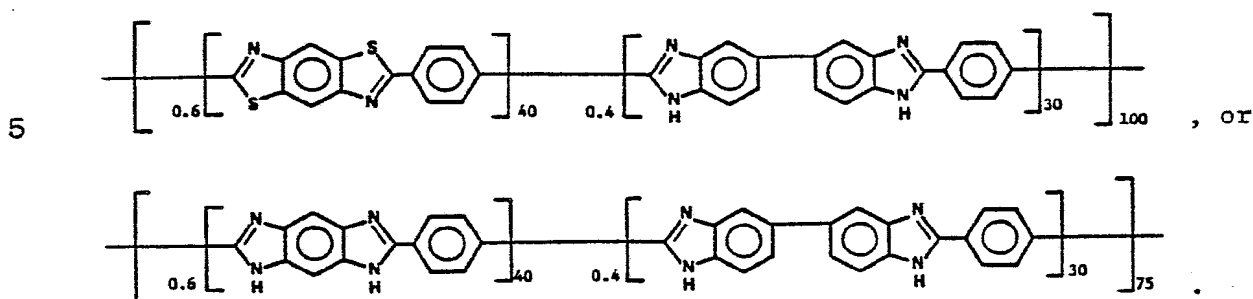


5

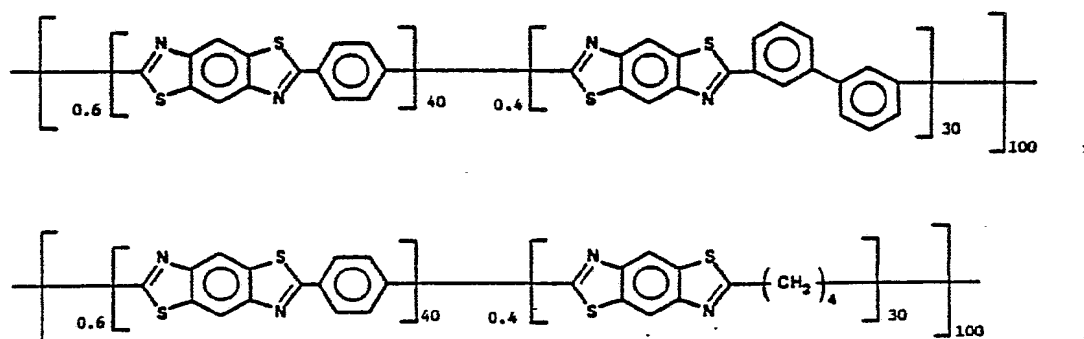
109. A composition of claim 86, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:



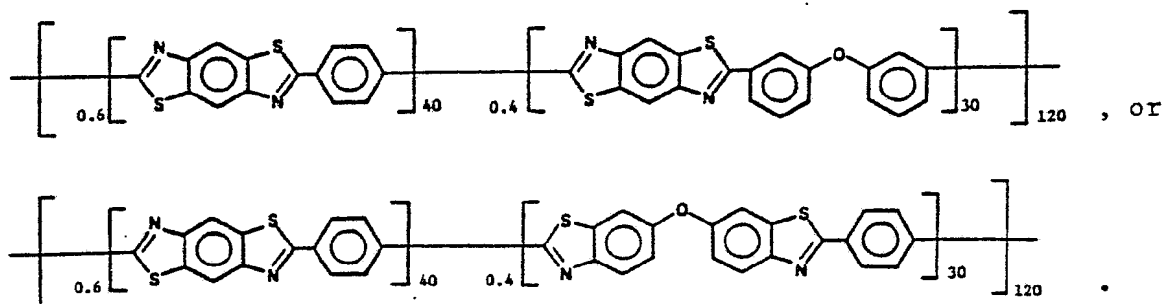
110. A composition of claim 86, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



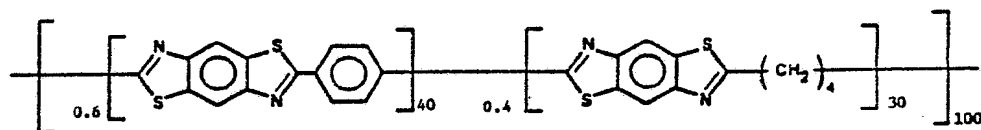
10 111. A composition of claim 73, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



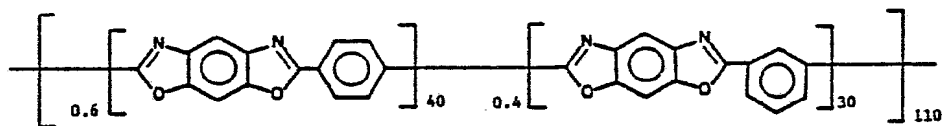
559



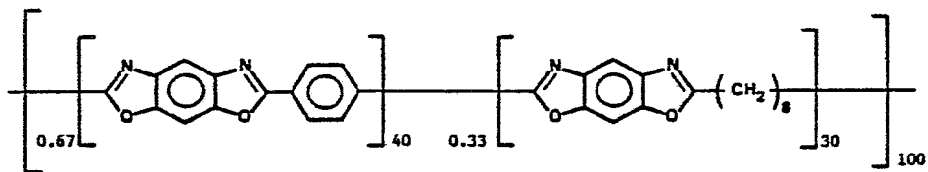
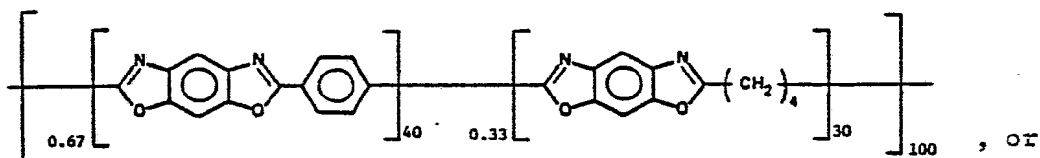
112. A composition of claim 87, wherein  
 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 5 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 of recurring units of the formula:



113. A composition of claim 87, wherein  
 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 10 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 of recurring units of the formula:

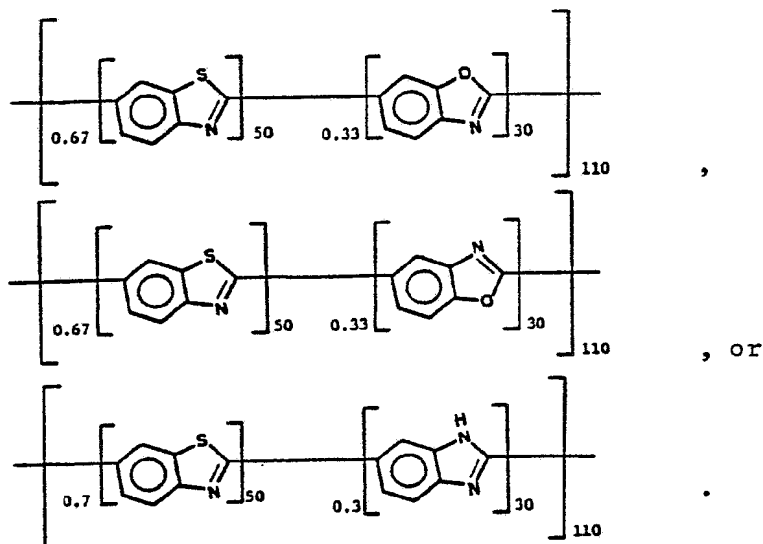


114. A composition of claim 87, wherein  
said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
block polymer selected from the group consisting  
5 of recurring units of the formulas:

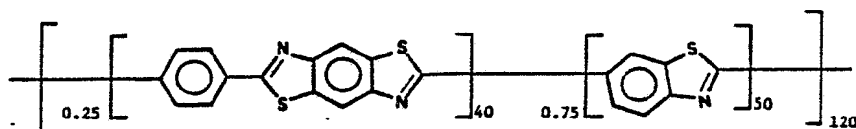


115. A composition of claim 88, wherein  
said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
10 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
of recurring units of the formulas:

561

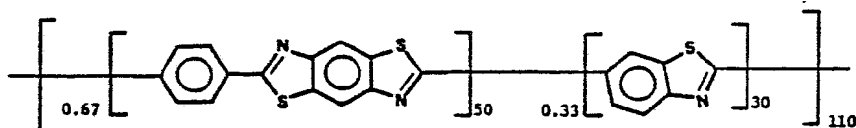


116. A composition of claim 89, wherein  
 5 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 of recurring units of the formula:

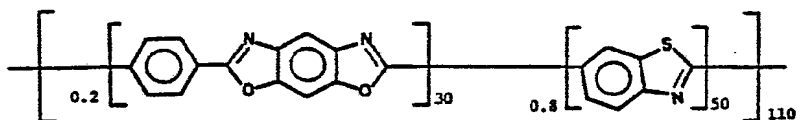


117. A composition of claim 90, wherein  
 10 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 of recurring units of the formula:

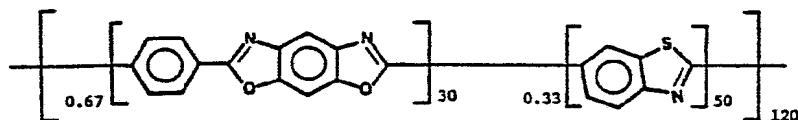
562



118. A composition of claim 91, wherein  
 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 5 of recurring units of the formula:

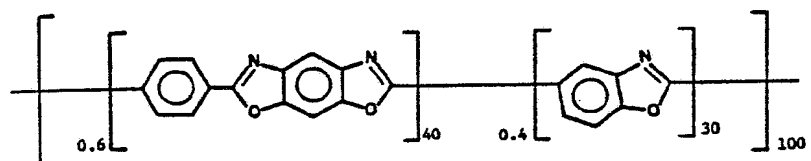
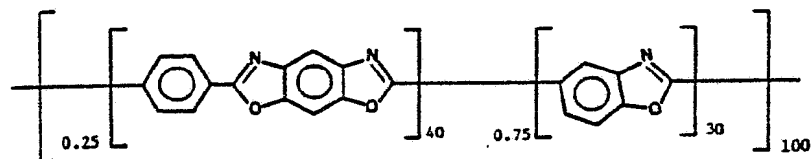
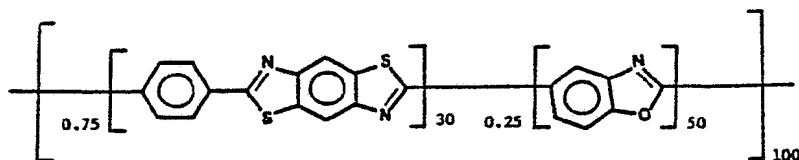
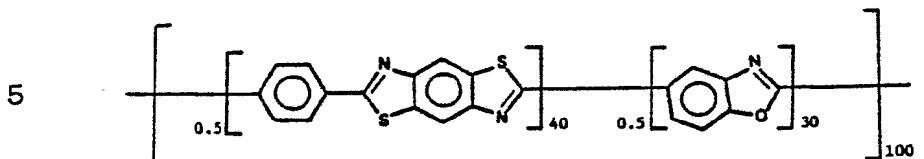


119. A composition of claim 92, wherein  
 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 10 of recurring units of the formula:

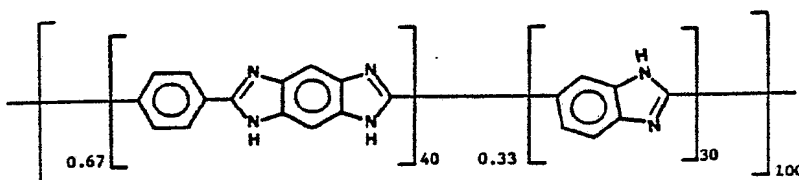




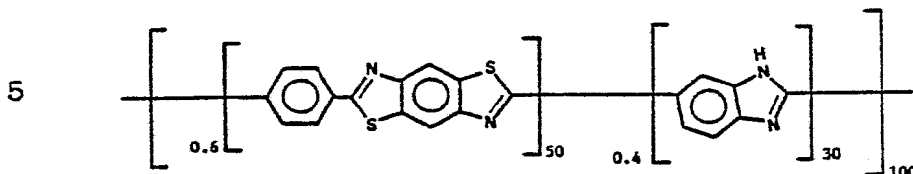
120. A composition of claim 73, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formulas:



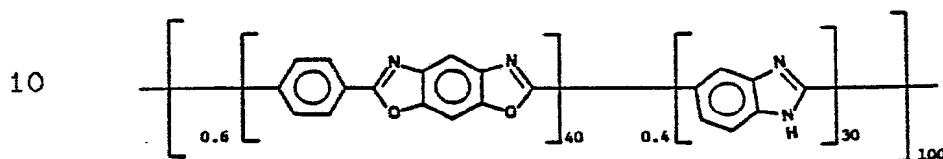
or



121. A composition of claim 97, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

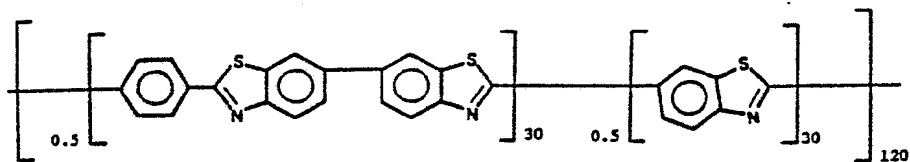


122. A composition of claim 98, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

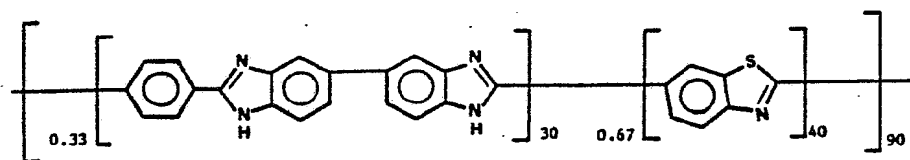
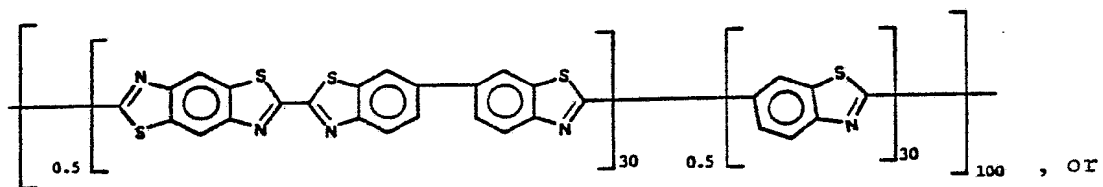


123. A composition of claim 100, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least one block polymer selected from the group consisting of recurring units of the formula:

565



124. A composition of claim 73, wherein  
 said extended chain polymer includes at least one  
 block polymer selected from the group consisting  
 of recurring units of the formulas:



125. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain polymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

- 5           (a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,
- 10           (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a first mixture of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- 15           (c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a first mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- 20           (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or

(c) to provide a first or a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization.

5 (e) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product or a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity, or

10 (f) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homopolymeric product or a first copolymeric product,

15 (g) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product  
20 being formed by like steps (a) and (b) followed by:

(1g) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting mixture of step  
(b) to provide a mixture of a first and second  
25 monomer in the preliminary solvent.



(2g) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or (1g) to provide a first or a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(3g) causing polymerization of the first or first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form said second homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (1g) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product, or

(h) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of a second mixture of at least one of a selected first monomer or a first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent so as to form a monomer-oligomer mixture, and then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of said monomer-oligomer mixture to provide a monomer-oligomer



reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization, said first monomer of said second mixture being formed by like steps (a) and (b) and said first and second monomer of said second mixture being formed by like steps (a), (b) and (c), with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first or first and second monomer of said second mixture, be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

(i) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product resulting from step (g) or the monomer-oligomer resulting from step (h) at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.



570

126. A process for preparing a liquid  
crystalline extended chain homopolymer  
composition of workable viscosity which is useful  
in the production of fibers and films comprising  
the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first  
monomer with or without oxidation protecting  
atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of  
phosphoric acid having a relatively low  
phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the  
resulting mixture under reduced pressure to  
remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups  
present and provide a first mixture of the first  
monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least one of a selected second  
monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to  
provide a first mixture of the first and second  
monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide  
content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or  
(c) to provide a first or a first and second  
monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus  
pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(e) causing polymerization of the first or  
the first and second monomer at a temperature  
sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a  
first homo-oligomeric product having a  
preselected intrinsic viscosity, or





571

(f) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homopolymeric product.



127. A process for preparing a liquid  
crystalline extended chain copolymer composition  
of workable viscosity which is useful in the  
production of fibers and films comprising the  
5 following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first  
monomer with or without oxidation protecting  
atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of  
phosphoric acid having a relatively low  
10 phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the  
resulting mixture under reduced pressure to  
remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups  
present and provide a first mixture of the first  
15 monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least one of a selected second



monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a first mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent, .

5 (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or (c) to provide a first or a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

10 (e) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity, or

15 (f) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first copolymeric product,

129. A process for preparing a liquid  
crystalline extended chain homopolymer  
composition of workable viscosity which is useful  
in the production of fibers and films comprising  
5 the following steps:

- (a) mixing a selected first monomer with or  
without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with  
a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a  
relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,
- 10 (b) heating and optionally placing the  
resulting mixture under reduced pressure to  
remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups  
present and provide a solution of the first  
monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- 15 (c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide  
content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to  
provide a first monomer reaction medium of  
greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for  
polymerization,
- 20 (d) causing polymerization of the first  
monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect  
reaction at a rate to form a first homo-  
oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic  
viscosity or a first homopolymeric product.



575

130. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain homopolymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

5

(a) mixing a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

10

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

15

(c) adding a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

20

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(e) causing polymerization of the first and



second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first homopolymeric product.



577

131. A process for preparing a liquid  
crystalline extended chain copolymer composition  
of workable viscosity which is useful in the  
production of fibers and films comprising the  
5 following steps:

(a) mixing at least two of a selected first  
monomer with or without oxidation protecting  
atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of  
phosphoric acid having a relatively low  
10 phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the  
resulting mixture under reduced pressure to  
remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups  
present and provide a solution of the first  
15 monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least one of a selected second  
monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to  
provide a mixture of the first and second monomer  
in the preliminary solvent,

20 (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide  
content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to  
provide a first and second monomer reaction  
medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content  
suitable for polymerization,



(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first copolymeric product.

132. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain copolymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least two of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer





in the preliminary solvent.

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization.

(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first copolymeric product.

133. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain copolymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

(a) mixing at least two of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to

remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

5           (c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

10           (d) causing polymerization of the the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first copolymeric product.



134. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain block polymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content.

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent.

(c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization.

(d) causing polymerization of the first monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity.

(e) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a), (b), (c), and (d) with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

(f) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.

135. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain block polymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of



phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content.

5 (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent.

10 (c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent.

15 (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization.

20 (e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity.

(f) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric



product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a), (b), (c), (d), and (e) with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product.

(g) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.

136. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain block polymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,



(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a first mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

(f) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of a second mixture of a different first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent, said second mixture being formed by like steps (a), (b) and (c) with the overall proviso that at least one of



the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the second mixture be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

5

(g) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (f) to provide a first oligomer-monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

10

(h) causing polymerization of the mixture resulting from step (g) at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.

15

137. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain block polymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

20

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of





phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

5 (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

10 (c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

15 (d) causing polymerization of the first monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

20 (e) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a) and (b) followed by:



588

(1e) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of a first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

5           (2e) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (1e) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

10           (3e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form said second homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity,

15           with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (1e) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) which forms the first homo-  
20           oligomeric product,

            (f) causing polymerization of the poly-  
oligomeric product at a temperature sufficient to  
effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-  
oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic  
25           viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.



138. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain block polymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) mixing a selected amount of the solution of step (b) with a selected amount of at least one of a selected first homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first oligomeric-first monomer reaction medium, said first homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a) and (b) followed by:

(1c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of a first and second



monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(2c) then increasing the phosphorus  
pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from  
step (1) to provide a first and second monomer  
5 reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide  
content suitable for polymerization,

(3c) causing polymerization of the first and  
second monomer at a temperature sufficient to  
effect reaction at a rate to form said first  
10 homo-oligomeric product having a preselected  
intrinsic viscosity,

with the overall proviso that at least one  
of the selected monomer of step (a) or (1) which  
forms the first monomer solution, be different  
15 from at least one of the selected monomer of step  
(a) which forms the first homo-oligomeric  
product,

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide  
content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to  
20 provide a reaction medium of greater phosphorus  
pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(e) causing polymerization of the first  
oligomer-monomer at a temperature sufficient to



effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.

5        139. A process according to claim 125, 126, 129 or 130 wherein said selected first monomer is selected from the group consisting of:

10        2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol dihydrochloride, 4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydrochloride, 1,2,4,5-tetraaminobenzene tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-dimercaptobenzidine dihydrochloride, 3,3'-dihydroxybenzidine dihydrochloride, 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxybiphenyl dihydrochloride, 3,3'-diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate, 2-(4-carboxyphenyl)-5,6-diaminobenzimidazole dihydrochloride, 3-hydroxy-15        4-aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3-amino-4-hydroxybenzoic acid hydrochloride, 4,5-diaminonaphthalene-1,8-dicarboxylic anhydride, 2,3,7,8-tetrahydroxy-1,4,6,9-tetraazaanthracene, 20        2,2',3,3'-tetrahydroxy-6,6'-biquinoxaline, or 2,3-dihydroxy-6,7-diaminoquinoxaline dihydrochloride.

25        140. A process according to claim 125, 126, 129 or 130 wherein said selected second monomer is selected from the group consisting of:

terephthalic acid, terephthaloyl chloride, or trans-1,4-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid.



141. A process according to claim 125, 127, 131, 132, or 133 wherein said selected first monomer is selected from the group consisting of:

2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol dihydro-  
5 chloride, 4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydro-  
chloride, 1,2,4,5-tetraaminobenzene tetrahydro-  
chloride, 3,3'-dimercaptobenzidine dihydro-  
chloride, 3,3'-dihydroxybenzidine dihydro-  
10 chloride, 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxybiphenyl  
dihydrochloride, 3,3'-diaminobenzidine tetrahy-  
drochloride dihydrate, 2-(4-carboxyphenyl)-5,6-  
diaminobenzimidazole dihydrochloride, 3-hydroxy-  
4-aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3-amino-4-  
15 hydroxybenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3,3'-  
dimercapto-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl ether dihydro-  
chloride, 3,3',4,4'-tetraaminodiphenyl ether  
tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-dihydroxy-4,4'-  
diaminodiphenyl ether, 2,3,5,6-tetraaminopyridine  
20 trihydrochloride, 1,5-diamino-2,6-  
naphthalenedithiol dihydrochloride, 1,5-diamino-  
2,6-naphthalenediol dihydrochloride, 1,2,5,6-  
tetraminonaphthalene tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-  
dimercapto-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl ether dihydro-  
chloride, 3,3',4,4'-tetraaminodiphenyl ether  
25 tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-dihydroxy-4,4'-  
diaminodiphenyl ether, 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-  
dihydroxydiphenyl ether, 3,3',4,4'-



tetraaminodiphenyl sulfone, 3,3'-dimercapto-  
4,4'-diaminodiphenyl sulfone, 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-  
dihydroxydiphenyl sulfone, 3,3',4,4'-  
tetraaminobenzophenone 3,6-diamino-1,2-  
5 benzenedithiol dihydrochloride, 3-mercapto-4-  
aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3-mercapto-4-  
aminobenzoic acid, or 3,4-diaminobenzoic acid.

142. A process according to claim 125, 127,  
131, 132, or 133 wherein said selected second  
10 monomer is selected from the group consisting of:

terephthalic acid, terephthaloyl chloride,  
trans-1,4-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid, 2,5-  
pyridinedicarboxylic acid, 4,4'-  
biphenyldicarboxylic acid, 4,4'-  
15 biphenyldicarboxylic acid chloride, 2,6-  
naphthalenedicarboxylic acid, 3,3'-  
biphenyldicarboxylic acid, trans-1,2-  
cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid, 1,4-bis(5-  
carboxybenzoxazole-2-yl)benzene 2,5-bis(6-  
20 carboxybenzothiazole-2-yl)pyridine, isophthalic  
acid, 4,4'-dicarboxydiphenyl ether, 3,3'-  
dicarboxydiphenyl ether, succinic acid, glutaric  
acid, adipic acid, pimelic acid, sebacic acid,  
pyromellitic dianhydride, or 1,4,5,8-  
25 naphthalenetetracarboxylic dianhydride.

143. A process according to claim 125, 128, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said selected first monomer is selected from the group consisting of:

5           2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol dihydrochloride, 4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydrochloride, 1,2,4,5-tetraaminobenzene tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-dimercaptobenzidine dihydrochloride, 3,3'-dihydroxybenzidine dihydrochloride, 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxybiphenyl  
10           dihydrochloride, 3,3'-diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate, 2-(4-carboxyphenyl)-5,6-diaminobenzimidazole dihydrochloride, 3-hydroxy-4-aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3-amino-4-  
15           hydroxybenzoic acid hydrochloride, 4,5-diaminonaphthalene-1,8-dicarboxylic anhydride, 2,3,7,8-tetrahydroxy-1,4,6,9-tetraazaanthracene, 2,2',3,3'-tetrahydroxy-6,6'-biquinoxaline, 3-mercapto-4-aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3-  
20           mercapto-4-aminobenzoic acid, or 2,3-dihydroxy-6,7-diaminoquinoxaline dihydrochloride.

144. A process according to claim 125, 128, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said selected second monomer is selected from the group consisting of:

25           terephthalic acid, terephthaloyl chloride, or trans-1,4-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid.





145. A process according to claim 125, 128, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said selected first monomer of said second homo-oligomeric product is selected from the group consisting of:

- 5           2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol dihydrochloride, 4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydrochloride, 1,2,4,5-tetraaminobenzene tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-dimercaptobenzidine dihydrochloride, 3,3'-dihydroxybenzidine dihydrochloride, 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxybiphenyl dihydrochloride, 3,3'-diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride dihydrate, 2-(4-carboxyphenyl)-5,6-diaminobenzimidazole dihydrochloride, 3-hydroxy-4-aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3-amino-4-hydroxybenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3,3'-dimercapto-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl ether dihydrochloride, 3,3',4,4'-tetraaminodiphenyl ether tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-dihydroxy-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl ether, 2,3,5,6-tetraaminopyridine trihydrochloride, 1,5-diamino-2,6-naphthalenedithiol dihydrochloride, 1,5-diamino-2,6-naphthalenediol dihydrochloride, 1,2,5,6-tetraminonaphthalene tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-dimercapto-4,4'-diaminodiphenyl ether
- 10
- 15
- 20

dihydrochloride, 3,3',4,4'-tetraaminodiphenyl  
ether tetrahydrochloride, 3,3'-dihydroxy-4,4'-  
diaminodiphenyl ether, 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-  
dihydroxydiphenyl ether, 3,3',4,4'-  
5 tetraaminodiphenyl sulfone, 3,3'-dimercapto-  
4,4'-diaminodiphenyl sulfone, 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-  
dihydroxydiphenyl sulfone, 3,3',4,4'-  
tetraaminobenzophenone 3,6-diamino-1,2-  
benzenedithiol dihydrochloride, 3-mercapto-4-  
10 aminobenzoic acid hydrochloride, 3-mercapto-4-  
aminobenzoic acid, or 3,4-diaminobenzoic acid.

146. A process according to claim 125, 128,  
134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said selected  
second monomer of said second homo-oligomeric  
15 product is selected from the group consisting of:

terephthalic acid, terephthaloyl chloride,  
trans-1,4-cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid, 2,5-  
pyridinedicarboxylic acid, 4,4'-  
biphenyldicarboxylic acid, 4,4'-  
20 biphenyldicarboxylic acid chloride, 2,6-  
naphthalenedicarboxylic acid, 3,3'-  
biphenyldicarboxylic acid, trans-1,2-  
cyclohexanedicarboxylic acid, 1,4-bis(5-  
carboxybenzoxazole-2-yl)benzene 2,5-bis(6-  
25 carboxybenzothiazole-2-yl)pyridine, isophthalic  
acid, 4,4'-dicarboxydiphenyl ether, 3,3'-  
dicarboxydiphenyl ether, succinic acid, glutaric  
acid, adipic acid, pimelic acid, sebacic acid,  
pyromellitic dianhydride, or 1,4,5,8-  
30 naphthalenetetracarboxylic dianhydride.



147. A process according to claim 125, 130, 131, 132, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said selected first monomer is 2,5-diamino-1,4-benzenedithiol dihydrochloride.

5        148. A process according to claim 125, 130, 131, 132, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said selected second monomer is 4,6-diamino-1,3-benzenediol dihydrochloride.

10       149. A process according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

15       150. A process according to claim 139 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

20       151. A process according to claim 140 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

25       152. A process according to claim 141 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

153. A process according to claim 142 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.



154. A process according to claim 143 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

5           155. A process according to claim 144 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

10           156. A process according to claim 145 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

15           157. A process according to claim 146 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

20           158. A process according to claim 147 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

            159. A process according to claim 148 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

25           160. A process according to claim 130 wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted at a temperature greater than about 185°C and at a polymerization time of from about 8 to about 24 hours.



161. A process according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product, or said first blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and about 84% by weight.

162. A process according to claim 139 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product, or said first blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and about 84% by weight.

163. A process according to claim 140 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product, or said first blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and about 84% by weight.

600

164. A process according to claim 141 wherein  
said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first  
homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric  
product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
5 first block-oligomeric product, or said first  
blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization  
reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and  
about 84% by weight.

165. A process according to claim 142 wherein  
10 said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first  
homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric  
product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
first block-oligomeric product, or said first  
blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization  
15 reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and  
about 84% by weight.

166. A process according to claim 143 wherein  
said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first  
homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric  
20 product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
first block-oligomeric product, or said first  
blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization  
reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and  
about 84% by weight.



601

167. A process according to claim 144 wherein  
said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first  
homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric  
product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
5 first block-oligomeric product, or said first  
blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization  
reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and  
about 84% by weight.

168. A process according to claim 145 wherein  
10 said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first  
homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric  
product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
first block-oligomeric product, or said first  
blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization  
15 reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and  
about 84% by weight.

169. A process according to claim 146 wherein  
said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first  
homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric  
20 product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
first block-oligomeric product, or said first  
blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization  
reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and  
about 84% by weight.



170. A process according to claim 147 wherein  
said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first  
homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric  
product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
5 first block-oligomeric product, or said first  
blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization  
reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and  
about 84% by weight.

171. A process according to claim 148 wherein  
10 said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first  
homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric  
product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
first block-oligomeric product, or said first  
blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization  
15 reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and  
about 84% by weight.





172. A process according to claim 130 wherein the time of polymerization is from about 2 hours to about 8 hours.

5 173. A process according to claim 172 wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted at a temperature of greater than about 185°C.

10 174. A process according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

175. A process according to claim 139 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

15 176. A process according to claim 140 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

177. A process according to claim 141 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

20 178. A process according to claim 142 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.



179. A process according to claim 143 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

5 180. A process according to claim 144 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

181. A process according to claim 145 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

10 182. A process according to claim 146 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

15 183. A process according to claim 147 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

184. A process according to claim 148 wherein the time of polymerization is about 8 hours.

20 185. A process according to claim 174 wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted at a temperature of about 185°C.

186. A process according to claim 175 wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted



at a temperature of about 185°C.

187. A process according to claim 176  
wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted  
at a temperature of about 185°C.

5        188. A process according to claim 177  
wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted  
at a temperature of about 185°C.

10       189. A process according to claim 178  
wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted  
at a temperature of about 185°C.

190. A process according to claim 179  
wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted  
at a temperature of about 185°C.

15       191. A process according to claim 180  
wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted  
at a temperature of about 185°C.

192. A process according to claim 181  
wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted  
at a temperature of about 185°C.

20       193. A process according to claim 182  
wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted  
at a temperature of about 185°C.

194. A process according to claim 183 wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted at a temperature of about 185°C.

5 195. A process according to claim 184 wherein said polymerization reaction is conducted at a temperature of about 185°C.

196. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 immediately following polymerization.



197. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 6.

198. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 6.

5        199. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 6.

200. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 6.

201. A polymer according to claim 6.

10       202. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 7.

203. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 7.

15       204. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 7.

205. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 7.

206. A polymer according to claim 7.

20       207. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 8.



208. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 8.

209. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 8.

5           210. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 8.

211. A polymer according to claim 8.

212. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 9.

10           213. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 9.

214. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 9.

15           215. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 9.

216. A polymer according to claim 9.

217. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 10.

20           218. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 10.



219. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 10.

220. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 10.

5 221. A polymer according to claim 10.

222. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 11.

223. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 11.

10 224. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 11.

225. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 11.

226. A polymer according to claim 11.

15 227. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 12.

228. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 12.

20 229. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 12.



230. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 12.

231. A polymer according to claim 12.

5 232. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 13.

233. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 13.

234. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 13.

10 235. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 13.

236. A polymer according to claim 13.

237. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 14.

15 238. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 14.

239. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 14.

20 240. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 14.





611

241. A polymer according to claim 14.

242. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 15.

5 243. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 15.

244. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 15.

245. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 15.

10 246. A polymer according to claim 15.

247. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 16.

248. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 16.

15 249. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 16.

250. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 16.

251. A polymer according to claim 16.

20 252. A fiber drawn from the liquid



crystalline composition of claim 17.

253. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 17.

5 254. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 17.

255. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 17.

256. A polymer according to claim 17.

10 257. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 18.

258. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 18.

259. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 18.

15 260. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 18.

261. A polymer according to claim 18.

262. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 19.

20 263. A film cast from the liquid



crystalline composition of claim 19.

264. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 19.

5 265. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 19.

266. A polymer according to claim 19.

267. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 20.

10 268. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 20.

269. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 20.

270. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 20.

15 271. A polymer according to claim 20.

272. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 22.

273. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 22.

20 274. A film extruded from the liquid



crystalline composition of claim 22.

275. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 22.

276. A polymer according to claim 22.

5           277. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 45.

278. A film cast from the composition of claim 45.

10           279. A film extruded from the composition of claim 45.

280. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 45.

281. A polymer according to claim 45.

15           282. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 46.

283. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 46.

284. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 46.

20           285. A fiber spun from the liquid



crystalline composition of claim 46.

286. A polymer according to claim 46.

5 287. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 47.

288. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 47.

289. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 47.

10 290. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 47.

291. A polymer according to claim 47.

292. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 48.

15 293. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 48.

294. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 48.

20 295. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 48.



616

296. A polymer according to claim 48.

297. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 73.

5 298. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 73.

299. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 73.

300. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 73.

10 301. A polymer according to claim 73.

302. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 74.

303. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 74.

15 304. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 74.

305. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 74.

306. A polymer according to claim 74.

20 307. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 75.



308. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 75.

309. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 75.

5        310. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 75.

311. A polymer according to claim 75.

312. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 76.

10       313. A film cast from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 76.

314. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 76.

15       315. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 76.

316. A polymer according to claim 76.

317. A polymer according to claim 25.



318. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138.

5 319. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138.

320. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138.

10 321. A polymer according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138.

322. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 139.

15 323. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 139.

324. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 139.

325. A polymer according to claim 139.

20 326. A fiber drawn from the liquid





crystalline composition of claim 140.

327. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 140.

5 328. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 140.

329. A polymer according to claim 140.

330. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 141.

10 331. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 141.

332. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 141.

333. A polymer according to claim 141.

15 334. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 142.

335. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 142.

336. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 142.

337. A polymer according to claim 142.

338. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 143.

5 339. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 143.

340. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 143.

341. A polymer according to claim 143.

10 342. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 144.

343. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 144.

344. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 144.

15 345. A polymer according to claim 144.

346. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 145.



621

347. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 145.

348. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 145.

5 349. A polymer according to claim 145.

350. A fiber drawn from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 146.

351. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 146.

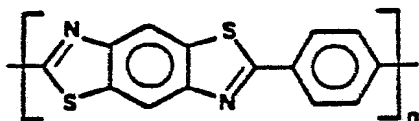
10 352. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 146.

353. A polymer according to claim 146.



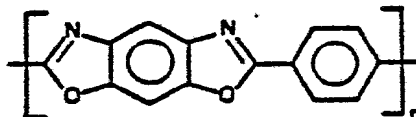
622

354. A polymer according to claim 139  
wherein said polymer is



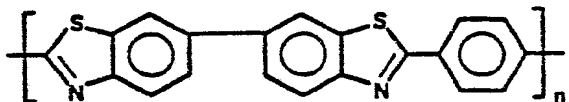
355. A polymer according to claim 354  
5 wherein said polymer has an intrinsic viscosity  
of from about 15dL/g to about 42dl/g.

356. A polymer according to claim 139  
wherein said polymer is



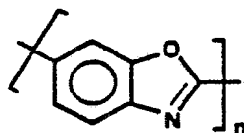
10 357. A polymer according to claim 356  
wherein said polymer has an intrinsic viscosity  
of from about 9dL/g to about 24dl/g.

358. A polymer according to claim 139  
wherein said polymer is



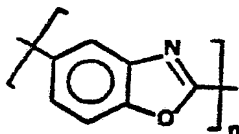
359. A polymer according to claim 358  
wherein said polymer has an intrinsic viscosity  
of about 15dL/g.

5           360. A polymer according to claim 139  
wherein said polymer is



          361. A polymer according to claim 360  
wherein said polymer has an intrinsic viscosity  
10       of about 12dL/g.

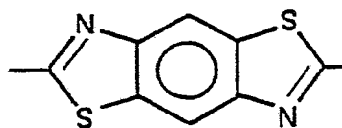
          362. A polymer according to claim 139  
wherein said polymer is



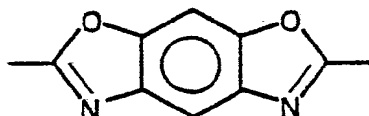
          363. A polymer according to claim 362  
15       wherein said polymer has an intrinsic viscosity  
of about 12dL/g.

624

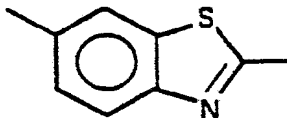
364. A polymer according to claim 141  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety



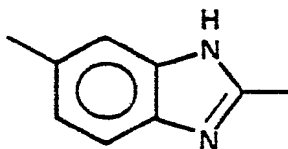
365. A polymer according to claim 141  
5 wherein said polymer contains the moiety



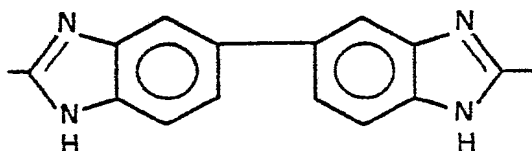
366. A polymer according to claim 141  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety



10 367. A polymer according to claim 141  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety

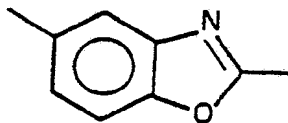


368. A polymer according to claim 141  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety

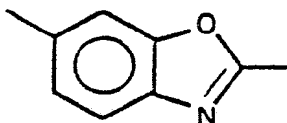


15

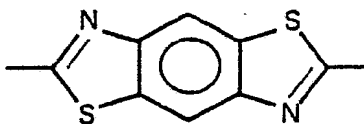
369. A polymer according to claim 141  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety



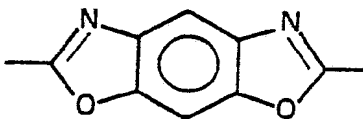
370. A polymer according to claim 141  
5 wherein said polymer contains the moiety



371. A polymer according to claim 143  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety

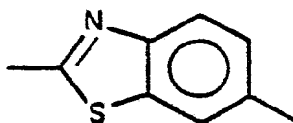


10 372. A polymer according to claim 143  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety

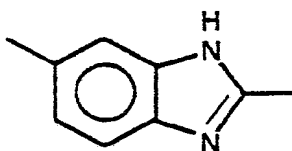


626

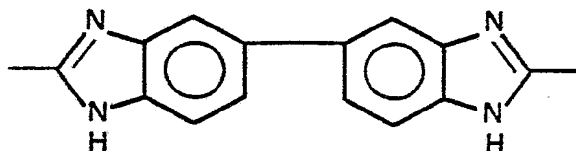
373. A polymer according to claim 143  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety



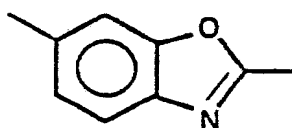
374. A polymer according to claim 143  
5 wherein said polymer contains the moiety



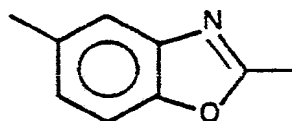
375. A polymer according to claim 143  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety



10 376. A polymer according to claim 143  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety



377. A polymer according to claim 143  
wherein said polymer contains the moiety



15



378. A process according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 133, or 138 wherein said selected first monomer is 3-amino-4-hydroxybenzoic acid hydrochloride.

5 379. A process according to claim 378 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

380. A process according to claim 378 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, said second  
10 homo-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product, or said first blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and about 84% by weight.

15 381. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 380.

382. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 380.

20 383. A process according to claim 381 wherein said spinning is conducted at an initial draw ratio of from about 5:1 to about 50:1.

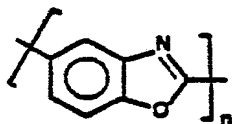


628

384. A process according to claim 381 wherein said spinning is conducted at a temperature between about 60°C to about 100°C.

5 385. A process according to claim 381 wherein said spinning is conducted through an air-gap separation distance of from about 1 cm to about 100 cm before allowing said fiber to entering into a coagulation bath.

386. A polymer according to claim 380 wherein said polymer is



387. A polymer according to claim 380 wherein said polymer has an intrinsic viscosity greater than about 11 dl/g.

15 388. A process according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 133, or 138 wherein said selected first monomer is 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxybiphenyl dihydrochloride.

389. A process according to claim 388 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

390. A process according to claim 388 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, said second  
5 homo-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product, or said first blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and about 84% by weight.

391. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition  
10 of claim 390.

392. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 390.

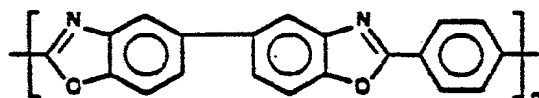
393. A process according to claim 391 wherein said spinning is conducted at an initial draw ratio of from about 5:1 to  
15 about 50:1.

394. A process according to claim 391 wherein said spinning is conducted at a temperature between about 60°C to about 100°C.

395. A process according to claim 391 wherein said spinning is conducted through an air-gap separation distance of from  
20 about 1 cm to about 100 cm before allowing said fiber to entering into a coagulation bath.



396. A polymer according to claim 390 wherein said polymer is



5 397. A polymer according to claim 390 wherein said polymer has an intrinsic viscosity greater than about 11 dl/g.

398. A process according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 133, or 138 wherein said selected first monomer is 3,3'-dimercaptobenzidine dihydrochloride.

10 399. A process according to claim 398 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content in said preliminary solvent is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

15 400. A process according to claim 398 wherein said phosphorus pentoxide content of said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product, or said first blockpolymeric product formed by said polymerization reaction is present in an amount between about 82% and about 84% by weight.

401. A fiber spun from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 400.

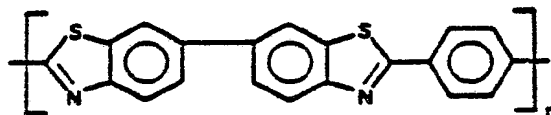
402. A film extruded from the liquid crystalline composition of claim 400.

5 403. A process according to claim 401 wherein said spinning is conducted at an initial draw ratio of from about 5:1 to about 50:1.

10 404. A process according to claim 401 wherein said spinning is conducted at a temperature between about 60°C to about 100°C.

405. A process according to claim 401 wherein said spinning is conducted through an air-gap separation distance of from about 1 cm to about 100 cm before allowing said fiber to entering into a coagulation bath.

15 406. A polymer according to claim 400 wherein said polymer is



407. A polymer according to claim 400 wherein said polymer has an intrinsic viscosity greater than about 11 dl/g.

408. A composition according to claim 1, wherein said composition is an extended chain homopolymer composition characterized as having a phosphorus pentoxide content within the range from about 82% to about 86% by weight based on the total weight of said solution of polyphosphoric acid, having a total polymer concentration of at least greater than about 10% by weight based on the total weight of said composition, and having an intrinsic viscosity of at least about 7 dL/g as determined in methanesulfonic acid at 30°C.
409. A composition according to claim 1, wherein said composition is an extended chain copolymer composition characterized as having a phosphorus pentoxide content within the range from about 82% to about 86% by weight based on the total weight of said solution of polyphosphoric acid, having a total polymer concentration of at least greater than about 7% by weight based on the total weight of said composition, and having an intrinsic viscosity of at least about 5 dL/g as determined in methanesulfonic acid at 30°C.
410. A composition according to claim 1, wherein said composition is an extended chain blockpolymer composition characterized as having a phosphorus pentoxide content within the range from about 82% to about 86% by weight based on the total weight of said solution of polyphosphoric acid, having a total polymer concentration of at least greater than about 7% by weight based on the total weight of said composition, and having an intrinsic viscosity of at least about 10 dL/g as determined in methanesulfonic acid at 30°C.



411. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.96 GPa.

5 412. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 89.6 GPa.

413. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 having in combination:  
10 a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.96 GPa;  
a modulus of at least about 89.6 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 4.2 percent.

15 414. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.45 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen for 60 seconds.

20 415. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 317 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen for 60 seconds.



416. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having in combination:

- 5       an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
3.45 GPa;  
a modulus of at least about 317 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 1.8  
percent after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen  
for 60 seconds.

- 10       417. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.07 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2 percent.

- 15       418. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 410 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2 percent.

- 20       419. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having in combination:

- 25       an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.07 GPa; and  
a modulus of at least about 410 GPa; after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2 percent.



420. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.58 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.5 percent.

421. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 467 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.5 percent.

422. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.58 GPa; and

a modulus of at least about 467 GPa; after heat treatment at about 500°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.5 percent.

423. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.07 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.8 percent.



636

421. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 394 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.8 percent.

5

422. A fiber spun from the homo-polymeric product of claim 173 being characterized as having in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.07 GPa; and

10

a modulus of at least about 394 GPa; after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.8 percent.

423. A process according to claim 130 wherein the time of polymerization is from about 1 hour to about 3 hours.

15

424. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.34 GPa.

425. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.57 GPa.

20

426. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.57 GPa.

25



637

427. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.83 GPa.

5 428. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.76 GPa.

429. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 5.01 GPa.

10 430. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.38 GPa.

15 431. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.29 GPa.

432. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having in combination:  
an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.34 GPa; and  
20 a modulus of at least about 41 GPa.

433. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having in combination:  
an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.76 GPa; and  
25 a modulus of at least about 41 GPa.



434. A fiber spun from the composition of claim  
200 having in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
3.57 GPa;

5 a modulus of at least about 133 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 3.3  
percent.

435. A fiber spun from the composition of claim  
200 having in combination:

10 an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
2.57 GPa;

a modulus of at least about 79 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 4.6  
percent.

15 436. A fiber spun from the composition of claim  
200 having in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
2.83 GPa;

20 a modulus of at least about 61 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 4.8  
percent.

437. A fiber spun from the composition of claim  
200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least  
about 4.94 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in  
25 nitrogen for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about  
4.37 percent.



438. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.34 GPa after heat treatment at about 400°C in nitrogen for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about 4.37 percent.

439. A fiber spun from the composition of claim 200 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.62 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about 1.28 percent.

440. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.96 GPa.

441. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 89.6 GPa.

442. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 having in combination:  
a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.96 GPa;  
a modulus of at least about 89.6 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 4.2 percent.

443. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being



640

characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.45 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen for 60 seconds.

5        444. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 317 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen for 60 seconds.

10        445. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having in combination:  
an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.45 GPa;  
a modulus of at least about 317 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 1.8 percent after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen  
15        for 60 seconds.

20        446. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.07 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2 percent.

447. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 410 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2 percent.



448. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.07 GPa; and

5 a modulus of at least about 410 GPa; after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2 percent.

449. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of  
10 at least about 3.58 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.5 percent.

450. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 467  
15 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.5 percent.

451. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
20 3.58 GPa; and a modulus of at least about 467 GPa; after heat treatment at about 500°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.5 percent.

5           452. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.07 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.8 percent.

          453. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having a modulus of at least about 394 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.8 percent.

10           454. A fiber of the polymer of claim 356 being characterized as having in combination:  
            an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.07 GPa; and  
            a modulus of at least about 394 GPa; after heat  
15           treatment at about 450°C in air for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 2.8 percent.

          455. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having in combination:  
            an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
20           2.34 GPa; and  
            a modulus of at least about 136 GPa; after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen for 60 seconds under a stretch factor of about 7.5 percent.





456. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having  
in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
2.85 GPa;

5 a modulus of at least about 119 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 2.5  
percent after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen  
for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about 4.37  
percent.

10 457. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having  
in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
3.34 GPa;

15 a modulus of at least about 115 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 3.6  
percent after heat treatment at about 400°C in nitrogen  
for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about 4.37  
percent.

20 458. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having  
in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
2.62 GPa;

25 a modulus of at least about 144 GPa; and  
an elongation at break of at least about 2.2  
percent after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen  
for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about 1.28  
percent.



644

459. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.34 GPa.

460. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.57 GPa.

5           461. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.57 GPa.

462. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.83 GPa.

10           463. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.76 GPa.

464. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 5.01 GPa.

465. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.38 GPa.

15           466. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.29 GPa.

467. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having in combination:

20           an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 2.34 GPa; and

a modulus of at least about 41 GPa.



468. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having  
in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
2.76 GPa; and

5 a modulus of at least about 41 GPa.

469. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having  
in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
3.57 GPa;

10 a modulus of at least about 133 GPa; and

an elongation at break of at least about 3.3  
percent.

470. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having  
in combination:

15 an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
2.57 GPa;

a modulus of at least about 79 GPa; and

an elongation at break of at least about 4.6  
percent.

20 471. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having  
in combination:

an ultimate tensile strength of at least about  
2.83 GPa;

a modulus of at least about 61 GPa; and

25 an elongation at break of at least about 4.8  
percent.



472. A fiber of from the polymer of claim 362 having an ultimate tensile strength of at least about 4.94 GPa after heat treatment at about 450°C in nitrogen for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about 4.37 percent.

473. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.76 GPa after heat treatment at about 400°C in nitrogen for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about 4.37 percent.

474. A fiber of the polymer of claim 362 having a ultimate tensile strength of at least about 3.00 GPa after heat treatment at about 500°C in nitrogen for 30 seconds under a stretch factor of about 1.28 percent.

475. A process according to claim 125, 126, 129, or 130 wherein said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.

476. A process according to claim 125, 127, 131, 132, or 133 wherein said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.

477. A process according to claim 125, 128, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.



478. A process according to claim 125, 130, 131, 132, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.

5           479. A process according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.

10           480. A process for preparing a liquid crystalline extended chain polymer composition of workable viscosity which is useful in the production of fibers and films comprising the following steps:

15           (a) incorporating at least one of a selected monomer in a preliminary solvent; and

(b) causing polymerization of said monomer;

said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.



## AMENDED CLAIMS

[received by the International Bureau on 9 April 1984 (09.04.84)  
original claims 1, 125 to 138, and 483 amended; new claims 484 to 495 added  
the texts of the amended and new claims follow]

1. A novel polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful as a dope in the production of fibers and films comprising a polycondensation product consisting essentially of a blend of a solution of certain polyphosphoric acids and a high concentration of at least one high molecular weight extended chain polymer having one or more mesogenic group or groups, said extended chain polymer being present in sufficient concentration so as to be capable of exhibiting an anisotropic polymer phase alone or in combination with one or more different polymers with or without mesogenic group or groups, said extended chain polymer being selected from the group consisting of: a homopolymer, a copolymer, or a block polymer, said composition having a total polymer concentration of at least greater than about 10 percent by weight based on the total weight of said composition and a phosphorus pentoxide content of at least about 82 percent by weight based on the total weight of said solution of polyphosphoric acids.

2. A composition according to claim 1, wherein said composition exhibits high speed spin-drawability and is further characterized as having high cohesive strength, capable of being drawn through long air gap distances and spun at high draw ratios.

3. A composition according to claim 1, wherein said composition is characterized as



125. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

5           (a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content.

10           (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a first mixture of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent.

15           (c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a first mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent.

20           (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or



126. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process  
5 comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low  
10 phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a first mixture of the first  
15 monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a first mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

20 (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or (c) to provide a first or a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

25 (e) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity, or





127. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process  
5 comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low  
10 phosphorus pentoxide content.

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a first mixture of the first  
15 monomer in the preliminary solvent.

(c) adding at least one of a selected second



monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a first mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent.

5 (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or (c) to provide a first or a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

10 (e) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity, or

15 (f) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first copolymeric product.

20 128. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

25 (a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,



(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a first mixture of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

5 (c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a first mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

10 (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or (c) to provide a first or a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

15 (e) causing polymerization of the first or the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product or a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity, or

20 (f) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a) and (b) followed by:

25 (lf) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting mixture of step (b) to provide a mixture of a first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,



(2f) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) or (1f) to provide a first or a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(3f) causing polymerization of the first or first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form said second homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity, with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (1f) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product, or

(g) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of a second mixture of at least one of a selected first monomer or a first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent so as to form a monomer-oligomer mixture, and then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of said monomer-oligomer mixture to provide a monomer-oligomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization, said first monomer of said second mixture being formed by like steps (a) and (b) and said first and



second monomer of said second mixture being formed by like steps (a), (b) and (c), with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first or first and second monomer of said second mixture, be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

(h) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product resulting from step (f) or the monomer-oligomer resulting from step (g) at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first block-polymeric product.



129. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

- 5 (a) mixing a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,
- 10 (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- 15 (c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,
- 20 (d) causing polymerization of the first monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first homopolymeric product.



130. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

5

(a) mixing a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

10

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

15

(c) adding a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,

20

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(e) causing polymerization of the first and



131. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

- 5
- (a) mixing at least two of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,
- 10
- (b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- 15
- (c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer in the preliminary solvent,
- 20
- (d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,





(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first copolymeric product.

132. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) adding at least two of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step (b) to provide a mixture of the first and second monomer



in the preliminary solvent.

(d) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (c) to provide a first and second monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization.

(e) causing polymerization of the first and second monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first co-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first copolymeric product.

133. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least two of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to



134. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process  
5 comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low  
10 phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first  
15 monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (b) to provide a first monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for  
20 polymerization,

(d) causing polymerization of the first monomer at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first homo-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic  
25 viscosity,



(e) mixing a selected amount of the first homo-oligomeric product with a selected amount of at least one of a selected second homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a), (b), (c), and (d) with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product.

(f) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.

135. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of



product so as to form a first poly-oligomeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a), (b), (c), (d), and (e) with the overall proviso that at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the second homo-oligomeric product be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

(g) causing polymerization of the poly-oligomeric product at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.

136. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,



the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the second mixture be different from at least one of the selected monomer of step (a) or (c) which forms the first homo-oligomeric product,

(g) then increasing the phosphorus pentoxide content of the mixture resulting from step (f) to provide a first oligomer-monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content suitable for polymerization,

(h) causing polymerization of the mixture resulting from step (g) at a temperature sufficient to effect reaction at a rate to form a first block-oligomeric product having a preselected intrinsic viscosity or a first blockpolymeric product.

137. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of



138. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process  
5 comprises the following steps:

(a) mixing at least one of a selected first monomer with or without oxidation protecting atoms or groups with a preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low  
10 phosphorus pentoxide content,

(b) heating and optionally placing the resulting mixture under reduced pressure to remove any volatilized protecting atoms or groups present and provide a solution of the first  
15 monomer in the preliminary solvent,

(c) mixing a selected amount of the solution of step (b) with a selected amount of at least one of a selected first homo-oligomeric product so as to form a first oligomeric-first monomer  
20 reaction medium, said first homo-oligomeric product being formed by like steps (a) and (b) followed by:

(1c) adding at least one of a selected second monomer in the resulting solution of step  
25 (b) to provide a mixture of a first and second



481. A process according to claim 125, 130, 131, 132, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.

5        482. A process according to claim 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, or 138 wherein said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.

10        483. A process for preparing an extended chain polymer composition, said composition is characterized as being liquid-crystalline and having a workable viscosity useful in the production of fibers and films, said process comprises the following steps:

15        (a) incorporating at least one of a selected monomer in a preliminary solvent; and

(b) causing polymerization of said monomer;

20        said steps are conducted within the shaded phosphorus pentoxide content profile area bounded by ABCDEFGHI of FIGURE 14.

25        484. A process according to claim 482 further comprising spinning said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said poly-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product or said first block-polymeric product through an air-gap and into a coagulation bath thereby forming a fiber.





485. A process according to claim 482 further comprising extruding said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, said second  
 5 homo-oligomeric product, said poly-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product or said first block-polymeric product through an air-gap and into a coagulation bath thereby forming a film.

486. A process according to claim 482, wherein a  
 10 selected weight in grams,  $a^*$  of said preliminary solvent of phosphoric acid having a relatively low phosphorus pentoxide content,  $m_o$ , is added in accordance with the empirical equation:

$$a^* = \left\{ [1-f] \left( \left[ \frac{P_y}{P_c} \right] - P_y \right) - [n_o (18.02) / M_w] P_y \right\} (1-m_o)^{-1}$$

15 where  $P_y$  = weight in grams of a predetermined theoretical yield of said extended chain homopolymer, copolymer, or blockpolymer;

$P_c$  = preselected weight fraction of said extended chain homopolymer, copolymer, or blockpolymer of the total weight  
 20 of said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, or said first block-polymeric product following polymerization;

$n_o$  = integer number of moles of polycondensation by-product per moles of repeating unit of said extended chain  
 25 homopolymer, copolymer, or blockpolymer;

18.02 = molecular weight of polycondensation by-product;

$M_w$  = molecular weight of said extended chain homopolymer, copolymer, or blockpolymer recurring unit; and



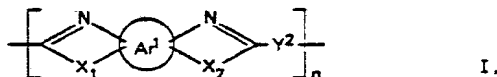
f = preselected phosphorus pentoxide content of said first homo-oligomeric product, said first co-oligomeric product, said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, said second homo-oligomeric product, said  
 5 poly-oligomeric product, said first block-oligomeric product or said first block-polymeric product,

said f being achieved by incorporating a selected intermediate weight in grams,  $b^*$  of phosphorus pentoxide in said increasing phosphorus pentoxide content step forming  
 10 said first monomer reaction medium, said first and second monomer reaction medium, said monomer-oligomer reaction medium, or said first oligomer-monomer reaction medium of greater phosphorus pentoxide content in accordance with the empirical equation:

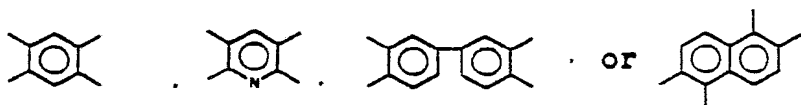
$$15 \quad b^* = [P_y/P_c] - P_y - \left[ \frac{n_o(18.02)}{M_w} \right] P_y - a^* .$$

487. A process according to claim 486, wherein  $m_o$  is present in an amount below about 77% by weight.

488. A composition prepared by the process of claim 487, wherein said extended chain polymer includes at least  
 20 one homopolymer having the recurring units of the general formula:

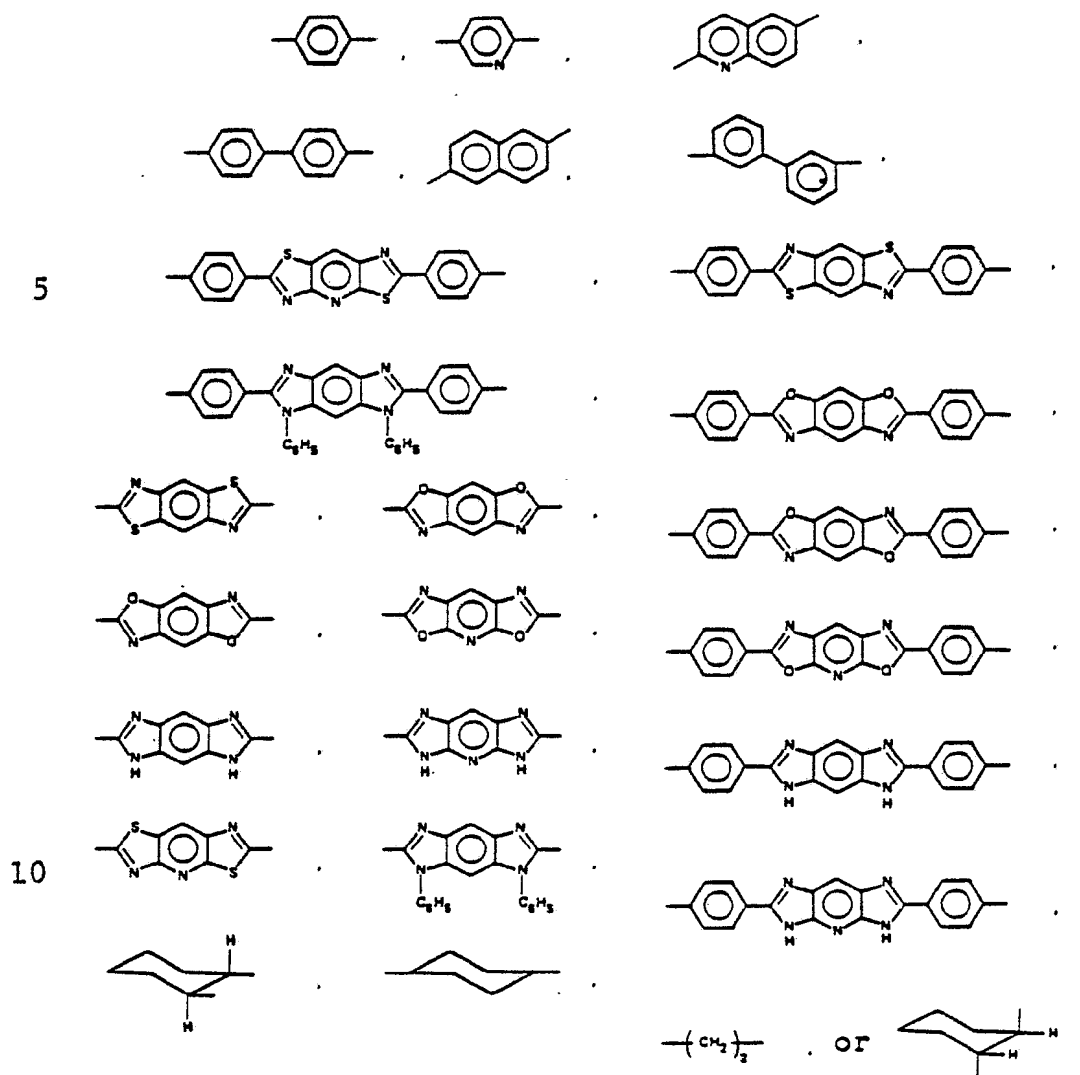


wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

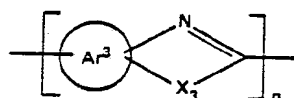


25  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^1$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to

one another and  $Y^2$  is nil or represents a bivalent organic radical and is

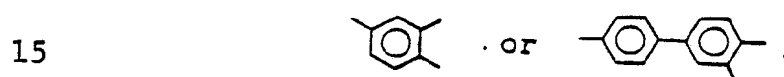


n being a positive integer;

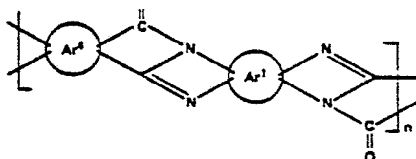


II.

wherein  $Ar^3$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

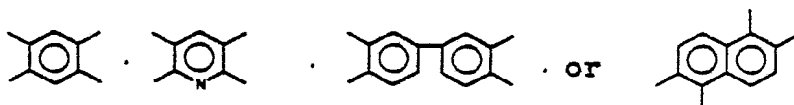


$X_3$  is oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_3$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^3$ , N and  $X_3$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, n being a positive integer;

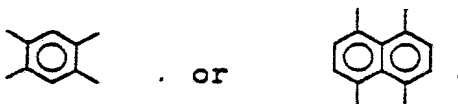


III.

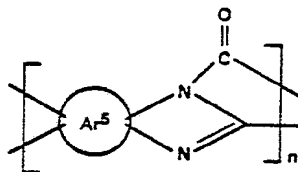
wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



and  $Ar^4$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is

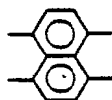


the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$  and the carbon atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^4$ , n being a positive integer;

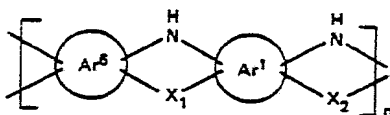


IV.

wherein  $Ar^5$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

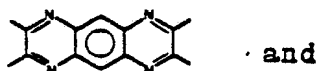
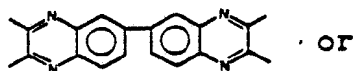


the nitrogen atoms being bonded to  $Ar^5$ , n being a positive integer;

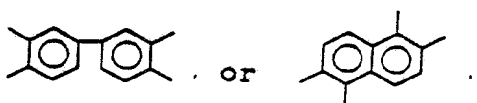


V.

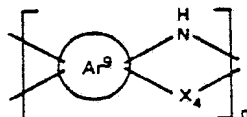
wherein  $\text{Ar}^6$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



$\text{Ar}^1$  represents a different aromatic moiety and is

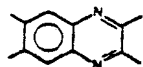


$\text{X}_1$  and  $\text{X}_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $\text{X}_4$  and  $\text{X}_5$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^6$  and  $\text{Ar}^1$ , NH and  $\text{X}_1$  or  $\text{X}_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another, n being a positive integer;

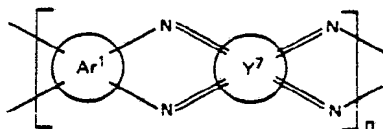


VI.

wherein  $\text{Ar}^9$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

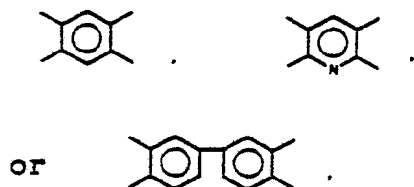


$\text{X}_4$  is sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the NH groups and  $\text{X}_4$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $\text{Ar}^9$ , n being a positive integer;



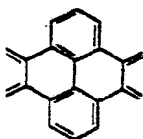
VII.

wherein  $\text{Ar}^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is

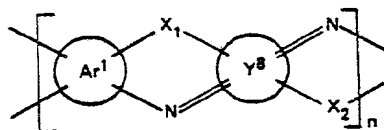


$Y^7$  represents an aromatic or heteroaromatic moiety and is

5



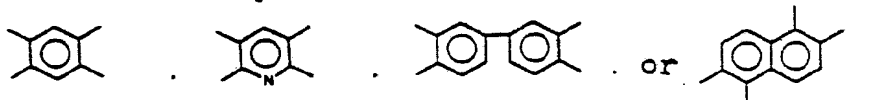
the nitrogen atoms being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$  and bonded to adjacent carbon atoms of  $Y^7$ ,  $n$  being a positive integer:



VIII.

10

wherein  $Ar^1$  represents an aromatic moiety and is



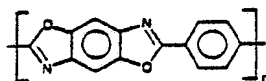
$Y^8$  is



15

$X_1$  and  $X_2$  are the same or different and are sulfur, oxygen, or NR (R being hydrogen or an organic group), the nitrogen atoms and  $X_1$  and  $X_2$  being bonded to aromatic carbon atoms of  $Ar^1$  and adjacent carbon atoms of  $Y^8$ , N and  $X_1$  or  $X_2$  of each hetero ring are disposed ortho to one another,  $n$  being a positive integer.

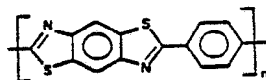
489. A composition prepared by the process of claim  
488 wherein said extended chain polymer is



wherein n is at least greater than 60.

5

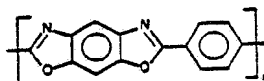
490. A composition prepared by the process of claim  
488 wherein said extended chain polymer is



wherein n is at least greater than 70.

10

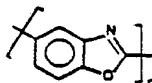
491. A composition prepared by the process of claim  
488 wherein said extended chain polymer is



wherein n is at least greater than 60.

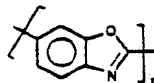
15

492. A composition prepared by the process of claim  
488 wherein said extended chain polymer is



wherein n is at least greater than 60.

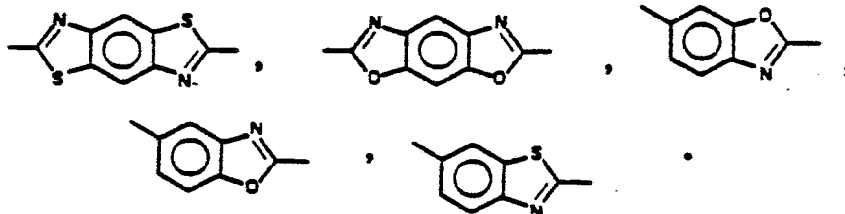
493. A composition prepared by the process of claim  
488 wherein said extended chain polymer is



20

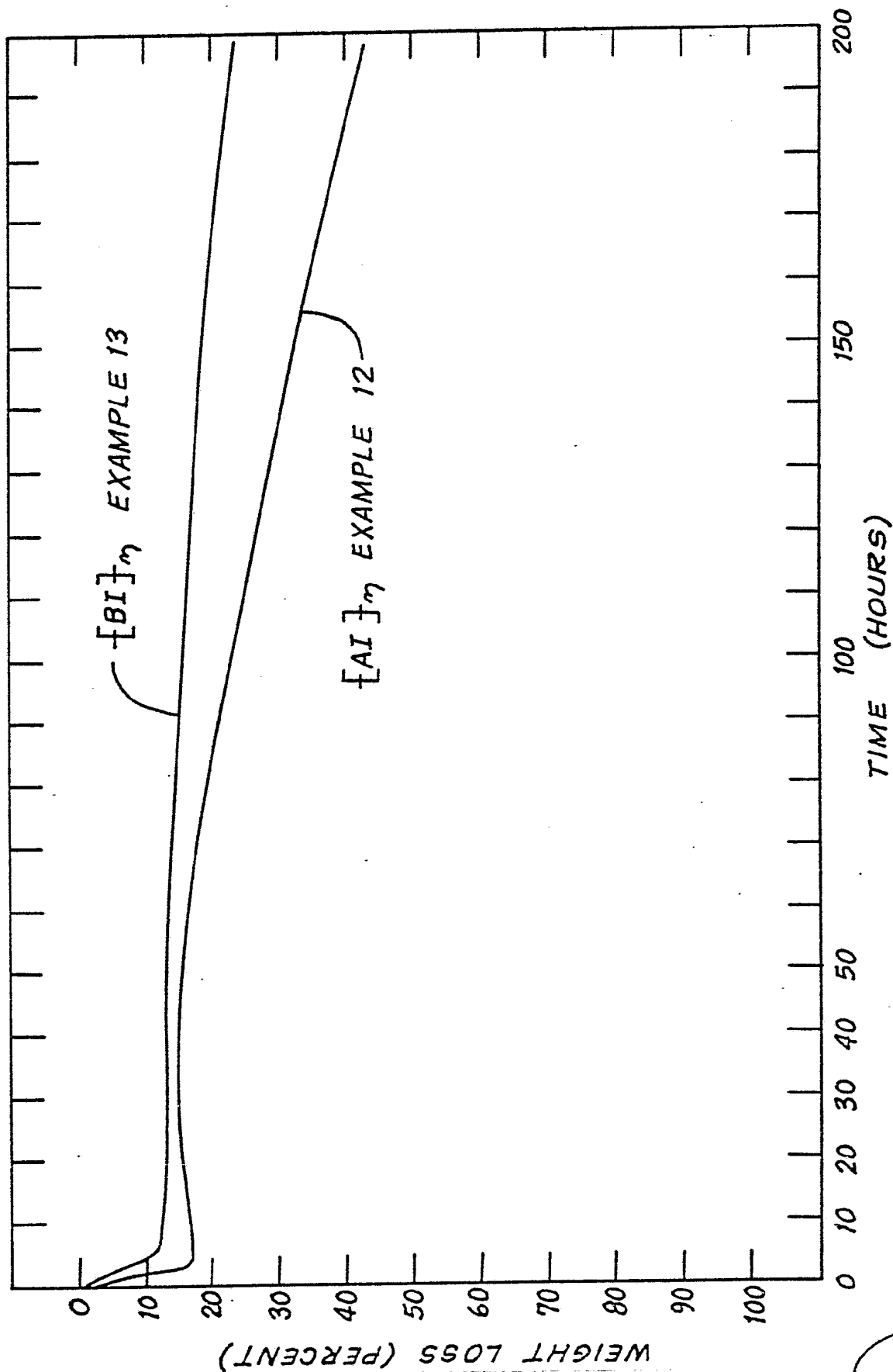
wherein n is at least greater than 60.

494. A composition prepared by the process of claim 486 wherein said extended chain polymer contains at least one of the following moieties



10 495. A composition prepared by the process of claim 486, wherein the intrinsic viscosity of said extended chain polymer of said first homopolymeric product, said first copolymeric product, and said first block-polymeric product is at least about 12 dL/g as determined in methanesulfonic acid at 30°C;  $P_c$  is at least greater than about 14% by weight based on said composition; and  $f$  is at least 82% by weight based on the total weight of said solution of polyphosphoric acid.

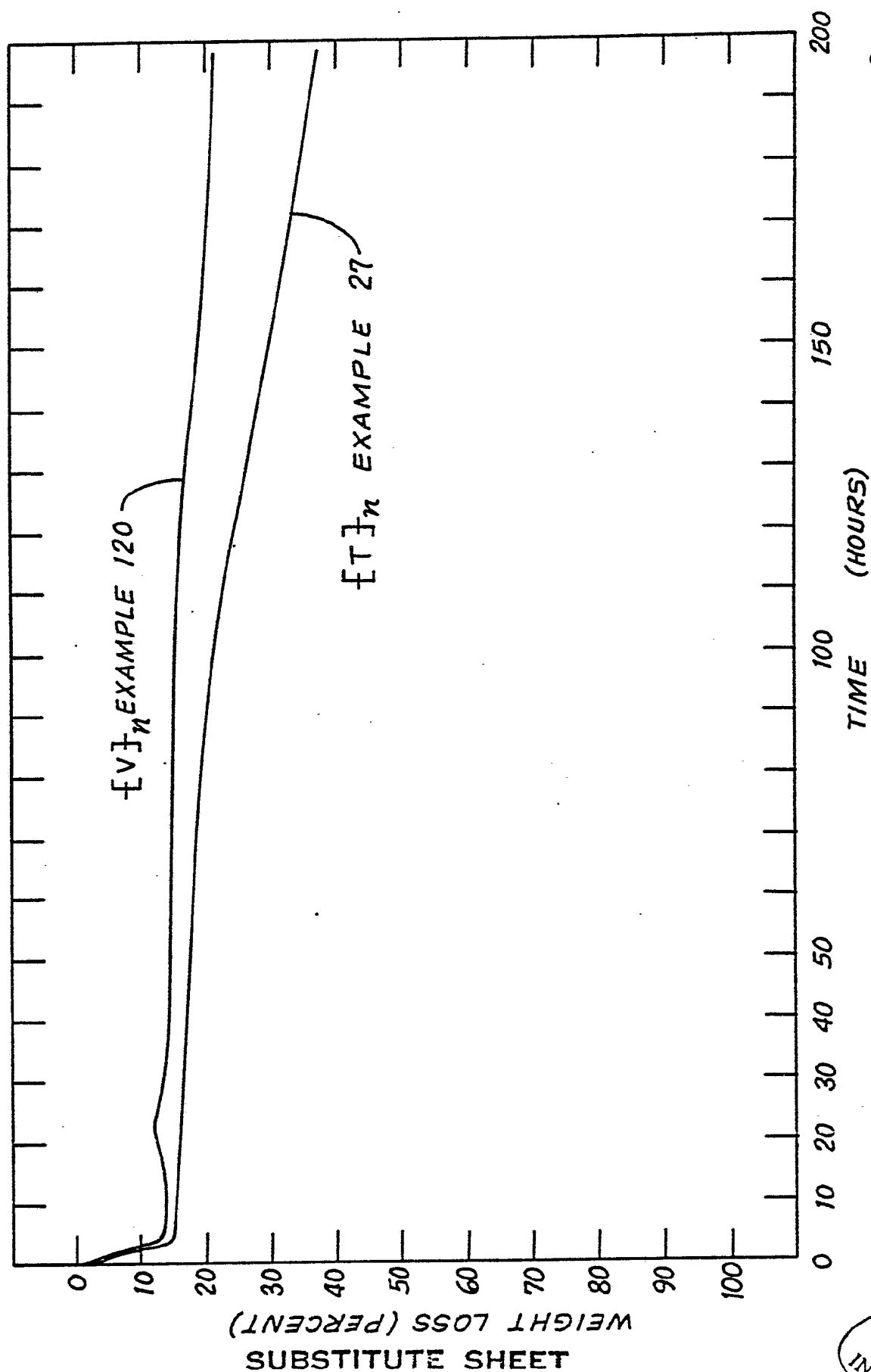




ISOTHERMAL AGING OF A SPUN POLYMER FIBER IN CIRCULATING AIR AT 371°C

FIG. 1





ISOTHERMAL AGING OF PRECIPITATED POLYMER IN CIRCULATING AIR AT 371°C

FIG. 2

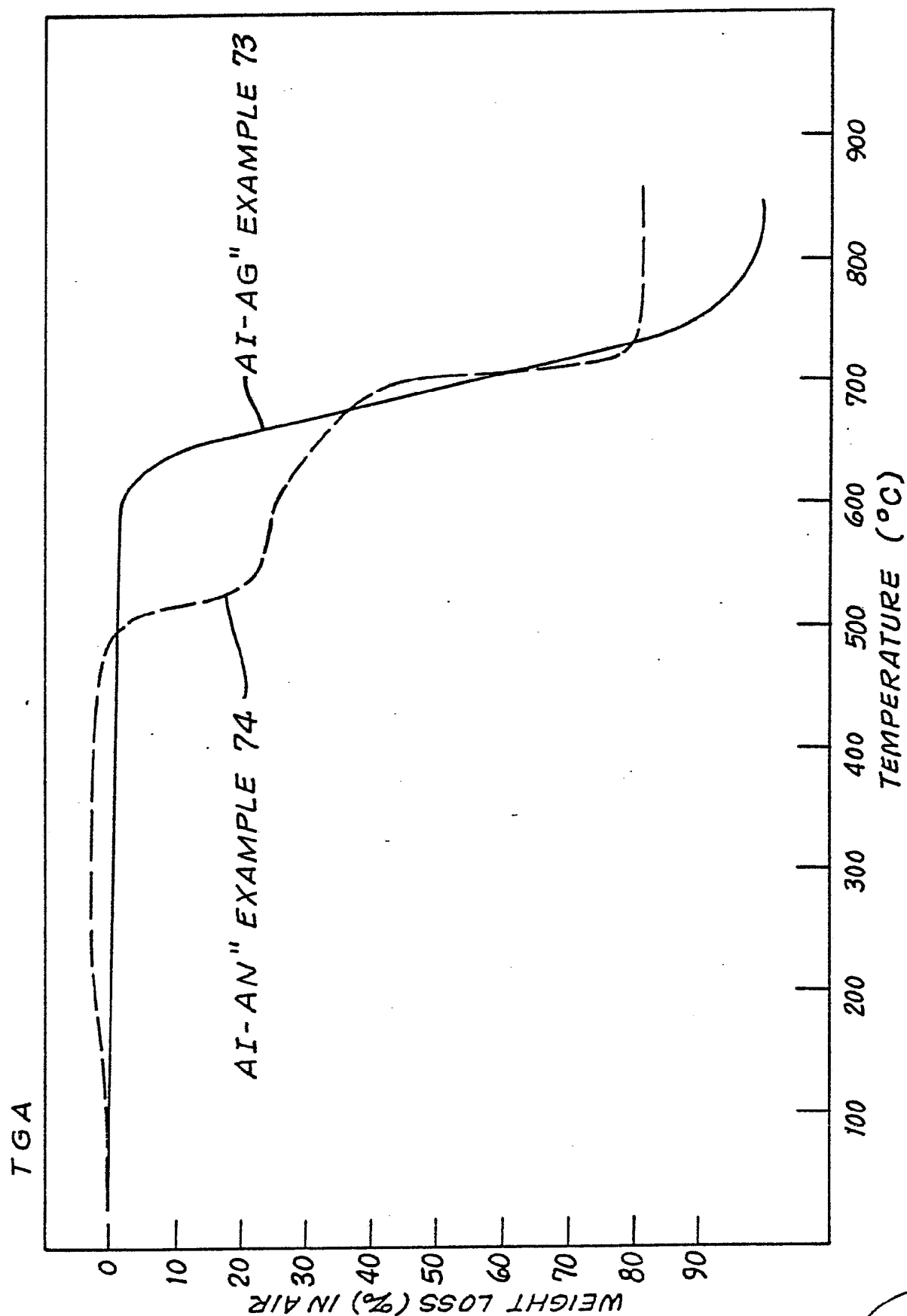
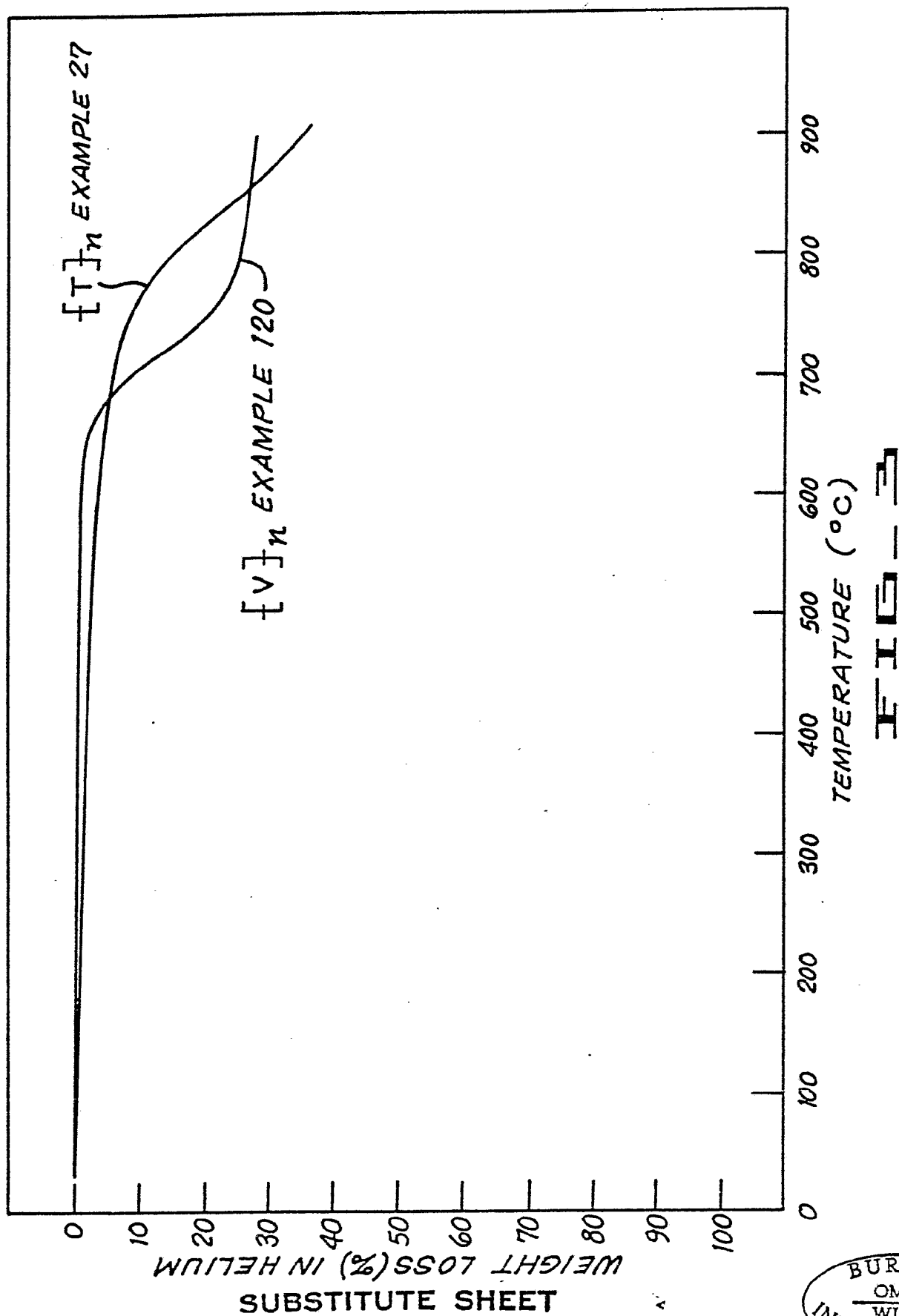


FIG. 2A



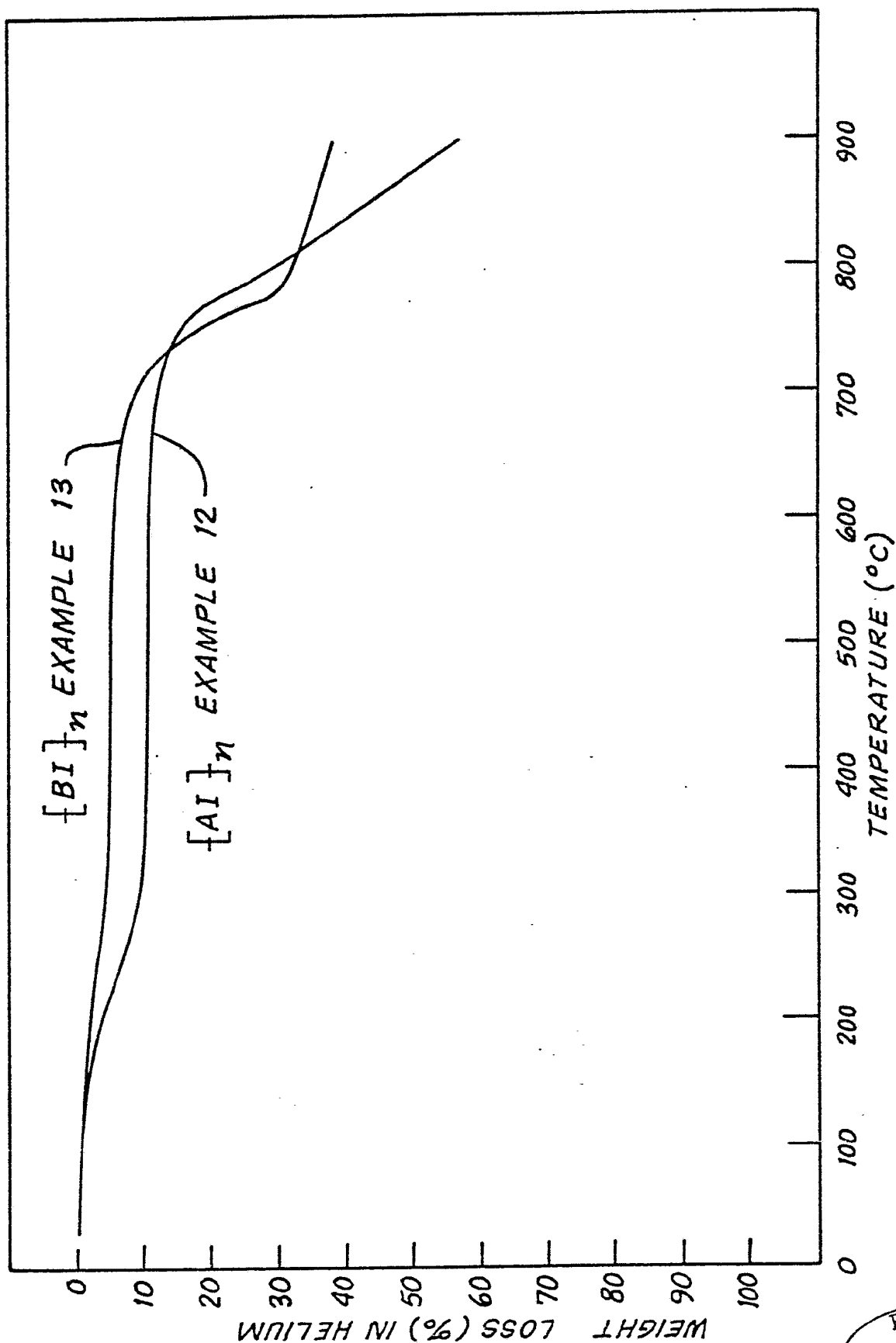


FIG. 4

EXHIBIT 100



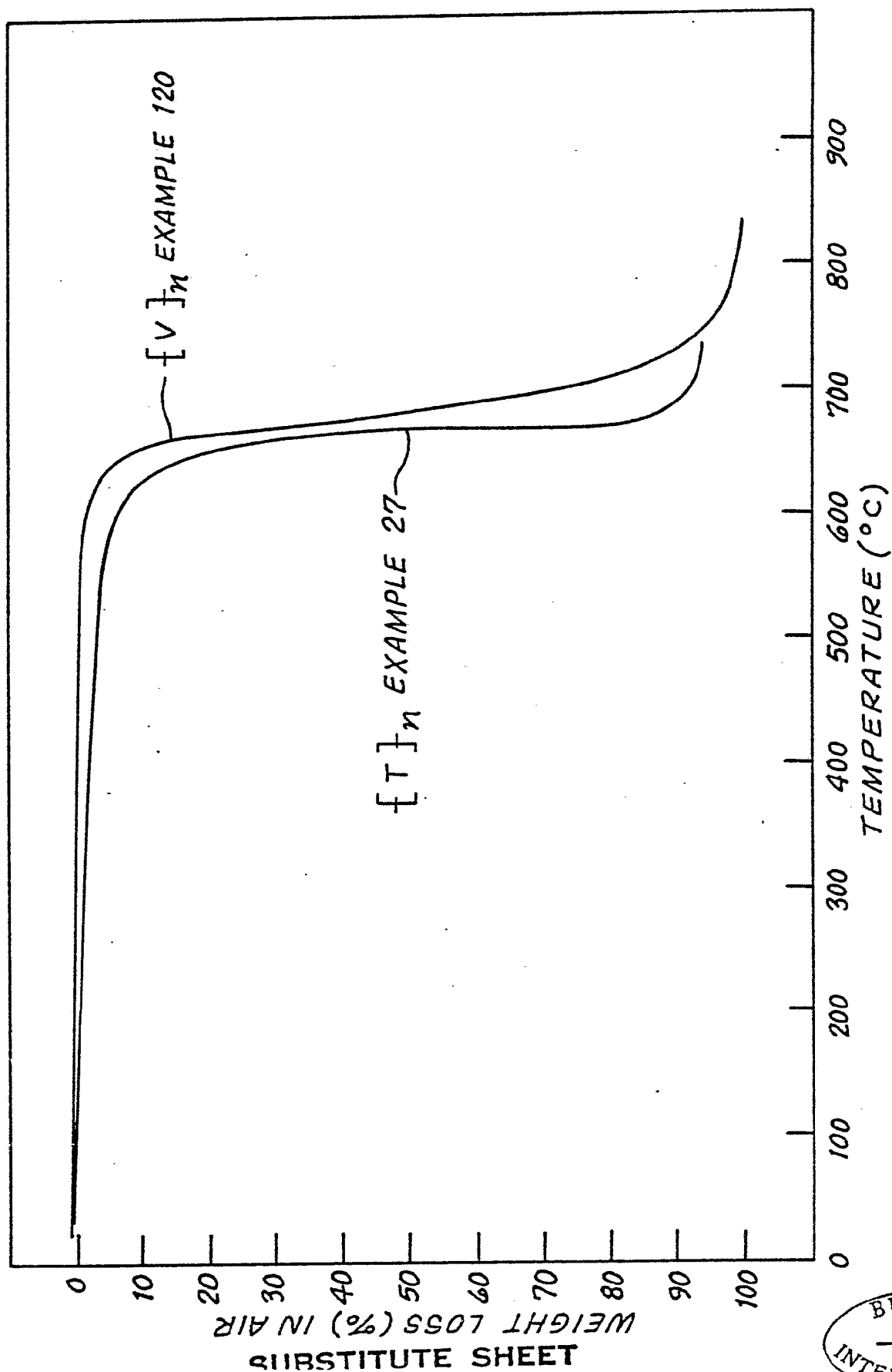
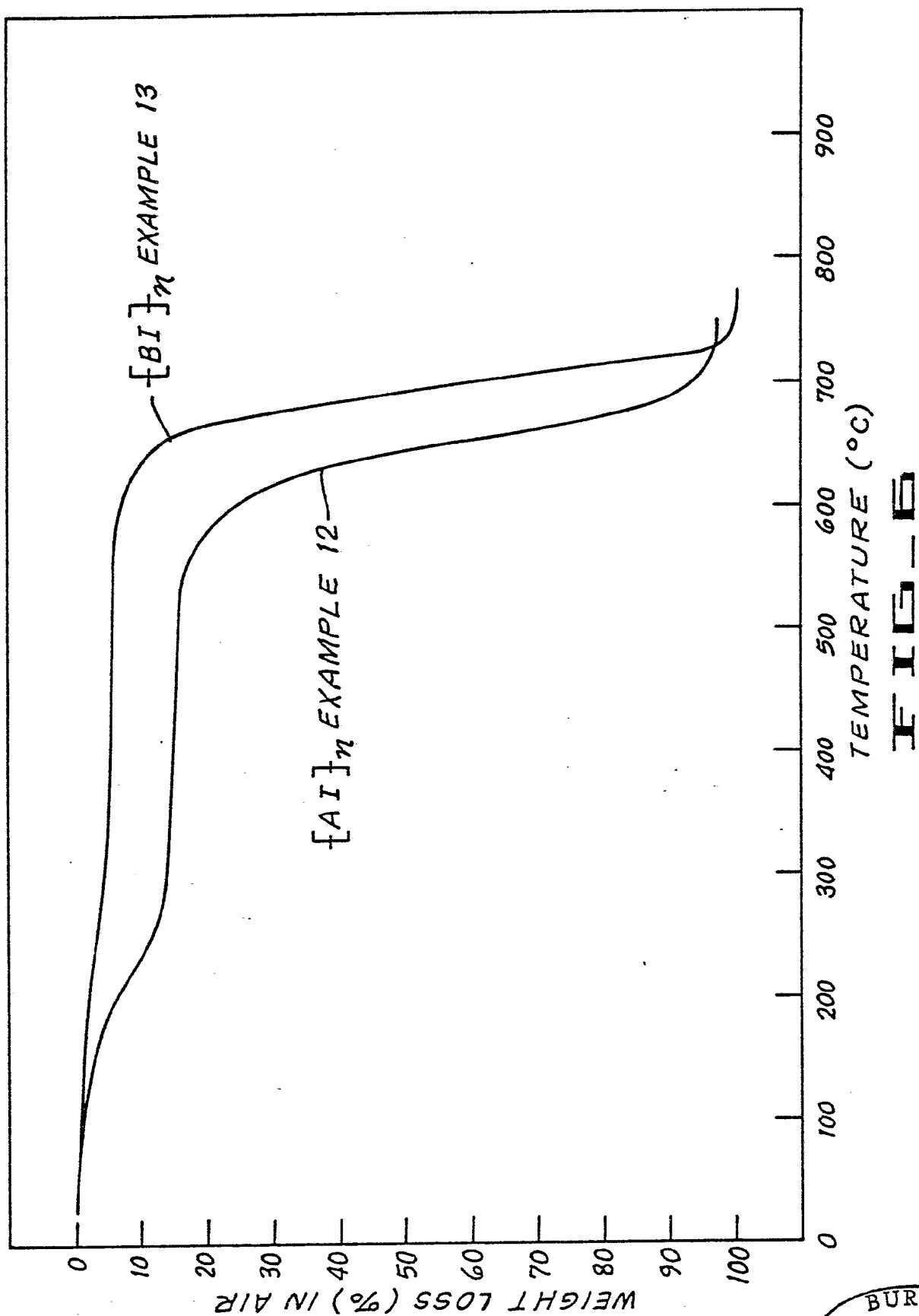


FIG. 5





INSTITUTE 84-71



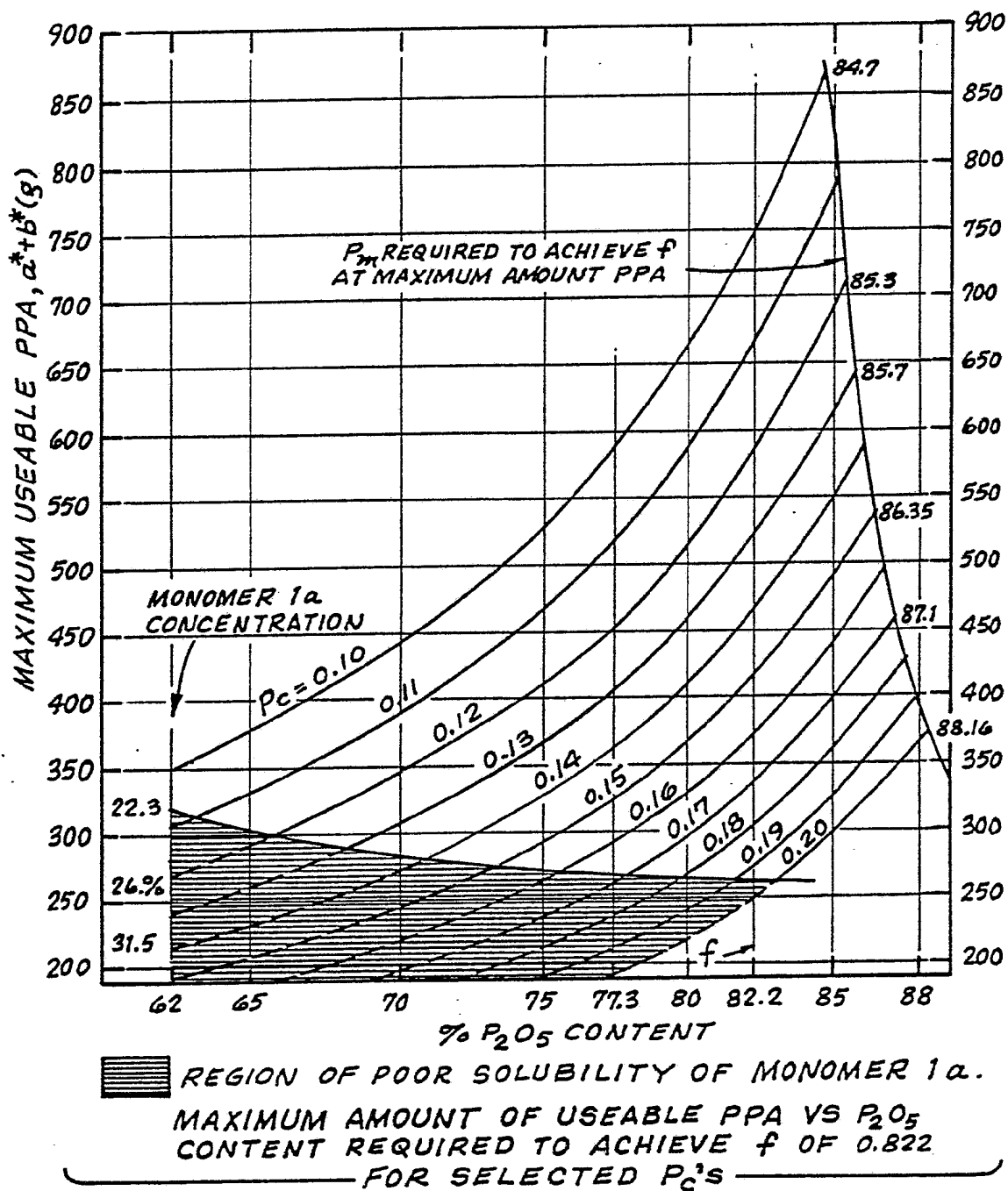


FIG. 2

SUBSTITUTE SHEET





% P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> CONTENT PROFILE FOR 14.8 Wt. % [AI]<sub>n</sub> POLYMERIZATION  
(EXAMPLE 2.)

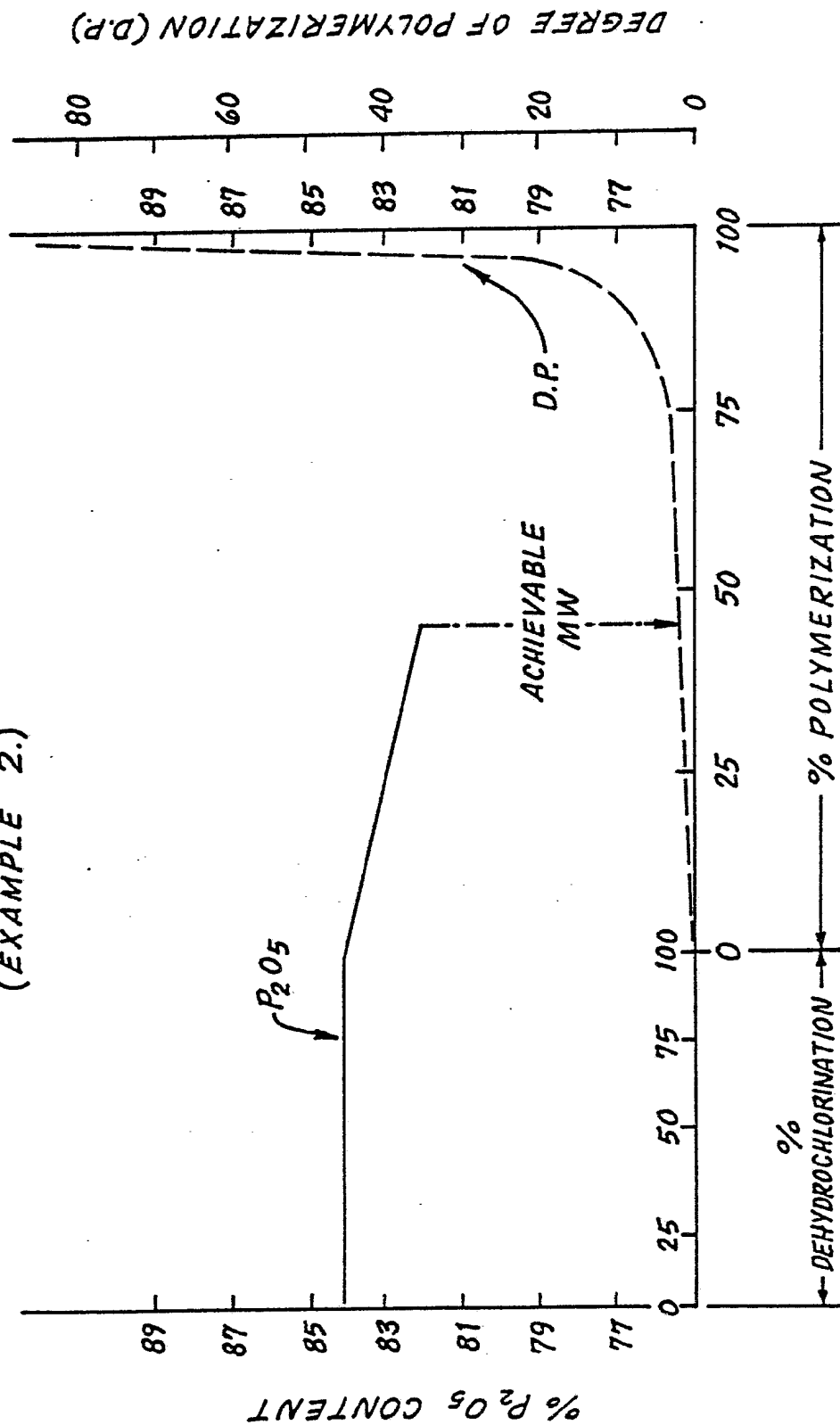
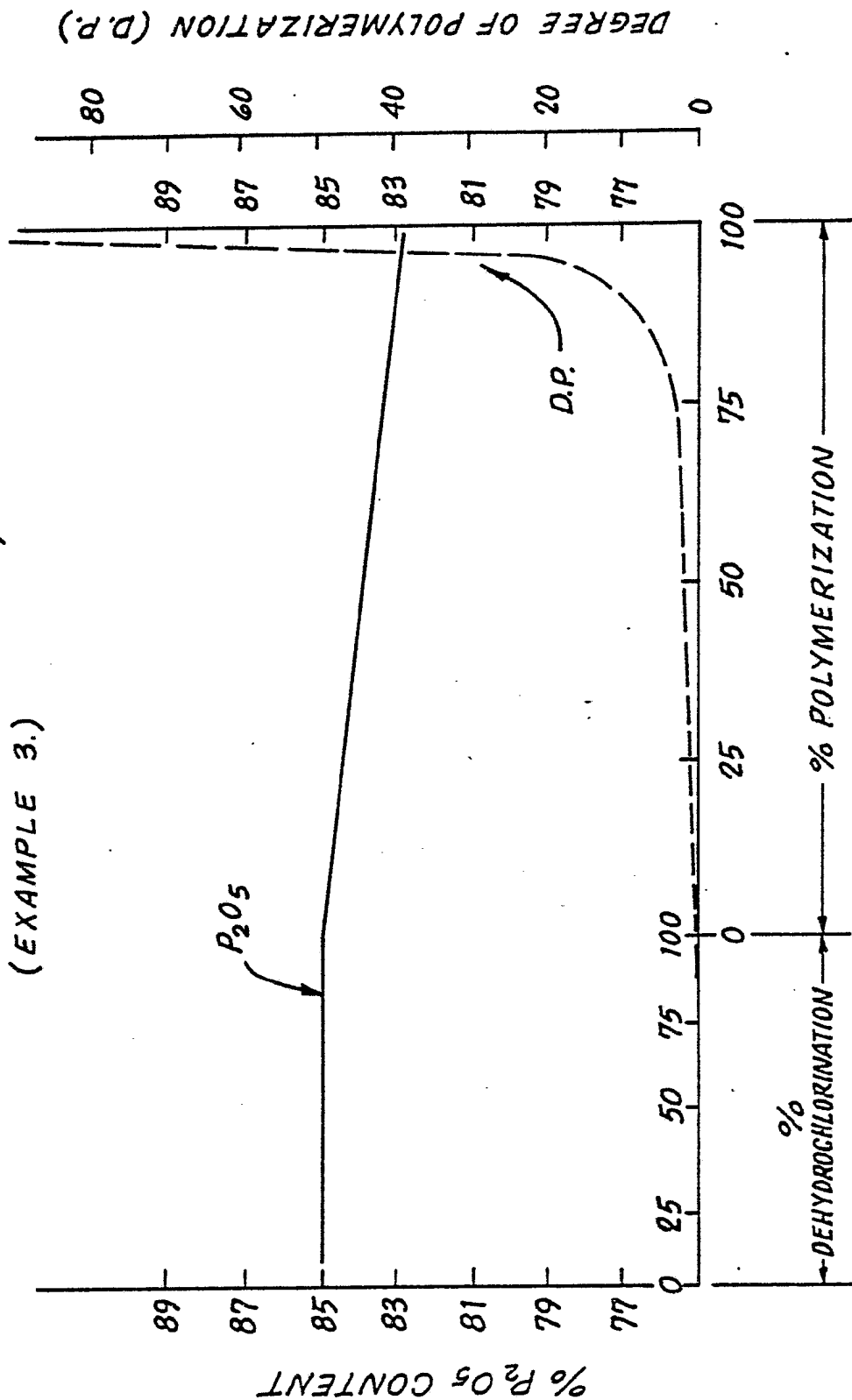


FIG. 2

% P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> CONTENT PROFILE FOR 8.6 WT.-% [ T ]<sub>n</sub> POLYMERIZATION  
(EXAMPLE 3.)



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

FIG. 3



% P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> CONTENT PROFILE FOR 14.5 Wt. % [Al]<sub>7</sub> POLYMERIZATION  
(EXAMPLE 12)

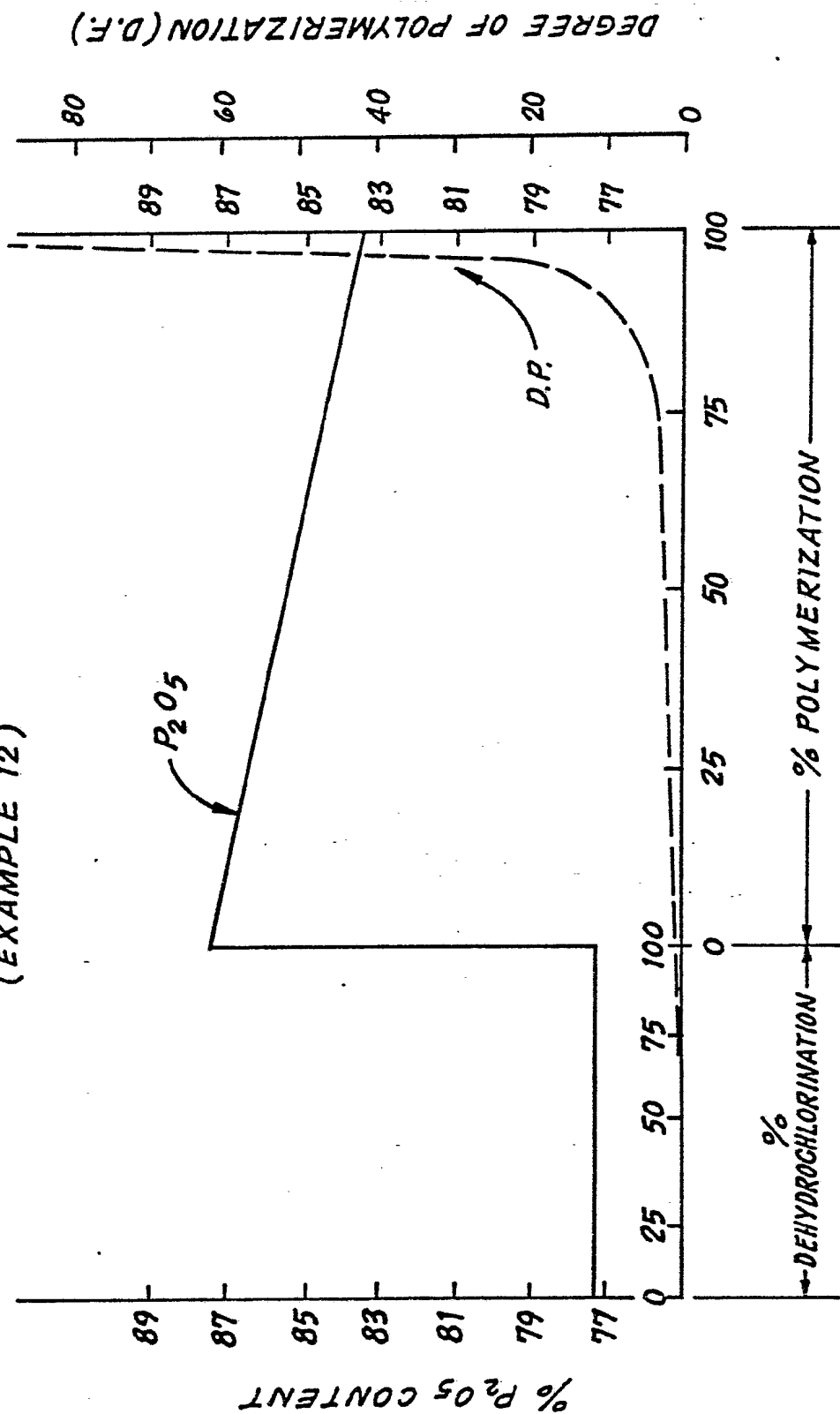


FIG. 10

%  $P_2O_5$  CONTENT PROFILE FOR 13.0 WT. %  $[BI]_n$  POLYMERIZATION  
(EXAMPLE 13.)

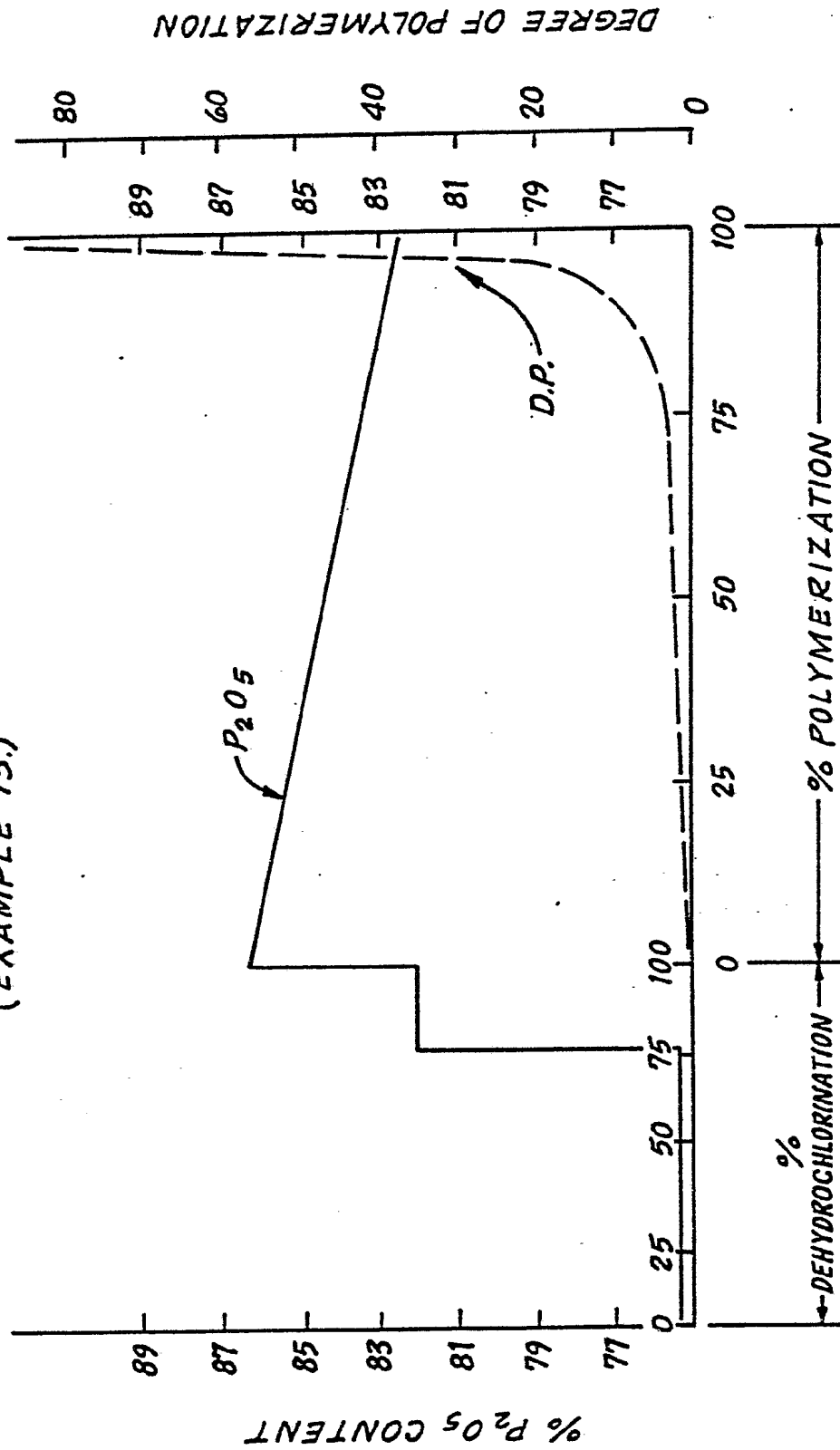


FIG. 11

% P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> CONTENT PROFILE FOR 20.3 WT. % [T]<sub>n</sub> POLYMERIZATION  
(EXAMPLE 27.)

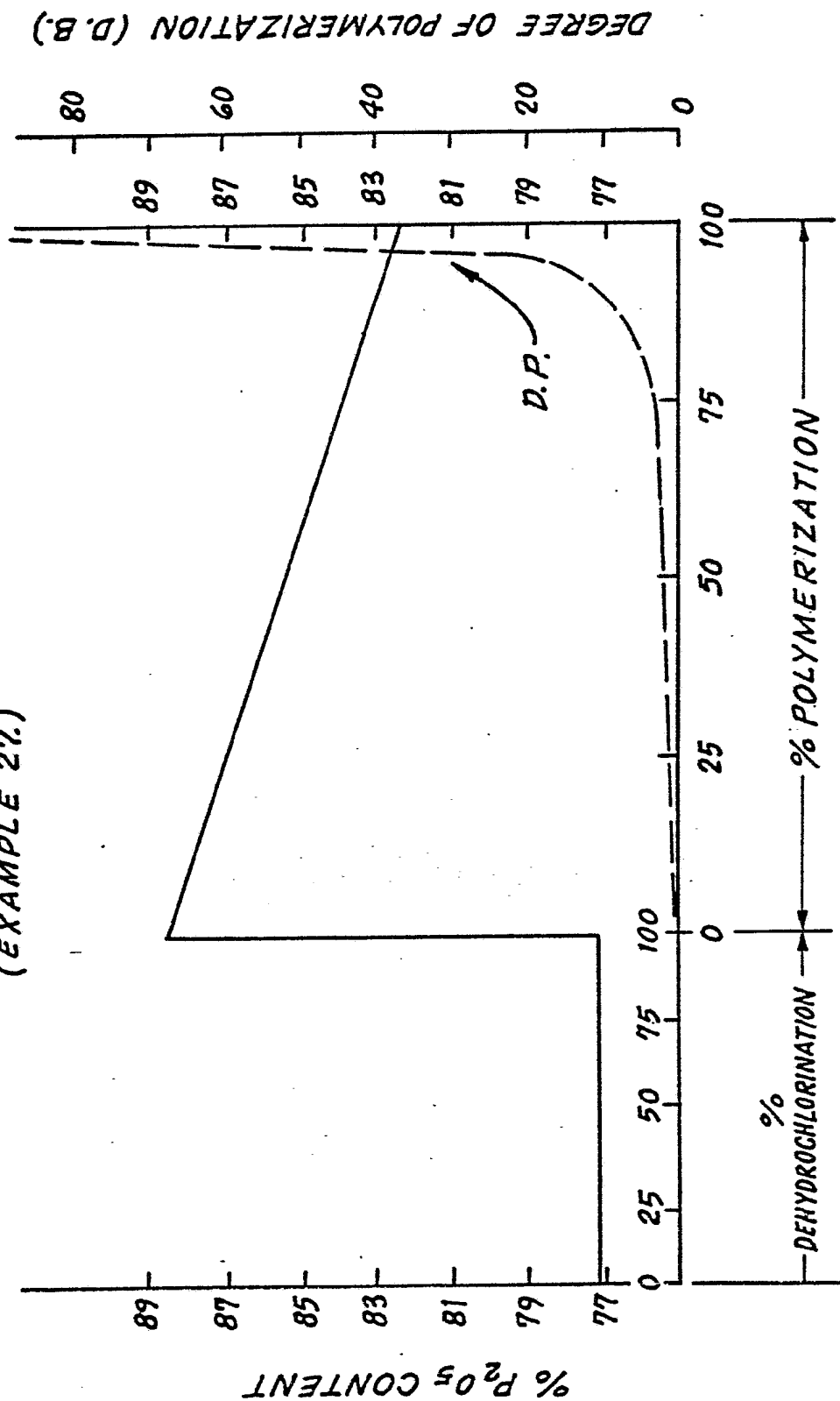
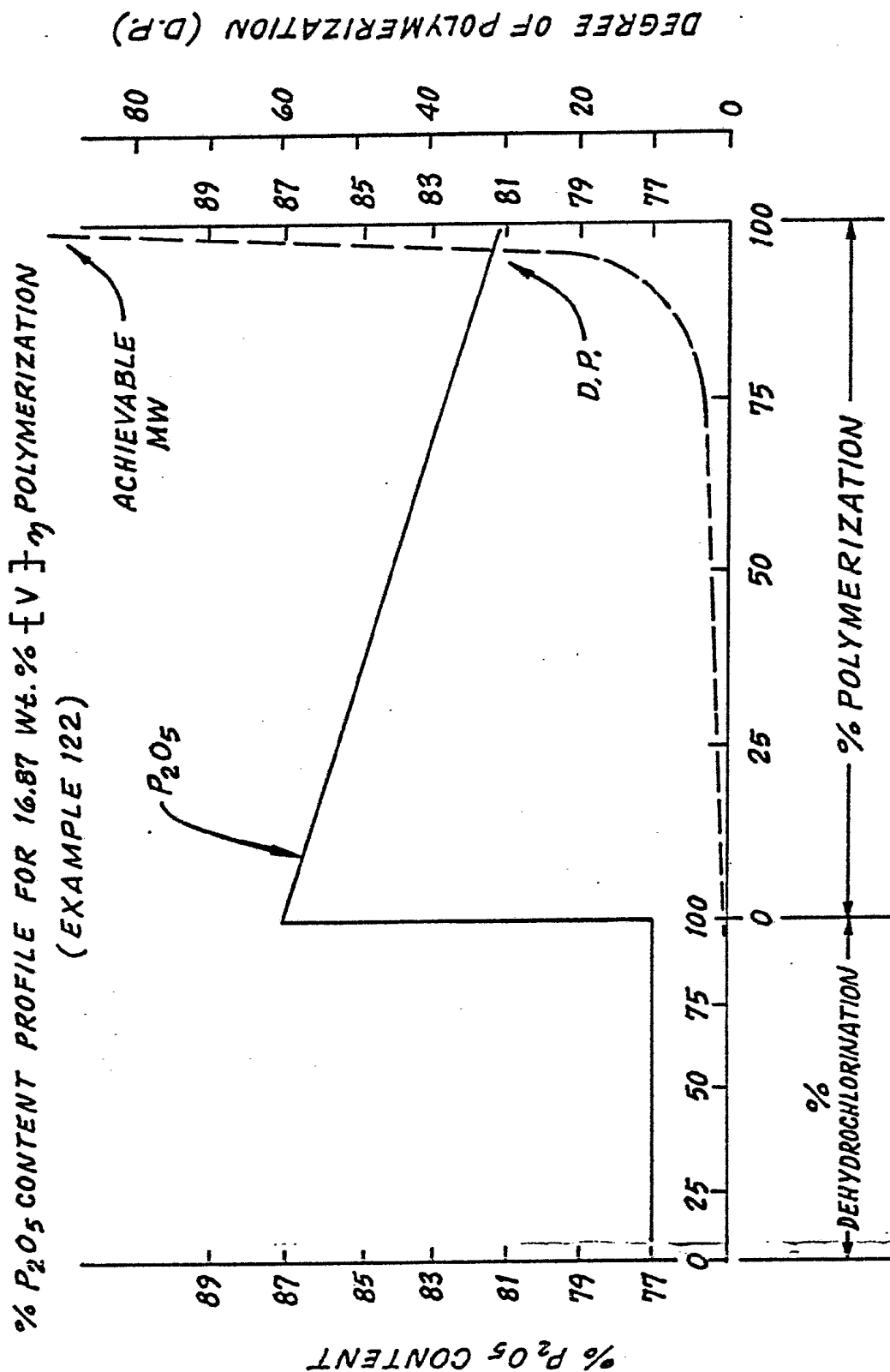


FIG-12



**FILE**

**SUBSTITUTE SHEET**



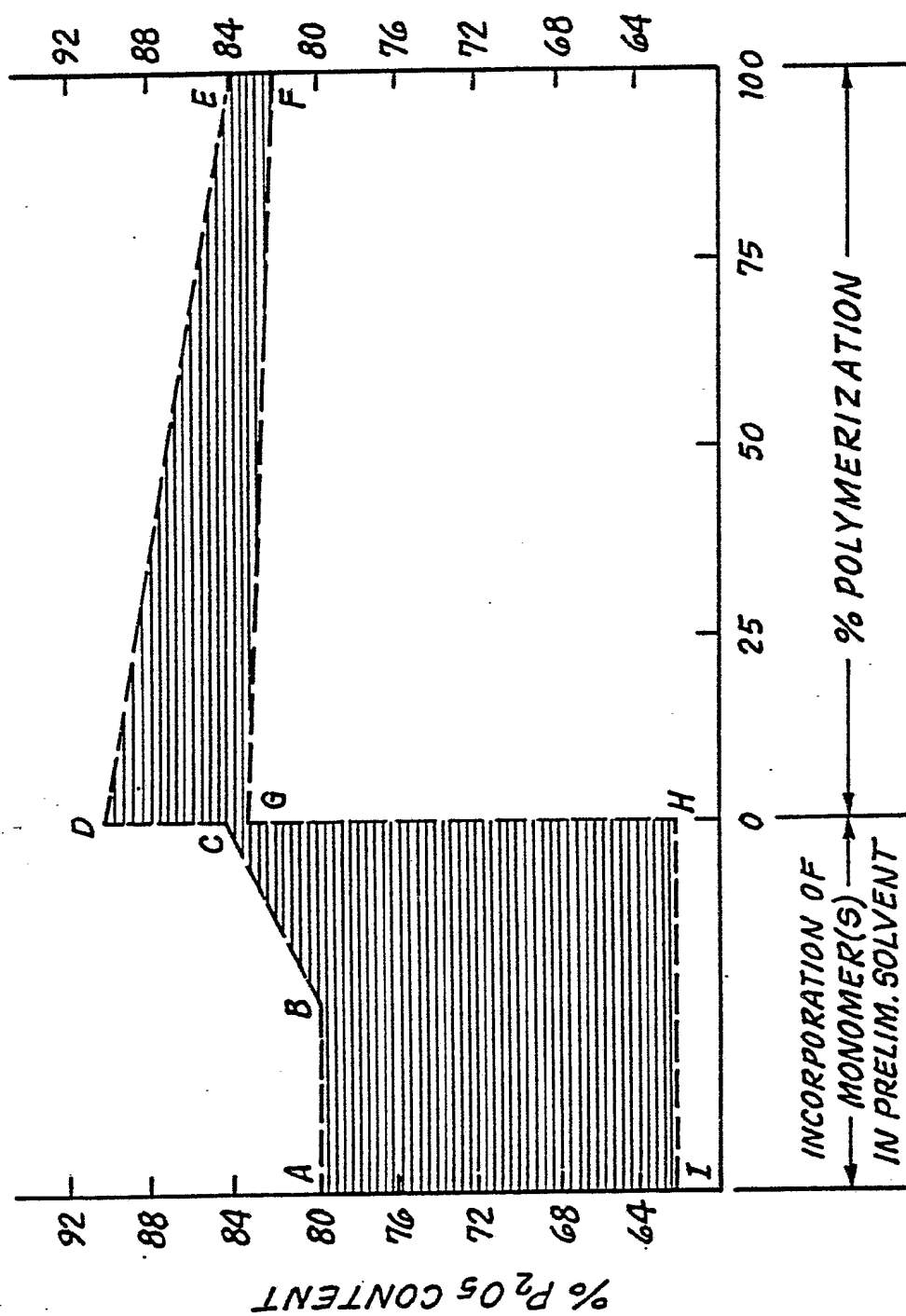


FIG. 14

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/US83/01437

<b>I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b> (if several classification symbols apply, indicate all) <sup>3</sup> According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC <span style="float: right;">INT. CL <sup>3</sup></span> C08K 3/32, C08K 5/49, C08G 63/12, C08G 63/68, C08G 69/08 C08G 69/42, 75/00, 79/02, 69/26,						
<b>II. FIELDS SEARCHED</b> <div style="text-align: center; border-top: 1px solid black; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">Minimum Documentation Searched <sup>4</sup></div> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <th style="width: 25%; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">Classification System</th> <th style="border-bottom: 1px solid black;">Classification Symbols</th> </tr> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">U.S.</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">524/417; 524/706 528/176/183/185/186/188/327/330,331,337,341,342 528/346,347,348,352,353,364,184</td> </tr> </table> <div style="text-align: center; border-top: 1px solid black; border-bottom: 1px solid black;">Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched <sup>5</sup></div>			Classification System	Classification Symbols	U.S.	524/417; 524/706 528/176/183/185/186/188/327/330,331,337,341,342 528/346,347,348,352,353,364,184
Classification System	Classification Symbols					
U.S.	524/417; 524/706 528/176/183/185/186/188/327/330,331,337,341,342 528/346,347,348,352,353,364,184					
<b>III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT</b> <sup>14</sup>						
Category <sup>*</sup>	Citation of Document, <sup>16</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>17</sup>	Relevant to Claim No. <sup>18</sup>				
X	US, A, 4,225,700, PUBLISHED 30 SEPT. 1980 WOLF ET AL	1-474				
A	US, A, 3,691,136, PUBLISHED 12 SEPT. 1972 SERRES, JR. ET AL	1-474				
A	US, A, 4,263,245, PUBLISHED 21 APRIL 1981 TAN	1-474				
A	JP, A, 54-101339, PUBLISHED 8 SEPTEMBER 1973 SUWA SEIKOSHA	1-474				
A	US, A, 4,233,434, PUBLISHED, 11 NOV. 1980 KRAUS ET AL	1-474				
X	JP, A, 56-9722, PUBLISHED, 31 JANUARY 1981 HITACHI	1-474				
A	JP, A, 54-128357, PUBLISHED 4 OCTOBER 1979 HITACHI	1-474				
X	JP, A, 54-133358, PUBLISHED 17 OCTOBER 1979 HITACHI	1-474				
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p><sup>*</sup> Special categories of cited documents: <sup>15</sup></p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.</p> <p>"&amp;" document member of the same patent family</p> </div> </div>						
<b>IV. CERTIFICATION</b>						
Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search <sup>2</sup>  <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.2em;">26 JANUARY 1981</div>	Date of Mailing of this International Search Report <sup>2</sup>  <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.5em;">09 FEB 1984</div>					
International Searching Authority <sup>1</sup>  <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.2em;">ISA/US</div>	Signature of Authorized Officer <sup>10</sup> <div style="text-align: center;"> <div style="text-align: center; font-weight: bold;">N. SAROFIM</div> </div>					



## III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)

Category *	Citation of Document, <sup>16</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>17</sup>	Relevant to Claim No <sup>18</sup>
A	JP, A, 54-133360, PUBLISHED 17 OCTOBER 1979 HITACHI	1-474
A	US, A, 3,804,791, PUBLISHED 16 APRIL 1974 MORGAN	1-474
A	US, A, 3,424,720, PUBLISHED 28 JANUARY 1969 RUDNER ET AL	1-474
A	US, A, 4,342,862, PUBLISHED 3 AUGUST 1982 JACKSON, JR. ET AL	1-474
X	N, MACROMOLECULES 1981, 14, 915-920, WOLFE ET AL	1-474
X	N, MACROMOLECULES 1981, 14, 920-924 CHOE ET AL	1-474
X	N, MACROMOLECULES 1981, 14, 1135-1138	1-474
X	US, A, 4,051,108, PUBLISHED 27 SEPTEMBER 1977 HELMIMAK ET AL	1-474
P	US, A, 4,351,917, PUBLISHED 28 SEPTEMBER 1982 CALUDANN ET AL	1-474
P	US, A, 4,351,918, PUBLISHED 28 SEPTEMBER 1982 CHARBONNEAU ET AL	1-474
P	US, A, 4,355,132, PUBLISHED 19 OCTOBER 1982 EAST ET AL	1-474

## FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET

A	US, A, 3,873,497, PUBLISHED 25 MARCH 1975 JACKSON	1-474
A	JP, A 54-133361, PUBLISHED 17 OCTOBER 1979 HITACHI	1-474
A	JP, A, 54-119941, PUBLISHED 18 SEPTEMBER 1977 HITACHI	1-474
A	JP, A, 53-128350, PUBLISHED 11 SEPTEMBER 1978 HITACHI	1-474
A	JP, A, 54-133359, PUBLISHED 17 OCTOBER 1979 HITACHI	1-474

V. ☐ OBSERVATIONS WHERE CERTAIN CLAIMS WERE FOUND UNSEARCHABLE <sup>10</sup>

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2) (a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claim numbers ..... because they relate to subject matter <sup>12</sup> not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:

2. ☐ Claim numbers ..... because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out <sup>13</sup>, specifically:

VI. ☒ OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION IS LACKING <sup>11</sup>

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application as follows:

SEE PCT/ISA/206

1. ☒ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims of the international application.

2. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims of the international application for which fees were paid, specifically claims:

3. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claim numbers:

4. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, the International Searching Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.

## Remark on Protest

☒ The additional search fees were accompanied by applicant's protest.

☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.